Robert B. Sinclair

G. M. ELLIOTT LIBRARY
CINCINNATI BIBLE SEMINARY
2700 GLENWAY AVE.
P. O. BOX 04320
CINCINNATI, OHIO 45204-3200

# CHAUCER

THE PROLOGUE TO THE CANTERBURY TALES

THE KNIGHTES TALE

THE NONNES PREESTES TALE

The MMCo.

# CHAUCER

## THE PROLOGUE TO THE CANTERBURY TALES
## THE KNIGHTES TALE
## THE NONNES PRESTES TALE

*EDITED IN CRITICAL TEXT*

WITH GRAMMATICAL INTRODUCTION

BEING AN ELEMENTARY GRAMMAR OF MIDDLE ENGLISH

NOTES AND GLOSSARY

BY

MARK H. LIDDELL

RECENTLY PROFESSOR OF ENGLISH IN THE UNIVERSITY OF TEXAS
ASSOCIATE EDITOR OF THE "GLOBE" CHAUCER

GEORGE MARK ELLIOTT LIBRARY
The Cincinnati Bible Seminary

New York
THE MACMILLAN COMPANY
LONDON: MACMILLAN & CO., LTD.
1922

*All rights reserved*

821
C496L

COPYRIGHT, 1901,
BY THE MACMILLAN COMPANY.

# PREFACE

THIS book has been prepared primarily for class-room use. It has grown out of a need felt by the author for a brief and practical statement of the fundamental principles of Middle English Grammar as they affect Chaucer's English, combined with a trustworthy text of some of the best of Chaucer's writing, through which students might obtain an introduction to Middle English literature. No book of this sort, containing the most recent results of scholarship in this field and written in English for English-speaking students, is now accessible to either teacher or student. And because of this want students are allowed to put into Chaucer's mouth a sort of broken English that is no more like his own easy-running deftly shaded speech than is the broken German of a schoolboy who has had a six months' course in Ollendorf like the language of Goethe and Schiller. We should laugh at the reader of Wordsworth who should produce what would be represented in New English spelling by,

"Ee wondred lawnely ass a cloody"

as his version of

"I wandered lonely as a cloud."

Yet worse travesties of Chaucer's speech than this of

Wordsworth's are allowed to pass muster in our reading and so-called appreciation of the *Canterbury Tales*.

The work naturally divides itself in two parts, a general survey of Middle English Grammar as represented by Chaucer, and a critical text of the *Prologue*, *Knightes Tale*, and *Nonnes Preestes Tale*, with Notes and Glossary. A full index has been added to the grammar, so that it may be readily used for purposes of reference.

Much pains has been spent upon the text, which has been carefully collated with the copies of the Mss. printed by the Chaucer Society, studied in the light of their now known relations. The Ellesmere Ms. has been taken for the basis, because it and the Hengwrt are the only Mss. which consistently represent Chaucer's inflections, and the Hengwrt is in some respects inferior to the Ellesmere text. It would have been well to have printed the cesural pauses as they are found in these Mss. But the principle followed is to give as few aids as possible in the text itself, and thus force the student to a continual application of his knowledge of Middle English in general. For that reason no marks save those of ordinary punctuation have been used. The essential variants (and by 'essential' is meant those that are not mere permissible variations of spelling or obvious corruptions of inferior Mss. whose originals are known) are given in each instance at the foot of the page. The student should not try to make use of them, however, until he has mastered the relations of the Mss. (see pp. cxix ff.).

It is a matter of regret that the notes had to be made so

brief. Chaucer requires more annotation than Middle English poets generally do; for much of his naïvete is quite unintelligible without an explanation of the allusions and associations involved. It is to be regretted also that an account of Chaucer's works, the dates of their composition, their sources and characteristics, the relations of the Mss. in which they have come down to us, etc., could not be included. But the book has had to be kept within text-book limits, and these subjects will be found treated with reasonable clearness and accuracy in the *Globe Chaucer*.

In preparing the Glossary and the Index I have been greatly helped by one of my pupils in the University of Texas, Miss Mary Heard. As to indirect obligations, my chief one is to the teaching of Professor Napier, of Oxford, and of the late Professor Zupitza, of Berlin, who first made me see the real meaning of scientific method in English study. My indebtedness to Dr. Furnivall's life of untiring and unselfish zeal in making Chaucer material accessible to Chaucer students is one which is so obvious as scarcely to need explicit recognition in a book like this.

In conclusion, I might say almost with discouragement that the best part of a good school book is in the teacher who uses it, and that after all mere print can do little to vitalize the knowledge of our language and literature as they should be vitalized for us. Much, therefore, will depend on the teacher, to whom the book is offered as a help toward the accomplishment of this great end.

# CONTENTS


ELEMENTS OF MIDDLE ENGLISH GRAMMAR: PAGE

Introduction . . . . . ix–x

Sounds . . . . . xi–xxxvi

Inflection . . . . . xxxvii–lxxi

Syntax . . . . . lxxii–lxxxiii

Versification . . . . . lxxxiv–xcvii

Grammatical Index . . . . . xcix

CHAUCER'S LIFE . . . . . cix

THE MSS. OF THE CANTERBURY TALES . . . . . cxix

THE TEXT:

The Prologue . . . . . 1

The Knightes Tale . . . . . 32

The Nonnes Preestes Tale . . . . . 111

Explanatory Notes . . . . . 139

Glossary . . . . . 183

# THE ELEMENTS OF MIDDLE ENGLISH GRAMMAR WITH SPECIAL REFERENCE TO CHAUCER'S IDIOM

**Introductory Note.** — In the following treatment of Chaucer's language the effort has been made to present the subject in such a way that the book may be used as an elementary grammar of Middle English. The dialects have, therefore, been kept in the background, and Chaucer's speech has been assumed to be normal Middle English.

While the grammar is reasonably complete, it is by no means exhaustive. The subject-matter has been condensed into the briefest possible space, and much has been left to the teacher to expand and illustrate.

The treatment is historical, and the student who would use the book to the best advantage should start with a knowledge of the rudiments of Old English, especially of Old English Inflections. The chapter on Sounds is treated in a rigidly historical way, starting from Old English. But there is inserted into it (§§ 9–45) a very brief and summary discussion of the relation of New English sounds to those of Middle English, so that the student who knows no Old English can work back to Chaucer's English from his knowledge of his own speech. If he does this circumspectly and systematically, he will soon learn to appreciate the difference between the writing of New English (which is to a large extent the representation of New English words by their Middle English equivalents) and the actual living forms of New English. The chapters on Inflection, Syntax, and Versification can easily be mastered without any knowledge of the corresponding subjects of Old English Grammar, and have been written with that intent.

The illustrative material is drawn almost entirely from the *Prologue* and *Knightes Tale*, as that is the part of Chaucer best adapted to elementary teaching. The Arabic numerals, when no further reference is given, refer therefore to Group A of the *Canterbury Tales;* the other references are to the *Globe Chaucer*, a copy of which the student should have easy access to.

The following signs and abbreviations have been used: —

> develops into.
< developed from.
\+ followed by.
= the same as.
: rhymes with.
· under a letter denotes that it is not sounded in the verse.
* denotes an assumed word-form.
**a, e,** see pp. cxix ff.

ABC The *ABC*.
A,B,C,D,E,F,G,H,I The respective groups of the *Canterbury Tales*.
adj. adjective.
adv. adverb.
Angl. Anglian dialects.
Astro. The *Astrolabe*.
Bo. The *Boece*.
cf., or cp. compare.
Co. Ms. Corpus Christi (Oxford), 198.
Compl. The *Compleynt vnto Pite*.
C.T. or Cant. T. The *Canterbury Tales*.
e. early.
E.E.T.S. The Early English Text Society.
El. The Ellesmere Ms.
E. Midl. East Midland.
fem. feminine.
Gg. Ms. Gg. 4. 27 (Camb. Univ. Libr.).
Gl. Ch. Globe Chaucer.
$H_4$. Ms. Harleian (Brit. Mus.), 7334.
Hn. Ms. Hengwrt (Peniarth), 154.
Ho. of F. The *Hous of Fame*.
inf. infinitive.
Kn. or Kt. Kentish.
l. late.
Leg., or Leg. of G. W. The *The Legend of Goode Women*.
Ln. Ms. Lansdowne (Brit. Mus.), 851.
masc. masculine.
M.E. Middle English.
Merc. Mercian.
M.L.G. Middle Low German.
Mss. Manuscripts.
N.E. New English.
O.E. Old English.
O.Fr. Old French.
O.H.G. Old High German.
O.N. Old Norse.
Pe. Ms. Petworth (Lord Leconfield).
pp. past participle.
pres. present.
pret. preterite.
R. of R. The *Romaunt of the Rose*.
sb. substantive (noun).
st. strong.
S.W. South Western.
Tro., or T. & C. *Troilus and Criseyde*.
vb. verb.
wk. weak.
W. Midl. West Midland.

# PART I. — SOUNDS

## THE DIALECTS OF MIDDLE-ENGLISH

§ 1. The history of English may be roughly divided into three periods, —

Old-English (O.E.), up to 1125 A.D.
Middle-English (M.E.), 1125–1550 A.D.
New-English (N.E.), 1550 to the present day.

Chaucer's English stands near the middle of the middle period. The chief characteristic which distinguishes M.E. from O.E. is the weakening of the full vowels *a*, *o*, and *u* in unaccented syllables to *e*. But the language has undergone many other changes by the time it gets into Chaucer's hands. A number of vowels that were short in O.E. are now long, and some O.E. long vowels have been shortened; changes have occurred, too, in the quality of the vowels, giving rise to new sounds unknown to O.E.; the inflection system has been simplified; many old words have taken on new meanings, and many new ones have been added from Romance and Scandinavian sources; syntax has become more flexible, more versatile; and a new metrical system of versification is rapidly taking the place of the old alliterative rhythm.

§ 2. **The Dialects of Middle-English.** — The four dialects of O.E. split up into five in M.E., viz., Northern (N.), East Midland (E. Midl.), West Midland (W. Midl.), South Western (S.W.), and Kentish (Kn.), all of which were during the M.E. period in use as vehicles of literary expression.

Already in Chaucer's day, however, the dialect of London, which nearly corresponded to the E. Midl. speech, the historical successor of the O.E. of Mercia, was beginning to be looked upon as standard English. By the middle of the following century it was recognized as the standard dialect of literature, and has remained so to this day. Chaucer's language, therefore, E. Midl. with some Kn. forms, is in its outward aspect more nearly like modern English than the other M.E. dialects are.

### THE SOUNDS OF CHAUCER'S ENGLISH

§ 3. **The Vowels** were as follows: —

ā . . . sounded as in *father* . . . . . e.g. bathed, 3.
ă . . . sounded as in German *mann* (a rare sound in Mn. E.) . . . . . e.g. that, 1.
ę̄ (close) sounded as *a* in *name* or *ea* in *break*, without the slight *i*-sound which follows and makes these sounds diphthongal (nę̄im, brę̄ik); [1] not heard in Mn. E. . . . . e.g. slepen, 10.
ę̄ (open) sounded as *ea* in *breath* protracted . . e.g. heeth, 6.
ĕ . . . sounded as *e* in *met* . . . . . e.g. hem, 18.
ī (ȳ) . . sounded as *i* in *machine* or *e* in *he*, or *ie* in *field* . . . . . e.g. shires, 15.
ĭ (y̆) . . sounded as *i* in *pin* (perhaps somewhat closer) . . . . . e.g. his, 5.
ǭ (close) sounded as *o* in *note*, without the slight *u*-sound which follows . . . . . e.g. roote, 2.
ǭ (open) sounded as *a* in *all*, *oa* in *broad*, or *aw* in *law* . . . . . e.g. euerychon, 31.
ŏ . . . sounded as *o* in *not*, *hot* . . . . . e.g. croppes, 7.
ū (ou, ow, o) . sounded as *oo* in *boot*, *fool* . . e.g. droghte, 2; fowles, 9; flour, 4.

[1] See § 37.

**ŭ (o)**[1] . sounded as *u* in *full* . . . . . e.g. s*o*nne, 7; f*u*l, 22.
**ū** . . . sounded as in Fr. *user* . . . . . e.g. vert*u*, 4.
**ŭ** . . . sounded as **ū**, but with short quantity . e.g. Caunterb*u*ry, 27.
**e** in unaccented syllables had probably the sound of a very wide and open **ĭ**, cf. § 78.

§ 4. **The Diphthongs** were as follows: —

**ai (ay)** . sounded as *i* in *pine, line* . . . . e.g. d*ay*, 19.
**au (aw)** . sounded as *ou* in *house* . . . . . e.g. dr*au*ghte, 135.
**ei (ey)** . is the same as *ai* (*ay*) in Chaucer . e.g. alw*ay*, 353.
**e̯u (ew)** = **e̯** + *u* sounded together with emphasis on the first element . . . e.g. kn*ew*, 240.
**e̯u (ew)** = **e̯** + *u* sounded together with emphasis on the first element . . . . e.g l*ew*ed, 502.
**oi (oy)** . sounded as in *boy, noise* . . . . e.g. c*oy*, 119.
**o̯u (ow)** = **o̯** + *u* sounded together with emphasis on the first element, nearly as in *know*[2] . . . . . e.g. vnkn*ow*e, 126.

§ 5. **The Middle-English Consonant-Sounds** were nearly the same as those of N.E. But there were no "silent" consonants as in N.E.,[3] save that *gn* probably represented simple **n**. **r** was trilled. Medial and final **h** (written *gh* in M.E.) after a palatal vowel had the sound of German *ch* in *ich*, and after a guttural vowel the sound of German *ch* in *ach*.[4] **s** and **th** (also written **þ**) when medial between vowels and next voiced consonants were voiced (*i.e.* had the sound of *s* and *th* in N.E. *those*); when final and next voiceless

[1] See § 6 for writing of **ū** and of **ŭ**.

[2] Theoretically there are three different *ou* diphthongs in M.E. according as the first element is **o̯**, **o̯**, or **ŏ**; the first two of these Chaucer rhymed together, but **ŏu** had a sound different from either, and has always remained different; cf. N.E. *thought* (Orm. *þohhte*) and N.E. *grow* (O.E. *grōwan*).

[3] Such consonants in N.E. are due to preserving M.E. forms of spelling.

[4] These sounds are still heard in the dialects of Scotland.

consonants they were voiceless (*i.e.* had the sound of *s* in N.E. *this*, and *th* in N.E. *thing*).[1] For peculiarities of writing see § 8.

§ 6. **The Writing of Chaucer's English.** — The **vowels** were represented as in the examples cited in § 3, which are taken from the Ellesmere Ms. of the *Prologue*. The long vowels **ā**, **ē**, and **ō** are frequently written double;[2] but the scribes make no attempt to distinguish between ē̆ and ē̩, ō̆ and ō̩, until the end of the M.E. period. Long **ū** is written *ou*. **ŭ** always before *n* or *m* or *u*, and sometimes after *c* (as in *coppe* 134) or *w* (as in *worthy* 43), is written *o*. **ŭ** before a consonant is usually written *v*. **ū** before *gh* is often (especially in the Ellesmere Ms.) written *o*; sometimes also in French words before *n*, e.g. *nacions* 53, *sesons* 347. *i* and *y* are practically interchangeable in Chaucer Mss.: *y* is especially frequent before *n*, *m*, or *u*.[3] **a** before *n* or *m* and a consonant in words of French origin is sometimes written *au*.

§ 7. The representation of the **diphthongs** is that given in the examples cited in § 4. The last element of the diphthong is generally written *y* or *w* when final or before a following vowel; but sometimes *w* appears before a consonant, e.g. *bawdryk* 116, *wantowne* 208. **ou** (like *ou* = ū) is sometimes written *o* before *gh*; e.g. *noght* 366, *wroght* 367, *foghten* (Hn.) 62.

---

[1] But there are in M.E. some words of French origin where the *s* is intervocalic with the voiceless sound, though in these cases good scribes generally wrote *c*; cf. *auarice*, *office* 292, with *seruyse* (: *arise*) 250, *coueitise* (: *deuyse*) A 3883; so *chastise*, *despise*. But *Iustise*, *seruise*, *suffise* sometimes appear in El. with *c*.

[2] Instead of *ee*, *ie* frequently appears in late M.E., and is retained in many N.E. spellings; e.g. *field*, *believe*. In some words of French origin, *ē* is written *eo* in M.E., a spelling still retained in N.E. *people*.

[3] It is *not* used to denote long *ī*, as is frequently stated; cf. *thrīes* El. 63, *rīden* El. Co. Pet. 45, etc.

§ 8. As to the **consonants.** *I* (= N.E. *j*) occasionally represented *i* before a consonant, e.g. *Inne* (El.) 41; and regularly the palatal sound of **g** (*dzh*) before *a*, *o*, and *u* in words of French origin, e.g. *Ioye*, *Iuge*, — in this position it was sometimes written *i*. **v** (*i.e.* voiced *f*) was usually written *u* before a following vowel, e.g. *yeue*. *þ* (printed *th* in the text) represented both the voiced and voiceless dental spirant, as in N.E. *thing* and *they*; in the Ellesmere Ms. *þ* is only used occasionally in small words like *þat*, *þe*, etc. *ȝ* of the Mss. represents the sound of *y* in N.E. *young*, and also *gh*, and is printed *y* or *gh* in the text in accordance with the history of the words in which it occurs; it sometimes, also, represents *-es* after *t* in words of French origin, e.g. *poyntȝ* 2971, *seruantȝ* 101; and in a few words French voiced **s**, in which case it is printed *z*. *c* in words of French origin represented the **s**-sound before palatal vowels;[1] before guttural vowels and consonants it retained its O.E. value of **k**. *k* represented the *k*-sound before *n*, before palatal vowels, and generally when doubled or final. *ch* always had the sound of N.E. *ch* in *church*. *cch* is the doubling of *ch* (cf. N.E. *tch*). *sch*, *sh*, *ssh* denoted the sound of N.E. *sh*. *g* represented the voiced guttural stop (*i.e.* the sound of *g* in N.E. *good*) before consonants and guttural vowels in native English words: O.E. *g* before palatal vowels had become M.E. *y* (see § 80); *g* therefore had the palatal sound (viz. that of *dge* in N.E. *bridge*) only before palatal vowels in words of French origin,[2] cp. *gai* and *geste:* before *a*, *o*, and *u* in such words the palatal **g**-sound is represented

[1] In this position O.E. *c* had generally > M.E. *ch*; so there was no danger of confusion (cf. § 79 (a)).

[2] Except in a few words of Scandinavian origin, like *giue*, *gete*, where it is guttural.

by *I.*[1] *gg* in English words had usually the palatal sound; in the few cases where a guttural vowel follows the *gg* in O.E., or where it is of O.N. origin, it is guttural, e.g. *frogge*, O.E. *frogga*. *gn* in Chaucer practically represents n. *y* as a consonant represented the sound of *y* in N.E. *young* (i.e. *j*; cf. § 80 (a)). *ci*, *si* represented *s* + *i*; e.g. *na-ci-oun*, *con-di-ci-on* (not *nēi-shən*, etc.). *tu* likewise was simply *t* + *ü*; e.g. *na-tü-re*, *cre-a-tii-re*, etc. (not *nēi-chər*, etc.).

### A COMPARISON OF THESE SOUNDS WITH THOSE OF NEW ENGLISH

The fact that we still use so many of the written forms of Chaucer's time to represent New-English words which are entirely different, makes it difficult for the student to avoid putting his New-English into the mouth of Chaucer. A clear statement, therefore, of the differences between Middle-English sounds and those of New-English may not be out of place here. With a knowledge of these differences it will be easy in most cases to come near the sound of Chaucer's words, even though the student be unfamiliar with Old-English.

§ 9. **The vowels of stressed syllables.** — *ă* became *ĕe* in the seventeenth century; cf. M.E. *man*, *that* with N.E. 'mæn,' 'thæt.' But

(a) *ă* + *l* final and *l* + cons. in the sixteenth century developed an *ŭ* before the *l* and united with it in the diphthong *au*, which has become *ǭ* along with other

---

[1] *g* in the combination *ng* had the palatal sound in M.E., when a *j* followed in Germanic. The sound is still preserved in N.E. in these cases, and written *-nge*; e.g. M.E. *sengen* (Gmc. **sangian*), N.E. *singe* as compared with M.E. *singen*, N.E. *sing*.

*au*'s (cf. § 24), e.g. N.E. 'ɒ̄l,' 'fɒ̄l,' as against Chaucer's *alle, falle.*

(b) before *r* final and *r* followed by a consonant N.E. *ă* has the sound of M.E. *ă* followed by *ə*[1]; if before a vowel (*rr* may be mere indication of shortness of a preceding vowel), it follows the regular development of *ă*; cf. *bark* ('baərk') with *barrel* ('bærəl') < M.E. *barel.*

(c) e.M.E. *ă* before a nasal + cons. > *ĕ* (cf. § 61).

(d) *ă* was lengthened to *ā* in the last part of the sixteenth century before *st, sk, sp, th, ss.*[2]

(e) *w* rounds a following *ă* into *ǫ̆* (when unstressed, *ə*), except before a following guttural consonant; cf. *squadron* ('skwodrən') and *wag* ('wæg').

§ 10. *ā* has become a diphthong in N.E., viz. *ēi,* with the stress on the first element;[3] cf. M.E. *māke* > N.E. 'mēik,' M.E. *Mārie* > N.E. 'Mēiry,' M.E. *dāme* > N.E. 'dēim.' Shakspere still uses a number of the *ā*-forms.

§ 11. *ĕ* has remained unchanged; except that

(a) before *r* and a consonant, M.E. *ĕ* in many instances has developed into an *ă*, e.g. M.E. *sterre* > N.E. *star*[4]; and that

(b) the late M.E. development through which *ĕ* > *ĭ* + *ng, nk* in many words went further in N.E., so

---

[1] In the English of southern England and that of parts of America the *r* is dropped and the *a* lengthened to *ā.*

[2] In America an intermediate seventeenth century development, viz. *ǣ*, is kept up; e.g. *last, grass, path.*

[3] But we still write the M.E. word in almost all these cases and those that follow.

[4] In some cases the English of America has a development from the *ĕ*-form, while that of England has the *ă*-form; cf. the English and American N.E. forms of M.E. *clerc*, viz. 'clərk,' and 'clāk.'

that in almost all native words where *e* came before *ng, nk* it developed into N.E. *i*; e.g. M.E. *English* > N.E. 'Inglish' with M.E. spelling.

§ 12. $\bar{e}$ developed into a diphthongal N.E. $\bar{i}^{i}$ (see § 33); e.g. M.E. *grēne* > N.E. 'gri$^{i}$n,' M.E. *swēte* > N.E. 'swi$^{i}$t.'

§ 13. $\bar{ę}$ became $\bar{e}$ in the sixteenth century, but did not develop into $\bar{i}^{i}$ until the eighteenth century; e g. e.N.E. *sea*, does not rhyme with e.N.E. *be* in Spenser or Shakspere.

The distinction between $\bar{ę}$ and $\bar{e}$ which was introduced into late M.E. writing is still kept up in our spelling, though the sounds themselves are now in most cases identical; e.g. N.E. *steal* (M.E. *stęle*) and N.E. *steel* (M.E. *stēl*). This fact is of great assistance in determining whether $\bar{e}$ is $\bar{e}$ or $\bar{ę}$ in Chaucer.[1]

§ 14. $\check{i}$ corresponds as a rule to N.E. $\check{i}$.

§ 15. $\bar{i}$ has uniformly become *ai*, though still written *i*. There are traces of the old $\bar{i}$-sound in Spenser; cf. M.E. *fīnde* with N.E. 'faind,' M.E. *pīn* with N.E. 'pain,' M.E. *nīght* with N.E. 'nait.'

§ 16. $\check{o}$ before *l* final and *l* followed by a consonant, like $\check{a}$ in similar position, developed an *u* after it in N.E., making a diphthong, which followed the development of the regular *ou* diphthong, becoming $\bar{o}^{u}$;[2] cf. N.E. *folk* and *folly* (M.E. *folie*). Before *r* final or followed by a consonant, $\check{o} > \bar{ǫ}$; cp. N.E. *for* with N.E. *moral, sorrow*.

---

[1] The only important exceptions are that in many cases *r* has kept an e.N.E. $\bar{ę}$, open (cf. N.E. *bear, breath*, with *neat, beat*), and that final *t* or *d* in many cases shortened it to $\check{e}$ in N.E.

[2] Still retained in the N.E. writing of *bowl*, M.E. *bolle; jowl*, M.E. *jolle*.

§ 17. $\bar{o}$ has become N.E. $\bar{u}^u$;[1] cf. M.E. *mōne* and N.E. mū$^u$n' (*moon*); M.E. *rōte* and N.E. 'rū$^u$t' (*root*).[1]

§ 18. $\bar{o}$ has become N.E. $\bar{o}^u$; cf. M.E. *bōt* and NE. *boat.*

The distinction between M.E. $\bar{o}$ and $\bar{o}$ is still preserved in the N.E. spelling, the latter being represented by *oa*, the former by *oo*.

§ 19. *ŭ* has remained in a few words like N.E. *fŭll*, but in most cases, especially in unstressed syllables and in words without sentence-stress, it has become *ə*; cf. M.E. *būte*, Shakspere *bŭt*, N.E. 'bət'; M.E. *cuppe*, N.E. 'cəp.'

§ 20. $\bar{u}$ has in almost all cases, no matter what its origin, become *au*, though the M.E. form is still written; e.g. M.E. *now* (= *nū*), N.E. 'nau' (written *now*), M.E. *hous*, N.E. 'haus' (*house*), M.E. *droghte*, N.E. 'draut' (*drought*).[2]

§ 21. *ŭ* in late M.E. became the diphthong *eu*, thence N.E. *iu*, e.g. M.E. *usen*, N.E. 'iuz' (still written *use*), falling together with the diphthong *iu*, which arose when the first element of *ēu* > *i*. In the eighteenth century, after *l* or *r* or *j*, this *iu* > $\bar{u}$. This development is now extending in America to *iu* after *d*, *n*, *s*, and *t*; cf. *new* 'nū' *duke* 'dūk,' etc.

§ 22. *ŭ* fell together with *ŭ* and > *ə* in both English words (out of S.W. dialect) and French words; e.g. *burden* (O.E. *byrðen*), *judge* (M.E. *jüggen*).

§ 23. *ai*, *ei* > N.E. $\bar{e}i$, with stress on the first element; e.g. *day*, *weigh.*

---

[1] But is still written *oo*. It is often shortened to *ŭ* in N.E. before final *t* or *d* or *k*. For diphthongal element, see § 33.

[2] The student will therefore be able to distinguish the M.E. *ū*, which is written *ou* (or *o* before *gh*), from the *ou* diphthong by the sound which the former has in N.E.

§ 24. *au* became N.E. $\bar{o}$; e.g. *law, saw.*

§ 25. The *au* referred to in § 62 also developed into N.E. $\bar{o}$; e.g. *grant, dance.*[1]

§ 26. $\bar{e}u$, $\bar{e}u$ became N.E. $\bar{\imath}u$; e.g. *knew, few* (cf. § 21).[2]

§ 27. $\bar{o}u$, $\bar{o}u$ became late N.E. $\bar{o}u$; e.g. *know, soul.*

§ 28. $\breve{o}u$ became late N.E. $\bar{o}$; e.g. *brought.*

§ 29. *oi* (only in French words) corresponds to late N.E. *oi.*[3]

§ 30. *ui*, often written *u* in M.E., became $\bar{\bar{u}}$, then *iu*, as above; cf. § 21.

§ 31. Thus, with only N.E. to guide him, the student can in most cases distinguish between $\bar{e}$ and $\bar{e}$, $\bar{o}$ and $\bar{o}$, $\bar{u}$ and *ou*, *ü* and $\bar{u}$, $\bar{o}u$ and $\breve{o}u$, in Chaucer's English. To distinguish between $\bar{o}u$ and $\bar{o}u$, or between $\bar{e}u$ and $\bar{e}u$, requires a knowledge of O.E.

§ 32. There are at least two grades of **stress** (often called accent) in N.E., viz. primary and secondary. The principles just given refer to vowels of primarily stressed syllables. Vowels in secondarily stressed syllables of M.E. have in many cases lost their stress in N.E. and follow the laws of vowels in unstressed syllables.

§ 33. **Vowels in unstressed syllables** all tend to become a very wide and open *ŭ* if originally guttural, and a very wide and open *ĭ* if originally palatal.[4] Diphthongs and

---

[1] In America a development from the old *ă*-form in such words is in common use; e.g. 'grænt,' 'dæns.'

[2] With the present tendency to the further development noted in § 21.

[3] In Elizabethan English it had the sound of *ai* which is still heard in the vulgar 'bail' for 'boil.'

[4] These sounds are in treatises on phonetics indifferently represented by *ə*. The whole subject of unstressed and secondarily stressed syllables in English still awaits a scientific treatment.

diphthongal long vowels in N.E. are accented on the first element, which makes the second element come under this law.

§ 34. Vowels in unstressed syllables of inflection are lost in N.E., whether final or protected by a consonant, unless preserved for phonetic reasons.

§ 35. **The New-English consonant system** is essentially that of M.E. The following are some of the chief differences. Consonants are doubled in N.E. spelling, as in late M.E., but more frequently, to show that the preceding vowel is short; and a *-e* is often added after a single consonant to show that the preceding vowel is long. These are, therefore, only apparent differences.

§ 36. When M.E. *w* became final in N.E. from the dropping of the final *-e*, it developed a diphthong *ow* in late M.E., cf. *falow* (α) 1364, which early became *ɔ*, though still written *ow*; e.g. M.E. *shadwe* > N.E. *shadow*, M.E. *felawe, felwe* > N.E. *fellow*. Inorganic initial *w* is prefixed to several common words; e.g. M.E. *on* > N.E. *one* ('wən'); M.E. *hool* > N.E. *whole* (here only in the writing).

§ 37. *l* after *ă* or *ŏ* (see §§ 9 a, 16) is generally lost before *f, v, m*, or *k*, though still written; e.g. N.E. *folk, golf, talk, calm*. *b* final after *m* is lost in N.E.; e.g. *climb, comb*.

§ 38. *r* final or before a consonant varies in N.E. from a slightly trilled sound to a mere vowel glide which is subject to absorption in a preceding vowel.

§ 39. *t* in words where it was followed by a *j*-sound (including that of *ju* < *ü*) united with it and > *ch* in the eighteenth century; e.g. *question*.

§ 40. *d* in similar positions united with the *j*-sound to become *dg*; e.g. *verdure*.

§ 41. *s* followed by a *j*-sound united with it in *sh*; e.g. *nācioun* ('nāsiūn') > 'neishən.'

§ 42. In words like *nation*, the *t* represents an *s*, written *c* in M.E., and is due to an attempt to imitate the Latin form of such words.

§ 43. *d* > *th* in a number of words in late M.E., so we have Chaucer's *fader* against N.E. *father;* likewise *mother, weather, hither, thither*, etc.

§ 44. *h* (*gh*), though still written, is lost in N.E. In some cases dialect forms in which *gh* > *f* and shortened the preceding vowel, are found in spoken M.E., though the *gh*-forms are written; e.g. N.E. *rough, tough.*

§ 45. Some unhistoric consonants were developed for phonetic reasons in N.E. Chief of these are

(a) an unhistoric *t* which often appears after the adverbial suffix *-es*; e.g. M.E. *againes* > N.E. *against;*

(b) an unhistoric *t* which appears after nouns ending in *n*; e.g. M.E. *parchemen* > N.E. *parchment;*

(c) an unhistoric *d* which appears after final *n* in a few words; e.g. M.E. *soun* > N.E. *sound*, M.E. *kynrede* 1286 > N.E. *kindred;*

(d) an unhistoric *b* which appears after a final *m*; e.g. *lim* > N.E. *limb*. This was due to confusion arising from still writing *b* after it had been lost; cf. § 37.

## THE DEVELOPMENT OF MIDDLE-ENGLISH SOUNDS FROM THOSE OF OLD-ENGLISH

### CHANGES IN THE QUANTITY OF VOWELS

§ 46. **Group-Lengthenings.** — Certain O.E. short vowels were lengthened in M.E. by certain consonant groups, viz.: —

§ 47. Any short vowel save *u* before *ld*; e.g. O.E. *eald* (Merc. *ăld*) > M.E. *ǭld*,[1] O.E. *fĕld* > M.E. *fēld* (N.E.

[1] These group-lengthenings of O.E. *ă* are earlier than the change by which *ā* > *ǭ* (cf. § 60), and therefore O.E. *ă* (*ea*) before *ld*, *mb* > *ǭ*.

*field*), O.E. *cĭld* > M.E. *child*; cf. O.E. *hylda* (*builder*), and M.E. (S.W. dialect) *bülden*, *builden*.[1]

§ 48. *ĭ* and *ŭ* before *nd*; cf. O.E. *bĭndan* > M.E. *bīnden* (N.E. 'baind'), O.E. *fŭnden* (pp.) > M.E. *founden* (N.E. 'faund').

§ 49. *ĭ* and *ă* before *mb*; e.g. O.E. *clĭmban* > M.E. *clīmben* (N.E. 'claim'), O.E. *cămb* > M.E. *cǭmb*, cp. § 60.

§ 50. Some lengthenings before *rd*, *rn*, *rth*, *ng* occur in early M.E., but most of them had been given up by Chaucer's time. Traces of them, however, are found in the spelling of the Ellesmere Ms.; cf., too, *ērthe* : *fę̄rthe* D 363.

§ 51. *Exc.* If the lengthening group, however, was followed by a liquid or nasal in the next syllable,[2] the lengthening did not take place; e.g. O.E. *tyndre* > M.E. *tĭnder*.

§ 52. **Stress-Lengthenings.** — The O.E. short vowels *ă*, *ĕ*, *ŏ* were lengthened in M.E. if they stood in open accented syllables;[3] e.g. O.E. *măcian* > M.E. *māken* (N.E. *make*), O.E. *wĕrede* > M.E. *wę̄red* (N.E. *wear*), O.E. *gebŏren* > M.E. *ybǭre* (N.E. *bore*); cf. O.E. pp. *rĭden* = M.E. *rĭden* (N.E. *ridden*).

§ 53. The exceptions are the same as for group-lengthening, but this lengthening frequently takes place in spite of a liquid or nasal in the following syllable; e.g. *lādel* (< O.E. *hlǣdel*) 2020.

---

[1] *ui* is occasional M.E. spelling for *ū*, still preserved in such words as N.E. *build*, *fruit*, *juice*.

[2] But the *-en* of p. part. or inf. did not prevent it.

[3] An open syllable is one that ends in a vowel, a single consonant always making a syllable with the vowel which follows it. The instances where noun-forms other than those of the nominative singular are generalized are only apparent exceptions; e.g. O.E. *scĕadu*, but M.E. *shădwe* (from oblique case-form *sceadw-*).

§ 54. This lengthening is often prevented by *ig* in the following syllable; e.g. O.E. *pŏpig* > M.E. *pŏppy* (N.E. *poppy*).

§ 55. **Shortenings.** — O.E. long vowels were shortened in M.E. when they came before two or more consonants, except the lengthening groups mentioned in §§ 46–50;[1] cf. O.E. *wīsdom* and M.E. *wĭsdom; greet*, compar. *grĕtter* 863.

§ 56. O.E. long vowels were sometimes shortened in M.E. by the conditions which prevented stress-lengthening; viz. *ig* or a liquid or nasal in the following syllable; e.g. *ănу* 580, *ĕny* < O.E. *ānig*.

§ 57. O.E. long vowels are sometimes shortened in words that have light sentence-stress; cf. M.E. indefinite article *ăn, ă*, and numeral adjective *ǭn* with O.E. *ān*.

§ 58. **The Quality of the Vowels thus produced.** — The *ē* that arose by lengthening before *ld* was the long close vowel *ę̄*. The *ē* that arose by stress-lengthening was the long open vowel *ę̄*. In all cases of lengthening that resulted in *ō*, it was the long open vowel *ǭ* that was produced.

§ 59. **Changes in the Character of Vowels.** — The chief of these are as follows: —

§ 60. O.E. *ā* becomes M.E. *ǭ* (except in Northern dialects); e.g. O.E. *brād* > M.E. *brǭd* (N.E. *broad*).

§ 61. O.E. *ă* (*o*) + nasal remains in Chaucer, except when the nasal is followed by a voiced consonant *d, g, b*;[2] in this position it becomes *o*; cf. *thanken* and *lond* (O.E. *pancian, land*).

---

[1] The shortening of O.E. *ǣ* (= Gmc. *ai*) results in a sound that is sometimes *ă* and sometimes *ĕ*, giving thus double forms; e.g. O.E. *lǣdan* (M.E. *lę̄den*) has pret. *lædde*, which gives M.E. *lĕdde, lădde*. So a M.E. pret. *clădde, clĕdde* points to O.E. *clǣþan*, not *clāþian* (cf. § 175(4)).

[2] But *from* is an exception.

§ 62. The *au* written for *a* before nasal and consonant in words of French origin probably denoted an open sound of *a* between *ă* and *ǫ̆*.

§ 63. O.E. *y* (not representing W.S. *ie*) underwent different developments in the different dialects, resulting in Kn. *e*, S.W. *u* (i.e. *ü*), and E.Midl. and Northern *i*. *i* is thus the standard form in Chaucer,[1] but the S.W. *ü* and the Kn. *e* occur occasionally; e.g. *murie* 1386, *merie* C. 883, *myrie* E. 2218.

§ 64. *w* sometimes changes a following palatal vowel to *u*; e.g. M.E. *wŏmman*, from O.E. *wīfman*, which became e.M.E. *wimman;* M.E. *wurthy* or *worthy*, from O.E. *wyrðīg*.

§ 65. **The Old-English Diphthongs were smoothed** to simple vowels in M.E., O.E. *ĕa*[2] giving M.E. *ă*, O.E. *ĕo* giving M.E. *ĕ*, O.E. *ēa* giving M.E. *ę̄*, and O.E. *ēo* giving M.E. *ę̄*.[3]

§ 66. O.E. *ǣ* > M.E. *ę̄* when it represented an original Germanic *ǣ*, and M.E. *ę̄* when it represented a Germanic *ai* (usually appearing in O.E. as umlaut of *ā*).[4] These sounds of *ē* are still distinguished in modern spelling; cf. § 13.

---

[1] Chaucer's is the language of London, where a number of dialect forms had already gained currency.

[2] O.E. *ĕa* + *r* and consonant gave *ĕ* in Southern dialects: such forms occur in Chaucer; e.g. *yeerd* B 4037, O.E. *geard;* O.E. *ĕa* + *h* was in Mercian *ă*, *ĕ*; see § 72 (a).

[3] The diphthongs *ie* and *īe* are peculiar to W.S. The corresponding Mercian forms have *e*, *ę̄*.

[4] To the student who does not know Germanic, it may be of assistance to note that Gmc. *ǣ* is generally represented by Mod. Ger. *ā*; cf. e.g. Mod. Ger. *thät* with O.E. *dǣd*, M.E. *dę̄d*, N.E. *deed:* and that Gmc. *ai* appears usually in Mod. Ger. as *ei*, except before *r* and *h* (and *w* in O.H.G.), where it is *ē*; cf. Mod. Ger. *heilen* and O.E. *hǣlan*, M.E. *hę̄len*, N.E. *heal.*

§ 67. **A New Set of Diphthongs in M.E.** grew out of the consonants *g*, *h*, and *w* in the following way : —

### A. The diphthongs produced by an O.E. *g*

§ 68. O.E. *g* was vocalized to *i* after a palatal vowel, to *u* after a guttural vowel, and joined with the preceding vowel to make a diphthong or long vowel as follows : —

I. After a palatal vowel.

§ 69. (a) O.E. *æ̆g* > M.E. *ai*; e.g. *day* 19 (O.E. *dæ̆g*).

(b) O.E. *ĕg*, *ēg* > M.E. *ēi*;[1] e.g. *wey* 34 (O.E. *wĕg*), *either* (O.E. *ēgþer*).

(c) O.E. *ēag*,[2] *ēg*,[2] *īeg* (umlaut of *ēa*) > M.E. *ēi*; e.g. O.E. *ēage* > *eye* (Ellesmere Ms.) 10.

(d) O.E. *ēog*, *ĭg*, *īg*, *ȳg*, or *ȳg* (when not W.S. *ie*, *īe*) > M.E. *ī*; e.g. O.E. *lēogan* > M.E. *lien* (N.E. *lie*, to tell a falsehood); O.E. *lĭgaþ* > M.E. *līeth*, *lith* (N.E. *lies*, reclines); O.E. *nĭgon* > M.E. *nīne*; O.E. *drȳge* > M.E. *drīe*.

II. After a guttural vowel.

§ 70. (a) O.E. *ăg* > M.E. *au* (*aw*); e.g. O.E. *lăgu* > M.E. *lawe* (N.E. *law*).

(b) O.E. *āg* > M.E. *o͡u* (*ow*); e.g. O.E. *āgan* > M.E. *o͡uwen* (N.E. *own*).

(c) O.E. *ŏg*[3] > M.E. *o͡u* (*ow*); e.g. O.E. *bŏga* > M.E. *bo͡uwe* (N.E. *bow*, 'bo͡u').

---

[1] By Chaucer's time the sounds *ai* and *ei* have fallen together as *ai*, but the earlier distinction is still kept up in the writing of good scribes.

[2] In some dialects *e͡g* > *e͡i* > *ii* > *ī*; e.g. M.E. *teyen*, *tien* (O.E. *tēgan*, 'tie'). In Anglian dialects *ēag* > *ē͡g*: so here too we have double forms; e.g. *ȳe* (O.E. *ēage*) : *melodȳe* 10.

[3] Since the *g* was not followed by a consonant, and therefore the *ŏ* was in an open accented syllable and became *ō* (§ 52).

(d) O.E. *ōg, ŭg, ūg*[1] > M.E. *ū* (*ou, ow*); e.g. O.E. *bŭgan* > M.E. *bowen* (N.E *bow*, to 'bau').

### B. Diphthongs produced by an O.E. *h*

§ 71. In the case of *h*, a corresponding parasitic vowel is developed. Here the *h* is retained and written *gh*[2] in l.M.E. and N.E.: —

I. After a palatal vowel.

§ 72. (a) O.E. *ĕh* (Angl. *ĕh, ĕh* = W.S. *ĕah*) > M.E. *eigh*.[3]

(b) O.E. *ǣh* with a consonant following was shortened, giving *ĕh*, or *ăh* (see § 55, note 1); so e.g. O.E. *rǣhte* > M.E. *reighte, raughte* (both forms found in Chaucer).

(c) O.E. *ēah* > *eigh*, which in some dialects developed into M.E. *īgh*;[4] cf. § 69 (c), note.

(d) O.E. *ēoh, ĭh, īh, ўh*, and *ȳh* (when not W.S. *īe, ĭe*) > M.E. *īgh*.

II. After a guttural vowel.

§ 73. (a) O.E. *ĕah* > M.E. *augh*; e.g. W.S. *sĕah* > M.E. *saugh, saw*.

---

[1] After a long guttural vowel O.E. final *g* > *h*, and the development was according to § 73 (d).

[2] In some Mss. it is written *h*; when final or followed by a vowel it is frequently dropped; e.g. *highe* is often written *hye*, and *high* is usually written *hy*.

[3] Therefore *saugh, seigh*, in Chaucer, from W.S. *seah* and Angl. *seh* respectively.

[4] So *heigh* (O.E. *hēah*): *seigh* 1066, and *Emelye* : *hye* 2577; cf. the two preterits of *flēn*, viz. *fleigh* and *flȳ*, corresponding to O.E. *flēah*.

(b) O.E. *āh*[1] > M.E. *ǭugh*; e.g. O.E. *dāh* > M.E. *dough* (N.E. 'dǭu').

(c) O.E. *ŏh*, or *ōh* shortened by a following consonant (§ 55) > M.E. *ŏugh*; e.g. O.E. *sōhte, sŏhte* > M.E. *sŏughte* (N.E. 'sǭt').

(d) O.E. *ōh, ŭh, ūh* > M.E. *ūgh* (*ough*); e.g. O.E. *ginōh* > M.E. *ynough*, O.E. *þrŭh* > M.E. *through*, O.E. *rūh* > M.E. *rough*.

### C. Diphthongs produced by an O.E. *w*

§ 74. An O.E. *w* becomes M.E. *u* after a vowel (written *w*), and joins with it to make a diphthong whose last element is *u*.

§ 75. (a) O.E. *ăw* > M.E. *au* (*aw*); e.g. O.E. *clăwu* > M.E. *clawe* (N.E. *claw*).

(b) O.E. *āw* and *ōw* > M.E. *ǭu* and *ǭu* respectively (*ow*); e.g. O.E. *cnāwan* > M.E. *knǭwe*, O.E. *grōwan*, > M.E. *grǭwe*; cf. § 4, note 2.

(c) O.E. *ĕow, ēaw, ǣw* > M.E. *ę̄u* (*ew*), O.E. *eowu* > M.E. *ę̄we*; e.g. O.E. *scēawian* > M.E. *shę̄wen*, O.E. *lǣwed* > M.E. *lę̄wed* (N.E. *lewd*).

(d) O.E. *ēow, ĭw*, and *īw* > M.E. *ę̄u* (*ew*); e.g. O.E. *cnēow* > M.E. *knę̄w* (N.E. *knew*), O.E. *hīwa* (servant) > M.E. *hę̄we*.

### D. Diphthongs produced by an O.E. *c*

§ 76. Sometimes a diphthong *ei* is produced by the vocalization of *c* through an intervening consonant; e.g. O.E. *cwencte* > M.E. *queynte* 2334; so *bleynte*. So *fleisshe*,

---

[1] *āh* followed by a consonant was of course shortened (§ 55) to *ăh*, and became M.E. *augh*.

*freisshe, threisshe* often occur in Chaucer Mss.; e.g. *fleissh* 344 is the form in Co, Pe, $H_4$.

§ 77. **General Remarks on these Diphthongs.** — While a full knowledge of the corresponding O.E. word-forms is necessary to distinguish Chaucer's diphthongs, it is possible to learn much from their N.E. sound and spelling.

(1) If in N.E. spelling the diphthong is followed by *gh*, it was one of the series produced by *h*; if not, it was due to the vocalization of *g* or *w*.

(2) Whenever we have the N.E. *au*-sound, as in *house*, Chaucer's vowel was $\bar{u}$, though written *ou*, or *o* before *gh*.

(3) Where the sound of the N.E. diphthong is $\bar{o}$ (*bought*, etc.), the source of it was $\breve{o}h$ + cons.

(4) Where *ough* = *of*, we have the dialectic variant of *gh*, viz. *f*, which shortened the $\bar{u}$; so the source was $\bar{o} + gh$, or $\bar{u}$, $\breve{u} + gh$.

(5) Where our N.E. sound of *ou* (*ow*) is $\bar{o}u$ (*grow*, etc.), we have the descendant of the M.E. diphthong $\bar{o}u$ or $\bar{o}u$, but it is not possible to tell which without a knowledge of O.E.

§ 78. **Vowels in unstressed syllables.**

(a) In inflectional syllables, all O.E. vowels became M.E. *ĕ*. This development changed the entire inflectional system, so that O.E. *-ath* > M.E. *-eth*, O.E. *-as* > M.E. *-es*, O.E. *-u* > M.E. *-e*, O.E. *-a* > M.E. *-e*, etc. For instances, see Inflection. Unstressed *e* is frequently written *i* or *u* in the Mss.; e.g. *habergeon* of El. in 76 appears as *habirioun* in Gg. and as *haburgon* in Co. In Chaucer's speech it must have had a close sound, somewhat like that of N.E. *i*, as he rhymes it frequently with the

verb *is*;[1] e.g. *clerkes* : *clerk is* B 4426; *deedis* : *deed is* D 1155.

(b) A M.E. unstressed vowel, followed by a single liquid or nasal, and situated between a primarily and a secondarily stressed syllable, is often lost, though usually written; e.g. *heuenes* or *heunes*, *euerich* or *euęrich*, *delyuere* 84, and *considere* 3088.

(c) In M.E. of Chaucer's period the vowel in inflectional syllables of words of more than two syllables is usually lost whether it is final or protected by a consonant. Instances are *degrées* 1890, *langáge* 2227, *worstede* 262, *palfréys* (: *harneys*) 2495, *bargáynes* 282, *yéddynges* 237, *félawe* 1192, 1194 (but *feláwe* 395); in compound words: *bákemete* 343, *felawęship* 474, *frendshipe* 428; in inflection: *his ouęreste* 290, *bilouęd* 215, *herd* 'haired' (: *berd*) 2518. The *e* is usually written in the Mss. But when the dropping of the vowel would bring together two consonants not easily pronounced the full form is used; e.g. *corages* 11. The loss of the vowel of the inflectional syllable, or of final *e*, in some few instances takes place in dissyllabic forms,[2] especially in words of frequent occurrence, such as auxiliary verbs; e.g. *were*, *hadde*, *koude*, etc. For instances see Inflection.

§ 79. **Consonants.** — The chief consonant changes concern *c* and *g*.

---

[1] Final *s* had not yet acquired its *z*-sound in Chaucer's time; cf. *this* : *is* 1247, 2368; *was* : *bras* 366.

[2] Except in the case of the weak declension of adjectives preceded by a pronominal word.

### *c, sc*

(a) O.E. *c* > *ch* before the palatal vowels *æ̆, ǣ, ĕ, ē, ĕa, ēa, ĕo, ēo, ĭ, ī,* or their umlauts,[1] while it remains *c* (*k*) before the guttural vowels *ă, ā, ŏ, ō, ŭ, ū,* and their umlauts; e.g. O.E. *cēap* > M.E. *chēp*, O.E. *cĭld* > M.E. *chīld*, O.E. *cirice* > M.E. *chirche;* but O.E. *corn* = M.E. *corn*, O.E. *cynn* (*y* = umlaut of *ŭ*) > M.E. *kinn.*

(b) This *ch* is also developed if a *j* or *i* followed the *c* in the prehistoric period of English; e.g. O.E. *streccan* > M.E. *strecchen*, O.E. *tǣcan* > M.E. *tęchen.*

(c) There is a tendency for O.E. final *c* to become M.E. *ch* after vowels, especially, after *i*, and sometimes after *l* or *n*; e.g. O.E. *pīc* > M.E. *pich* (N.E. *pĭtch*[2]). In some unstressed syllables it is lost; e.g. O.E. *ic* > M.E. *ich, I*, O.E. adj. suffix *-līc* > M.E. *-lȳ.*

(d) O.E. intervocalic *c* is lost in *mād* < O.E. *macod*, N.E. *made.*

(e) O.E. *sc* regularly became M.E. *sh*; e.g. O.E. *sceal* > M.E. *shal* (N.E. *shall*), O.E. *fisc* > M.E. *fish* (N.E. *fish*).

### *g*

§ 80. (a) O.E. initial *g* followed by a vowel that was originally palatal developed into a M.E. *y* (i.e. the sound represented in English by *y* in such a word as *young*), which was written *y* or ȝ; e.g. O.E. *giefan* (Merc. *gefan*) > M.E. *yeuen.* It remained *g* before

---

[1] This development did not take place in Northern dialects, and in many instances where *c* is followed by *ă* the M.E. words start from Anglian forms, which had *ă*, not *ĕa*, in such cases; e.g. O.E. *cealf* (Merc. *calf*) > M.E. *calf.*

[2] This *ch* shortens the *ī.*

a guttural vowel or the umlaut of a guttural vowel;[1] e.g. M.E. *gilden* (O.E. *gylden*, cf. O.E. *gold*).

(b) The O.E. prefix *ge-*, *gi-*, develops into *y-* in M.E., which in late M.E. is usually lost.[2] In Chaucer it is used or not, according to the demands of the metre; e.g. *yronne* (O.E. *gerunnen*) 8.

(c) For the development of *g* after a vowel see §§ 68–70.

(d) After a liquid *g* becomes *w*;[3] e.g. *borwe* (O.E. dat. *beorge*) 1622, *morwe* (O.E. dat. *morgenne*) 334, *folwed* (O.E. *folgode*) 528; so *galwes* (cf. O.E. *gealga*) B 3941.

(e) Similarly *h* after a liquid > *w*; e.g. *arwes* (cf. O.E. *earh*) 104.

As to the other O.E. consonants in M.E. the principal points are the following: —

*w*

§ 81. (a) Initial *w* in O.E. *wl-* is lost. It survives, however, in *wlatsom*, B 3814. O.E. *hw-* is written *wh-* in M.E. (*qu* or *quh* in Northern M.E.).

(b) There was a tendency in M.E. to drop O.E. *w* when it came before *u* or *o*; e.g. *suster* 871, *soster* A 3486 (O.E. *sweoster*, *swuster*), M.E. *swote* beside *soote* 1.

(c) *w* was lost also when *ne was* > *nas*, *ne were* > *nere*.

---

[1] The *giue* which Chaucer also uses is from O.N. *gifa*; M.E. *geue*, *yiue* 505, are probably due to confusion between *yeue* and *giue*.

[2] It survives as *e-* in N.E. *enough*.

[3] Forms in *-y*, like *mary* 380 (*marrow*), *bely* I 351 (*bellows*), are due to O.E. forms which had developed a parasitic vowel, *i*, before the *g*, **mearig*, **belig*. (The suffix *-bury* 16 is from the O.E. dative *byrig*.) The parasitic vowel in the case of *h* was *u*, so that O.E. *-uh* became M.E. *-ūgh* (*-ough*); e.g. O.E. *þuruh* > M.E. *thorough* (for *thorw* cf. § 80 (e)).

### *m, n*

§ 82. (a) O.E. final *m* in unstressed syllables > M.E. *n*; e.g. *for the nones* (O.E. *for þǣm ānes*) 379, *atte nale* (O.E. *æt þǣm ealoþe*[1]) D 1349.

(b) O.E. and M.E. final *n* can be dropped; e.g. *ę̄*, *ę̄n* (O.E. *ān*), *mayde* (O.E. *mægden*). In inflectional forms of verbs it is preserved or not, according to the needs of the metre; e.g. *to seken hym* 510, *to drawen euery wight* 842, in order to prevent elision. In the weak forms of adjectives it is always dropped.

### *l*

§ 83. (a) Medial *l* is lost before *c* in *ę̄che* (O.E. *ǣlc*, cf. § 79 (c)), *which* (O.E. *hwylc*), *swiche* (later *swuch*, *such*, cf. §§ 64, 81 (b), from O.E. *swylc*).

(b) Final *l* is lost in *muche* (O.E. *mycel*), *lite* (O.E. *lytel*).

### *f, v* (*u*)

§ 84. (a) The labial spirant is voiced when it stands between vowels, and in M.E. is written *u*. This gives rise to varying stem-forms in inflection; e.g. nom. *lyf*, gen. *lyues*; cf. *yaf* and *yeuen*.

(b) It is sometimes lost when it stands between two vowels, and the preceding vowel if short is lengthened; e.g. O.E. *hēafod* > e.M.E. *hę̄ued* > M.E. *heed* (N.E. *head*), O.E. *hlāford* > e.M.E. *lǭuerd* > M.E. *lǭrd*, O.E. *hlǣfdige* > e.M.E. *lĕuedi*, *lăuedi* > M.E. *lādy* (N.E. *lady*). So *hāde* (: *spāde* 554, : *blāde* 617) is to be explained from e.M.E. *hauede*, and not as a forced rhyme.

(c) *f* is subject to assimilation, cf. § 87.

---

[1] These phrases are incorrectly divided in M.E.

### *th* (*þ*), *d*

§ 85. (a) Intervocalic *th* (*þ*) is dropped in a few words, the most common instances are *ō̆r* beside *ō̆ther* (O.E. *āðor*), *wher* 2397, beside *whether*.

(b) Chaucer uses both forms of O.E. *cūþe;* e.g. *kouthe* (: *Dertemouthe*) 390, and *koude* (: *loude*) 713.

(c) *th* is also subject to assimilation; cf. § 87.

(d) In *gospel* (O.E. *godspel*) 481, and *answere* (O.E. *andswerian*) *d* is lost.

### *h* (written *gh* when medial or final)

§ 86. Initial *h* in the O.E. combinations *hn, hr, hl,* is lost in M.E. For other developments of *h* see §§ 71, 72, 73.

§ 87. **The O.E. Consonant Assimilations** are carried still further in M.E. The instances (save *æt þe* > *atte*) are chiefly in the contracted forms of the third pers. sing., and in the preterite tenses of weak verbs; see Inflection, §§ 175, 177. O.E. *f* is assimilated to the following consonant in O.E. *wifman* > M.E. *wimman* > *womman* (cf. § 64), and in O.E. *hæfde* > M.E. *hadde*.

§ 88. **Unhistoric Consonants.** — (a) *p* is often inserted in M.E. between *m* and *n*; e.g. *Sompnour* 623 (in $H_4$) from O.Fr. *Somenour;* so *empten* (cf. O.E. *ǣmtig*), *dampnen* (O.Fr. *damner*), *nempnen* (O.E. *nemnan*), *solempne* (O.Fr. *solemne*) 209.

(b) *b* likewise is developed between *m* and *r*, cf. M.E. *slombren* and O.E. *sluma;* and after *m*, e.g. *thombe* 563 (O.E. *þūma*).

(c) *d* is developed between *n* and *r* in M.E. *thunder* (O.E. *þunor*); and between *l* and *r* in *alder* (*-best*) 710 (O.E. *ealra-*).

### OLD-NORSE ELEMENT IN MIDDLE-ENGLISH

§ 89. Most of the Scandinavian loan-words came into English during the late O.E. and early M.E. periods; so that they fall under the sound laws discussed in the previous chapter, each sound following the development of the English sound which most nearly corresponded to it; e.g. O.N. *lāgr* > M.E. *lǭwe*, O.N. *felagi* > M.E. *felawe*, O.N. *reisa* > M.E. *reisen, raisen.*

### THE OLD-FRENCH ELEMENT IN MIDDLE-ENGLISH

§ 90. The same thing happened in the case of Old-French words; but here the student must be careful to note the time of the borrowing and the dialect of Old-French from which the word was taken. Most of the words that came into early M.E. from French sources have Anglo-Norman forms. The same words often came in later with Continental forms, giving rise to doublets; e.g. *conveien, convoien;* Norm. Fr., *conveyer;* Cont. Fr., *convoyer.* While such words generally fell together with the M.E. forms which most nearly corresponded (e.g. O.Fr. *rǫse* > M.E. *rǭse*), several special points are worthy of notice: —

(1) O.Fr. *ou* from Mediæval Latin *ǭ* > M.E. *ū* (= *ou*); e.g. O.Fr. *flour* (*flǭrem*) > M.E. *flour* (= *flūr*); O.Fr. *honour* > M.E. *honour* (= *honūr*).

(2) In many O.Fr. verbs the stem varied according to differing conditions of accent in Latin. To English ears this seemed to be a difference of verb-stem; so we have in M.E. double forms; e.g. *proven* and *preven, removen* and *remeven*, etc.

(3) The diphthongs *ai, ei,* fell together in Anglo-Norman just as in M.E.; so that we have written forms *faith, feith*, to represent M.E. *faith.*

(4) Before *s* and a consonant, a palatal consonant and liquid, or *s*, *t*, *d*, *v*, not followed by a consonant, these diphthongs underwent a further development into $\bar{e}$, so that we get double forms in M.E.; e.g. *eise*, $\bar{e}se$; *saisoun*, $s\bar{e}soun$.

(5) The French $\bar{u}$ retained its French sound in early M.E. In late M.E. it is written *ew* when final or before a vowel, giving such forms as *virtew*, *crewel*. These appear in Chaucer Mss.

(6) At first, O.Fr. borrowings had the Fr. syllable stress, e.g. *honoúr*; later, they took English stress, e.g. *hónour*. This gave rise to double forms in Chaucer, differing in respect to accent. See Part IV.

# PART II.—INFLECTION

§ 91. According to the principle stated in § 78 (a), a M.E. inflectional syllable can only contain the vowel *e*,[1] with the corresponding consonant, if there was one, except in the case of *m*, which is weakened to *n* (§ 82), and of *n*, which is lost or retained at the will of the poet. This influence in M.E. Inflection was supplemented by another, viz. that of analogy, through which inflectional forms of commoner occurrence either became standard for all forms or modified those adopted as standard; as, for instance, in the case of nouns, the nominative case singular and plural; in verbs, the stem of the third person singular.

### THE INFLECTION OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

§ 92. Most nouns which in O.E. ended in a consonant went over into the *ă*-declension in M.E. The nominative form was generalized for all cases in the singular and plural except the genitive, which retained the O.E. *-es* of the singular for both numbers.

---

[1] This inflectional *-e*, especially when final, was fast disappearing in the standard speech of the 14th and early 15th century; Lydgate rhymes such forms as *to look* and *he took* (Pilgr. of Man, 2277). But with Chaucer the *-e* is nearly always found in the middle of the verse, and appears without exception at the end. His conservative treatment had undoubtedly much to do with the preserving the *-e* as a literary tradition through the 15th century.

§ 93. **The Nominative Singular** ends in *-e* where the O.E. nominative ended in a vowel ;[1] e.g.

From the *jă*-declension ; e.g. *ende* (*ende*) 1865.
*ō*-declension ; e.g. *care* (*cearu*, Merc. *caru*) 1321.
*i*-declension ; e.g. *spere* (*spere*) 114.
*u*-declension ; e.g. *nose* (*nosu*) 123 ; *sone* (*sunu*) 79.
*n*-declension ; e.g. *nonne* (*nunne*) 163 ; *nekke* (*hnecca*) 238 ; *steede* (*stēda*) 2727 ; *tyme* (*tīma*) 44 ; *bowe* (*boga*) 108 ; *ye* (*ēage*) 10.

Likewise where the O.Fr. nominative ended in *-e*; e.g. *Ioye* 1871, *diete* 435, *chauntrye* 510, *visage* 627, *Rome* (: *to me*) 671.

§ 94. **Loss of Final *-e*.** — This final *-e* is usually dropped in words of more than two syllables (cf. § 78, c). In dissyllables, too, it sometimes does not count as a syllable in the verse ; e.g. *nōsę* (O.E. *nosu*) 2167, 123 ; *dorę* (O.E. *doru*) 2422 (cf. *dore* 550) ; *tymę* (O.E. *tīma*) 2474, 102 ; *metę* (O.E. *mete*) 136 ; and perhaps *hopę* (O.E. *hopa*) in 88, though the verse-pause comes after *hope* in *a*, see § 259 (a).

§ 95. **Unhistoric Final *-e*.** — As the *ō*-declension was the one which contained most of the feminine nouns of O.E. and its final *-ŭ* > M.E. *-e*, and as most of the other feminine nouns were in the weak declension ending in *-e* which remained in M.E., it was natural that final *-e* should be considered the typical ending for a feminine noun. Most M.E. feminines, therefore, take *-e* in the nominative singular, even when there was no final vowel in O.E., O.N., or O.Fr. ; e.g. *roote* (O.N. *rōt*) 423 ; *boone : soone* (O.N.

[1] The Ellesmere and Hengwrt (*a*) Mss. are almost always accurate in writing the final vowel in all forms of inflection. Other Mss., written when the *-e* was becoming silent, or by scribes in whose dialect it was already silent, are not at all trustworthy.

*bōn*) 2269; *youthe* (O.E. *geogup*, later *iugup*) 461; *queene* (O.E. *cwēn*) 1685, 923; *reste* (O.E. *rest*) 1003; *wounde* (O.E. *wund*) 1010; *soule* (O.E. *sāwol*) 2786, *heuene* (l.O.E. *heofone*, fem.) 519, etc.[1]

§ 96. Proper names sometimes have their classic form, sometimes an Anglicized or O.Fr. form; e.g. *Saturnus* 2443, *Saturne* 2453; *Theseus* 2523, *Thesëus* 1883.

§ 97. **Genitive Singular.** — The regular genitive ending is *-es*; in words of more than two syllables, *-ẹs*. There are a few cases where the M.E. noun preserves the historical development of some O.E. declension other than the *ă*-declension.

(a) The *-an* of the weak declension; e.g. *his lady* (O.E. *hlǣfdigan*) *grace* 88; cf. 695; *at the sonne vpriste* 1051.

(b) A form without any ending in words denoting relationship; e.g. *my fader soule* 781, *a kynges brother sone* 3084; but usually, *fadres, broþeres*.

(c) Proper nouns ending in *-s* appear without the genitive ending;[2] e.g. *to Venus temple* 2272, *Epicurus owne sone* 336.

(d) A few Romance words do not take the genitive ending; e.g. *your heritage right*, Compleynte vnto Pite 71 (Gl. Ch., p. 327), *the rose*[3] *colour* 1038.

---

[1] But a few O.E. masculines take this *-e*, on what grounds has not yet been explained; e.g. *weye* (already in the Ormulum with *-e*) 791, but *wey* 34. The Acc. *feere* (: *geere, theere*) in B 803 may be due to analogy from the dative form in phrases like *for feere* 2344, 2686. Similarly, in the case of *weye*. *Folde* (: *witholde*) 512 (O.E. *fald*, given as neuter by Sievers, as masculine by Sweet) may be due to confusion with *folde* (O.E. *folde*), meaning 'enclosed ground.' Two neuters, *gate* (O.E. *geat*) 1415 and *dale* (O.E. *dæl*) also take this unhistoric *-e*.

[2] Cf. N.E. forms with apostrophe after the *-s*.

[3] But possibly the O.Fr. adj. *rosée*, rosy; cf. G 254, House of Fame, 135. Chaucer's form is *rosene* in *Boece* 353.

§ 98. **Dative Singular.** — Though in most cases the dative singular is like the nominative singular, there are a few forms in Chaucer that go back to the O.E. dative ending in *-e*; e.g. *of towne* 566, *for feere* 2344, 2686, *yeer by yere* 1203, *in honde* 2347, *of wighte* 2145, 2520, *on lyue* 3039.

§ 99. **The Plural.** — The usual ending for the nom. plu. is *-es* (from O.E. *-as*), which generally became *-s* (*-ẹs*) in words of two or more syllables, especially after a liquid or nasal and after a vowel (cf. § 78, (c)); e.g. *battailles* 61, *auentures* 795, *deyntees* 346, *palmeres* 13, *ladyes* 999 (cf. *ladys* 2579), *obsequies* 993, *rubyes* 2147, *daungers* 402, *housbondes* 460, *louedayes* 258.

§ 100. The plural is found without inflectional ending in a number of neuter nouns whose nom. plu. in O.E. had no inflectional ending; e.g. *twenty yeer of age* 601, *his hors were goode* 74, *twenty pound* 2520, *sheep, neet* 597, *swyn, hors* 598. Likewise *wepne* (O.E. *wǣpnu*) in 1591 seems to be plural; cf. B 3214. Also, in the case of *freend* 3050, 3051, which had the O.E. pl. *frēond*, there is no inflectional ending. So, frequently in the case of *night* (O.E. pl. *niht*), *thing* (O.E. pl. *þing*), *winter, mile*, and by analogy in a few Romance words denoting measure; cf. *an hondred part* D 2062.

§ 101. If the nom. sing. ends in *s* no change is made for plural; cf. *caas* 323, 2971, *paas* 1890, 2901; similarly *vers*.

§ 102. Monosyllabic words ending in a vowel sometimes form the plural by adding *-s* (*-ẹs*); e.g. *fees* 317, 1803, *shoes* 457; but not always; e.g. *knees* 1103, *trees* 607.

§ 103. There are a few instances in Chaucer where monosyllabic words ending in a consonant other than *s* seem to have plurals in *-s* (*-ẹs*) just as in N.E.;[1] e.g. (from the Pr.

[1] They occur frequently in l.M.E. Professor Schick, in his edition of the *Temple of Glass*, p. lxv of Introduction, notices one in *Falls of*

& Kn. T.) *poyntz and caas* 2971, *the goddes aboue* 2479, *and clothes for thy beddynge* 1616.

§ 104. The O.E. nouns which form their plural by umlaut have corresponding forms in Chaucer; e.g. *men* (: *hen*) D 1111 (but *lemmans* D 1998). So *fēt*, *gēs*, *tēth*, *kȳn* (with *-n* inflection added).

§ 105. Many nouns of the O.E. *-n* declension retain the old plural form. Chaucer uses *-es* forms side by side with *-en* forms; e.g. *asshen* 1364 (also *ashes*), *ȳen*, *eyen* 152 (also *ȳes*), *been* (also *bees*), *fōn* (also *fōs*), *tōn* (also *tōes*), *shōn* (also *shōes*).

§ 106. From analogy with these, *-en* is added to the plural *chĭlder* (O.E. *cildru*); similarly, *doughtren*, *brēthern*, *sustren;* cp. *kȳn* (O.E. plural, *cȳ*).

### ADJECTIVES

§ 107. In the inflection of adjectives, as in the inflection of nouns, O.E. nominatives or O.Fr. nominatives ending in *-e* retain the *-e* in M.E. Of the O.E. forms with *-e*, the following occur most frequently: *soote* 1, *swēte* (O.E. *swēte*) 5, *grēne* (O.E. *grēne*) 103, *clēne* (O.E. *clǣne*) 504, *rīche* (O.E. *rīce*) 864, *trēwe* (O.E. *trīewe*) 531, 959, *scheene* (O.E. *scēone*) 972, *dēre* (O.E. *dīere*) 1822; likewise, *thinne*, *blithe*, *kcene*, *derne*, *sōfte* (O.E. *sēfte*), *drie* (O.E. *drȳge*).[1] So with

*Princes*, 19, b. There are several others in Zupitza-Schleich's edition of Lydgate's *Fabula Duorum Mercatorum*. Many are to be found, too, in the M.E. *Romaunt of the Rose*.

[1] Besides these there are a few strong adjectives which have an unhistorical *-e* in M.E. that is probably due to the influence of weak forms, but has not yet been clearly explained, — *bare* (but read *barę*) 2877, *tame* 2186. Ten Brink wrongly cites *fayre* (see § 115, d), *lyte* (see § 83, b), *euene* (see § 112), *lowe* (in 522 *lough;* but *lowe* does occur in Chaucer). Skeat adds *longe;* but see § 112. For *alle* see § 144.

O.Fr. adjectives: *straunge* (O.Fr. *estrange*, cf. § 6) 464, *solempne* (O.Fr. *solemne*) 209, *nyce* (O.Fr. *nice*) 398, *queynte* (: *queynte*, 3d sing. pret.) (O.Fr. *cointe*) 2333.

§ 108. This *-e* is usually dropped in words of more than two syllables; cf. § 78 (c).

§ 109. *-wo* stem adjectives with nominative in *-u* have *-we* in Chaucer; e.g. *yelęwe* (O.E. *geolu*) 1929, *falwe* (O.E. *fealu*) 1364.

§ 110. The *-e*, though often written, is generally silent in adjectives of more than one syllable in the nominative; e.g. *a thredbarę cope* 260, *the shorteste* 836; but *certeyne dayes* 2996.

§ 111. **The Strong and Weak Declension** of adjectives is still kept up in M.E. The strong (indefinite) form is uninflected in the singular, and has *-e* in the plural; the weak (definite) form has *-e* in both singular and plural.[1]

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Strong: | Sing. | *yong, swete.* |
| | Plu. | *yonge, swete.* |
| Weak: | Sing. | *the yong-e* (*sonne*), *swete.* |
| | Plu. | *the yong-e, swete.* |

§ 112. In the singular of the strong form, some relics of earlier datives (O.E. *-um*) occur in phrases; e.g. *of euene lengthe* 83.

§ 113. An O.E. strong genitive plural survives in *aller* (O.E. *ealra*); e.g. *hir aller cappe* 586 (cf. also 799, 823). It sometimes has the form *alder, alther*, cf. § 88 (c); e.g. *alderbest* 710.

§ 114. When the plural form of the strong declension is used in the predicate, it is sometimes inflected, sometimes not; e.g. *his hors werę goode* 74, *fetheres lowe* 107, *wayke*

[1] The final *-n* of O.E., or of e.M.E., is always dropped in the inflection of adjectives.

*been the oxen* 887; but *nat fully quyke ne fully dede they were* 1015.

§ 115. **The weak form** of the adjective is used as follows:—

(a) When it is preceded by the definite article, a possessive or a demonstrative pronoun;[1] e.g. *the longe day* 354, *atte* (= *at the*) *leeste waye* 1121, *his halfe cours* 8, *this goode man* 850.

(b) After a noun in the genitive; e.g. *Epicurus owene sone* 336.

(c) Before a noun in the vocative case: e.g. *faire fresshe May* 1511, *leeue brother* 1184.

(d) Before a proper name;[2] e.g. *by Seynte Loy* (Mss. *seynt*) 120, *vnto Seinte Poules* 509, *goode Arcite* 2855, *faire Venus* 2663, *of faire, yonge, fresshe Venus* 2386; cf. 2369, 2032, 431; so, perhaps, *Veyne-Glorie* 2240.

(e) When it is used substantively; e.g. *the beste* 387, *by weste* 388.

§ 116. In Chaucer, as in M.E. generally, a few instances of plural adjectives with O.Fr. inflection are found, but none in the Prol. and Knightes Tale; e.g. *places delitables* (: *tables*) F 899, *houres inequales* Astro. 186 (Gl. Ch., p. 647), *souereynes, deuynes substaunces*, 'supreme spiritual substances,' Boece 1658 (Gl. Ch., p. 424).

For Pronominal Adjectives see Pronouns.

---

[1] *Left* and *right* in phrases denoting direction or position have the strong form; e.g. *the left hand* 2953, *the right hond* 2905.

[2] This principle was first pointed out by Professor Zupitza (*Deutsche Litt. Zeit.*, April, 1885, cols. 607–610). Chaucer's practice in the case of *seynt* varies (but not according as the first syllable of the following word is accented or not, as has been stated by some scholars); e.g. the strong form occurs in 173, 340, 466, 826; cf. also B 1338, B 1545, B 1704, B 1772, D 1443, D 1564, E 1154, G 1185. A dissyllabic *seïnt* is purely fanciful.

### NUMERAL ADJECTIVES

§ 117. **Cardinal.** — The numeral *one* (O.E. *ān*) has two forms, *ō*, *ōn*, and *a*, *an* (due to lack of sentence-stress)[1]; *make a nombre*, 'make one number,' i.e. 'add together' Astro. 263 (Gl. Ch., p. 651), *noght o word* 304, *oon of hem* 148, *a point of alle my sorwes smerte* 2766.

The cardinal numbers 1–9 are usually inflected with *-e*; e.g. *tweye*, *tweyne* (O.E. masc. *twegen*), *twō* (O.E. fem. and neut. *twā*), *thrē*, *foure* (O.E. *fēower*) 210, *fyue* (*fyue* in B 3602), *sixe*, *seuene* (O.E. *seofon*), *eighte*, *nyne* (O.E. *nigon*, but North. *nione*). So *twelue* 527, *threttene*, etc.; but *twelf-monthe* 651.

§ 118. **The Ordinals** are *firste* or *forme* (an old superlative), *other* or *secounde*, *thridde*, *ferthe*, etc., ending in *-the*, except *sixte*, *eighte*, *twelfte*.

Numeral adverbs for 1, 2, 3, end in *-es* (cf. § 122); *ones*, *twyes*, *thryes*. But cardinals are sometimes used instead; e.g. *two so ryche* Leg. 2291 (Gl. Ch., p. 621), *Thogh ye had lost the ferse* (Mss. *ferses*) *twelue*, 'Though you had lost the queen a dozen times' Duch. 723.

### ADVERBS

§ 119. The regular adverb ending in M.E., as in O.E., is *-e*[2]; cp. *and faire ryde* 94, with *a fair forheed* 154. So *soore* 230, *smerte* 149, *inne* 41, *moore* 825, etc. In adverbs of more than two syllables, the *-e* is usually *-ę*; e.g. *sometymę* 3024.

---

[1] *a*, *ōn* are used regularly after *many*; e.g. *many a*, *many ōn*. Sometimes after *euerich*; e.g. *euerich a word*, 'every single word' 733. So in the common M.E. phrase, *on vche a side*.

[2] In O.E. these adverb forms had no umlaut; e.g. adj. *swēte*, adv. *swōte*. This led to confusion in M.E., the vowel of the adverb often appearing in the adjective; e.g. *swete* and *swoote*, *soote* (§ 81, (b)) 1.

§ 120. Adverbs which had no *-e* in O.E. often had the *-e* added in M.E.; e.g. *heere* 1585; but usually the *-e* in these words is not sounded within the verse in Chaucer, though written; e.g. *Thanne* 12; so usually *here*, but *heere* (: *deere* wk.) 1819, *there*, *whanne*; *ofte* is usually dissyllabic.

§ 121. When this adverbial ending was added to the adjective-suffix *-lic* (as in M.E. adjectives like *estatlich* 140, *freendlich* 2680), making *-lice*, double forms arose according as the final *e* was lost or not (§ 79 (c)); cf. *roialliche ybore* 378, and *roially* 1713; *rudeliche* 734.

§ 122. Case-endings are sometimes used to form adverbs, especially the *-es* of the genitive singular; e.g. *thries* 63, *nedes* 2324, *his thankes* ('for his part,' 'willingly') 1626, *hir thankes* ('for their part,' 'willingly') 2114. So *ayeines*, *amonges*, *besides*, etc. Also the accusative; e.g. *haluen dēl* (O.E. *healfne dǣl*); and prepositional phrases, *among* (O.E. *on-gemange*), *aliue* (O.E. *on-life*), *to-morwe* (O.E. *tō-morgen*), *anon* (O.E. *an-ān*).

*Wonder* is sometimes an adverb; e.g. *wonder diligent* 483 (cf. O.E. *wundrum fægr*).

### THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

§ 123. The comparison of adjectives in M.E. is practically the same as in N.E., except that the *-er*, *-est* forms are not limited to monosyllabic adjectives. A final consonant of the positive was doubled in the comparative and superlative. In M.E. an originally long O.E. vowel was thus shortened (cf. § 55); e.g. *grēt*, *grĕtter*.

§ 124. *lenger*, *strenger*, *elder*, from *long*, *strong*, *ōld*, still retain the umlauted vowel of the O.E. forms.

§ 125. Of the irregularly compared adjectives, *good* has comparative forms, *better*, *bettre*, *bet*; *bad* has *badder*, *werse*

(: *reherse*), *worse* (: *curs*) ; *muche*(*l*) has comp. *mǭre* (O.E. *māra*), *mǭ*[1] (O.E. *mā*), and superlative *mǭst* (Angl. *māst*), *mēst* (W.S. *mǣst*) ; *lyte*(*l*) has *lăsse*, *lĕsse* (O.E. *lǣssa* — cf. § 55), *neigh*, *ny*, has comp. *nerre*, *ner*, superlative *next*; *fer* has comp. *ferre*; *dēre* has comp. *derre*.

§ 126. The comparative is not inflected; e.g. *the gretter ende* 197; but the superlative is, though the *-e* is generally *-ę*; e.g. *his oueręstę courtepy* 290; but not always, e.g. *he was the semęlieste man* H 119 (Gl. Ch., p. 261).

§ 127. Adverbs are usually compared as in N.E., but a few forms are found in which *-ly* is added to the comparative of the adjective to make that of the adverb; e.g. *murierly* 714. In *ferrer* 835 we have *-er* added to a form already comparative.

### PRONOUNS

§ 128. **The Personal Pronoun of the First Person** has two forms for the nom. sing., *I* (: *enemy*) 1644, and *ich*, *ic* (cf. § 79, c), as in *theech* (= *the ich* : *beech* G 928), and in the phrase *ich hadde*. The northern *ic* is also used in the Miller's Tale to represent the dialect of the Northern students. Its other forms correspond to those of N.E.

§ 129. **In the Second Person** the nom. sing. *þou* (*þū*) frequently takes an enclitic form, — *ow* after an auxiliary verb; e.g. *woltow* (*woltū*) for *wolt thou* 1544. The dative and accusative singular is *thee*. The plural nominative is *ye* (O.E. *gē*), dative and accusative *yow* (O.E. *ēow*); cf. *I pray yow* (dat.) . . . *that ye* (nom.) *narette*, etc., 726–7.

---

[1] *mǭ* (originally a substantively used neuter form *mā*, and the adverb *mā*) is usually the adverb form or the adjective used substantively. *bet* (originally adverbial), too, is generally an adverb in M.E., but not always.

§ 130. **In the Third Person** the forms are as follows: —

| SINGULAR | | | PLURAL |
|---|---|---|---|
| Masc. | Neut. | Fem. | |
| *hē* | *hit* | *shē* | *they* |
| *his* | | *hir(e)*, *hę̄r(e)* | *hir(e)* 365, 368, *hę̄r(e)* |
| *him* | | *hir(e)*, *hę̄r(e)* | *hem* |
| *him* | *hit* | *hir(e)*, *hę̄r(e)* | *hem* |

§ 131. For the feminine singular, *hę̄r(e)* (and not *hir(e)*, as stated by Ten Brink) was probably Chaucer's form; e.g. *hę̄re* ( : *bę̄re*) 1421, 2057, ( : *wę̄re*) E 887; the *-e*, however, is generally silent within the verse, though usually written by good scribes.

§ 132. **The Possessive Adjectives** are for the first and second persons *my*, *thy*, with forms in *-n* which are usual before vowels; for the third person, masc. and neut., *his(e)*, fem. *hir(e)*, *hę̄r(e)*, plu. *our(e)*, *your(e)*, *hir(e)*, *hę̄r(e)*. The *-e* is usually written, especially after *r*, in good Mss., but, as a rule, is not sounded; e.g. *oure feith* 62, but cf. B 4118, 4150. *myne* is inflected as a plural adjective in 2467.

### DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

§ 133. **The Definite Article *the*** is frequently joined to a following substantive which begins with a vowel, as in *Thestaat, tharray*, for *The estaat, the array* 716. But this is not always indicated in the writing; e.g. *the ordres* 210.

§ 134. In O.E., the neuter of the article (which was declined for gender, number, and case) was *þæt;* this survives in the expressions *that oon*, *that other* (*the toon, the tothir*,[1] in Boece 673), 'the one,' 'the other.' The phrase *that other*

[1] Cf. N.E. colloquial *the ton, the tother*.

is even used with the plural, *that othere cerklis*, 'the other circles,' Boece 1476 (Gl. Ch., p. 416); *that othere* is plural, too, in Boece 1796. *þæt* survives, also, as a definite article in *That wheither*, 'The one of you two who' 1856, 1857.

§ 135. A trace of oblique case-inflection is preserved in the phrase *for the nonys* (O.E. *for ðām ānes*) 523, etc., and in *atte nale* (O.E. *æt þām ealoð*); (cf. § 82, (a)). The instrumental case of the article (O.E. *þy*) is preserved in M.E. and N.E. as *the;* e.g. *the moore mury* 802.

§ 136. *That,* however, is usually a demonstrative pronoun with a plural, *thō* (O.E. *þā*), which must not be confused with the adverb *thō* 'then'; e.g. *tho wordes* 498, 1123.

§ 137. The demonstrative pronoun *this* has the plural form *thēs, thēsę* (O.E. fem. sing. nom. *þēos*), and a new form *thise,* which is generally *thisę;* but the inflected *thise* is found frequently;[1] e.g. *thise bookes olde* 2294, *thise steedes* 2892.

### RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

§ 138. **Relative and Interrogative Pronouns** are nearly the same in Chaucer as in N.E.

§ 139. *Which* is masc. and fem. as well as neut. in M.E. (it is used to refer to the Marchaunt in 568), and is inflected when used like an adjective, — *whiche, whichę;* e.g. inflected for number, *our lordes whiche that ben slawe* 943, *of whiche two* 1013; inflected as definite adjective, *the whiche day* 2998; inflected because used substantively, *The whichę me list* 2074.

§ 140. *Whiche* is also used as an interrogative pronoun

---

[1] Ten Brink's "stets einsilbig" is a mistake. Professor Skeat's "always monosyllabic," also a mistake; and his addition, "the final *-e* probably marks a longer vowel sound," equally erroneous.

(cf. Lat. *qualis*), meaning *what sort of* (*persons or things*); e.g. *And whiche they were* 40, *whiche that they were* 2948.

§ 141. *What* is sometimes an indefinite pronoun; e.g. *a litel what smylynge*, 'smiling a little,' Boece 1445 (Gl. Ch., p. 415).

Very frequently *what* corresponds to N.E. *why;* e.g. *What sholde he studie?* 'Why should he study?' 184.

### OTHER PRONOMINAL WORDS, CHIEFLY INDEFINITE

§ 142. The personal pronouns *he, she, it,* are sometimes used as indefinite pronouns in M.E. (cf. § 200).

§ 143. ***al*** in its pronominal use is usually inflected; e.g. *alle thę ordres* 210, (?) *alle thę hauęnes* 407, *alle thę armes* 2411: but the *-e* is generally lost; e.g. *allę the feeldes* 977, *allę the rytes* 2370, *allę the circumstaunces* 1932. Cp. *al this lamentacioun* 935. Otherwise *al* is treated like an adjective; e.g. *alle we* 934, *of hem alle* 912.

§ 144. Besides its regular pronominal use, the adjective *al* is often used in M.E. in a distributive sense with abstract nouns, meaning *every form of, every kind of.* In such cases, the plural form is found;[1] e.g. *alle grace* 1245, *alle charitee* 1623, *alle ioye and blis* 1684, *alle blisse* 3097, *alle wele* 3101, *alle rancour* 2732; cf. such expressions as *in alle wise* B 1251, *in alle maner thynges* 2181, where *alle* has this distributive sense.

§ 145. *bǭthe* (O.N. *bāðir*) is inflected like an adjective,

---

[1] Instances abound in M.E. literature, though the idiom has hitherto passed unnoticed by grammarians. Cf., too, Shakspere's *in all sense*, Merch. V., 136; and in N.E. such expressions as *all unrighteousness*, etc.

and often follows a pronoun;[1] e.g. *yow bothe* 1856, *hem . . . bothe* 1797.

§ 146. *eyther* (O.E. *ægþer*) has a genitive *eytheres*. Compounded with *ne* it appears as *neither*. A pronominal *nǭther* (= *ne* + *ǭther*, O.E. *āþer*) also occurs in M.E.; e.g. *neyther nother habite*, 'neither the one attitude nor the other,' Bo. 1742 (Gl. Ch., p. 428).

§ 147. *ēuery*, *ēuerich* (O.E. *æfre ælc;* for the difference in M.E. forms cf. § 79, c), are both found in Chaucer; cf. 3 and 241. *euerich* is often joined with *ǭn* to make a compound pronoun; e.g. *ēuerychon* 31.

§ 148. *the ilke*, *thilke*, *this ilke*, *that ilke* (O.E. *se ilca*), 'the same,' 'the very,' 'that very,' naturally have the weak adjective ending; cf. § 115 (e).

§ 149. *men*, *me*, is the historic development of O.E. *man*, 'one,' with the *a* weakened to *e* on account of its lack of stress; cp. *what asketh men* 2777. It was evidently confused by scribes with the plural of *man*, 'man,' which was also used indefinitely in M.E.; cf. *as men fynde* (: *Inde*) 2155.

§ 150. *self* (O.E. *self*, *selfa*) occurs in both the strong and weak forms; e.g. *myself* 544, *hym selue* 528, *hymseluen* 184. As an adjective, *selue* is the common form; e.g. *that selue moment* 2584, *the selue king*, Bo. 313 (Gl. Ch., p. 366).

§ 151. *som*, *sommę*, is used both for singular and plural; cf. *som wol ben armed on his legges weel* 2123, and *sommę seyden thus* 2516. *Some* (plu.) rhymes with *come* in 2187; but it is usually *somę* within the verse.

§ 152. *swich*, *such* (O.E. *swylc*, cf. § 83, a, 81, b), is

---

[1] In A B C 83 (Gl. Ch., p. 328), *your bothes peynes* occurs, which may be an error for *bǭther* (cf. Troil. IV., 168), an early Middle English gen. plur. like *aller*. *the bothom*, R.R. 3502 (Gl. Ch., p. 698), is probably a mistake for *the bothen*, 'the two.'

declined like an adjective ; e.g. *swich cas* 2822, *swiche compaignyes* 2589, *swiche glarynge eyen* 684.

### VERBS

In Old English, as in Middle English and New English, there were two great classes of verbs, strong and weak. The strong verbs had four tense-stems, viz. *present*, *preterit singular*, *preterit plural*, and *past participle*, containing different vowels; the weak verbs had the same stem for all tenses. In the course of the development of the language from the Old English period to the present, a tendency has been manifest to transfer strong verbs to the weak class. In Middle English, therefore, a number of verbs which in Old English were in the strong class have gone over to the weak conjugation.

### THE STEM-FORMS OF STRONG VERBS

§ 153. The O.E. strong verbs appear as a rule in M.E. forms developed from the corresponding O.E. forms according to the principles laid down in Part I. The two stems for the preterit, which in O.E. had different vowels for the singular and plural, are in M.E. for the most part levelled under one, generally that of the singular ; where a separate stem for the preterit plural occurs, it is usually that of the past participle. By Chaucer's time, therefore, many of the strong verbs have only three stems, present, preterit, and past participle. The Classes are as follows : —

In giving the principal parts of verbs the infinitive, for the sake of uniformity, is here put down as normally ending in *-e*, except where the verb stem ends in a vowel, and the preterit plural as ending in *-en*; the participle is given without the prefixed *y*; cf. §§ 182, 184.

## CLASS I

§ 154. CHARACTERISTIC. — *ī* followed by a single consonant.

*Vowel Series:*

| PRES. | PRET. SING. | PRET. PLUR. | PAST PART. |
|---|---|---|---|
| *ī* (= O.E. *ī*) | *ǭ* (< O.E. *ā*) | *ĭ* (= O.E. *ĭ*) | *ĭ* (= O.E. *ĭ*) |
| *rīde* 'ride' | *rǭd* | *rĭden* 825 (§ 52) | *rĭden* |
| *wrīte* 'write' | *wrǭt* | *wrĭten* 2814 | *wrĭten* |
| *drīue* 'drive' | *drǭf* | *drĭuen* (§ 84) | *drĭuen* |
| *arīse* 'arise' | *arǭs* | *arĭsen* (§ 5) | *arĭsen* |

So with *agrīse* 'shudder,' *bīde, bīte, glīde, shīne, shrīue, smīte, thrīue, wrīe*[1] 'cover'; *rīue* (O.N. *rīfa*) and *strīue* (O.Fr. *estrīuer*) are in this class from analogy with *thrīue, drīue*, etc.

## CLASS II

§ 155. CHARACTERISTIC. — *ē* (*ī*, *ou*) followed by a single consonant.

*Vowel Series:*

| PRES. | PRET. | PAST PART. |
|---|---|---|
| *ē* (< O.E. *ēo*) | | |
| *ī* (< O.E. *ēo* + *g*) | *ē* (< O.E. sing. *ēa*; O.E. plur. had *ŭ*) | *ǭ* (< O.E. *ŏ*, cf. § 52) |
| *ou* (= O.E. *ū*) | | |

[1] From O.E. *wrīgan*, originally of Class I, with parts *wrīgan*, **wrīhan* (contracted to *wrēon*), *wrāh, wrĭgon, wrĭgen*; but *ēo* gave it principal parts in O.E. according to Class II: — *wrēon, wrēah, wrŭgon, wrŭgen*. In M.E. we have developments from both sets of forms: infinitives *wrīen* I, and *wrē̆en* II, preterit *wreigh* II, past participle *wrīen* I.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *bēde*[1] 'command' | *bēd* | *bōden* (cf. *mysboden* 909) |
| *chēse*[2] 'choose' | *chēs* | *chōsen* |
| *crēpe* 'creep' | *crēp* A 4226 (wk. *crepte* D 1698) | *crōpen* |
| *clēue* 'split' | (wk. *clefte*, Bl. 72) | *clōuen* 2934 |
| *sēthe* 'boil' | *sēth* | *sōden* |

So *flēte* 'flow,' *shēte* 'shoot,' *brēwe* 'brew' (pret. *brēw*).

Where O.E. *ēo* was followed by *g* the result in M.E. was *ī*, § 69 (d), giving in this class some infinitives in *ī*; e.g.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *flīyen*[3] *flēn* | *fleigh* (O.E. *flēah*) B 3879; *flȳ* (cf. § 72 (c)) B 4362; *flaugh*[4] B 4421 | *flōwen* B 4581 | *flōwen* |

*līyen* 'lie' (<O.E. *lēogan*) *leigh* Tr. II, 1077 (wk. *lȳed* 659) (wk. *lȳed*)

---

[1] In M.E. *bēde* is confused with *bidde* (Class V) both in respect to form and meaning.

[2] *chēse*, *lēse* 'lose,' *frēse* 'freeze' had in O.E. a consonant change of *s* to *r* in pt. pl. and p.p.; this *r* is retained in strong p.p. of *lēse* 'to lose,' wk. pt. *lōste* 936, strong p.p. *lorn*, wk. *ilōst;* and in *frēsen* 'to freeze,' pt. *frēs*, *frōren*, pp. *frōren*. *sēthe* had a similar consonant change from *th* to *d*, preserved in M.E., p.p. *soden;* cf. N.E. 'sodden.'

[3] O.E. *flēogan* 'to fly,' which gave M.E. *flīyen*, and *flēon* 'to flee,' which gave M.E. *fleen*, were originally two distinct verbs, but were confused in late O.E. and confounded in M.E. and N.E. both in form and meaning. *flēn* has also a weak pret. *flēdden* in 2930.

[4] From analogy with *saugh* the preterit of *seen*.

GEORGE MARK ELLIOTT LIBRARY
The Cincinnati Bible Seminary

This class in O.E. contained also some infinitives in *ū*. Of these there remain in common use in M.E.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *shouuen* 'shove' (O.E. *scūfan*) | *shēf* / *shōf* Tr. iii, 487 | *shouen* (*o* = *u*) |
| *bowe* 'bow' (O.E. *būgan*) | (*beigh*) wk. *bowed* | (*bōwen*) wk. *bowed* |

*Brouke* 'brook' is used only in the present.

§ 156. Classes III, IV, V, all originally contained verbs whose characteristic was *ĕ*, and in O.E. they had the same vowel-sequence in present and preterit singular, viz. pres. *ĕ* (or some development from it) and pret. sing. *ă* (or some development from it), differing from one another in the preterit plural and past participle: III having pret. plur. *ŭ* (or some development from it) and p.p. *ŏ* (*ŭ* + nas.); IV having pret. plur. *ē* and p.p. *ŏ* (*ŭ* + nas.); V having pret. plur. *ā* and p.p. *ĕ*. M.E. usually preserves the regular development of these forms.

## CLASS III

§ 157. CHARACTERISTIC. — *ĕ* + liquid and consonant; *i* + nasal and consonant.

*Vowel Series:*

| PRES. | PRET. SING. | PRET. PL. | P. PART. |
|---|---|---|---|
| *ĕ* + liq. and cons. < O.E. *ĕo* | *ă* (< O.E. *ĕa*) | *ŏ*[1] | *ŏ* (= O.E. *ŏ*) |
| *i* + nas. and cons. | *ŏ* + nas. + v'cd cons.[2] / *ă* + nas. + v'cless. cons.[2] | *ŭ* (= O.E. *ŭ*) | *ŭ* (*ŏ*) = O.E. *ŭ* |

[1] By analogy from the stem of the past participle; the O.E. preterit tense-stem had *ŭ* in the plural.

[2] See § 61.

Note that all these vowels are subject to the group-lengthenings of §§ 46–51; so that we have present stems like *yēlde*, *fīnde*, *clīmbe*; preterit singular stems like *clōmb*, *yōld*; preterit plural and past participle stems like *founden*, *wounden* (*ou* = *ū*).

It will be well, therefore, to divide Class III into two subclasses: —

(a) Verbs with stem-vowel followed by *l* or *r* and a cons.
(b) Verbs with stem-vowel followed by *m* or *n* and a cons.

§ 158. III a.

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *hĕlpe* | 'help' | *hălp* / *heelp*[1] 1651 | *hŏlpen* | *hŏlpen* 18 |
| *swĕlle* | 'swell' | *swăl* | | *swŏllen* |
| *yēlde* | 'yield' (§ 47) | *yōld* | *yōlden* | *yōlden* |
| *dĕlue* | 'delve' | *dălf* Bo. 1637 | | *by-doluen* Bo. 1637 |
| | | *dulue*[2] pret. subj. Bo. 1639 | | |
| *stĕrue* | 'die' | *stărf* 933 | *stŏruen* C 888 | *stŏruen* |
| *kĕrue* | 'carve' | *cărf* 100 | *cŏruen* | *cŏruen* 2696 |
| *brĕste*[3] | 'burst' | *brăst* | *brŏsten* | *brŏsten* |
| *thrĕsshe* | 'thrash' 536 | | | |
| *worthe* | 'become' | (*o* = *u* (§ 6) < *w* + *eo* (§ 64)) *wărth* | | |

So also *fīghten* (l.O.E. *fihtan*), pt. sg. *faught* 399 (< O.E. *feaht*, cf. § 73 a), pt. pl. *foughten*, p.p. *foughten* (< O.E. *fōhten*, cf. § 73 c).

---

[1] Not yet clearly explained. [2] See § 180.

[3] In O.E. *berstan* and *þerscan*; *r* and the preceding vowel changed places in M.E.

§ 159. III b.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *wĭnne* | *wăn* | *wonnen* (*o* = *u*) | *wonnen* (*o* = *u*) |
| *spĭnne* | *span* | *sponnen* | *sponnen* |
| *beginne* | *began* | *begonnen* | *begonnen* |
| *swimme* | *swam* | *swommen* | *swommen* |
| *rĕnne*[1] 1761 | *răn* 509 | *ronnen* (*o* = *u*) 2925 | *ronnen* (*o* = *u*) 8 |
| *sĭnge* | *soong* 122 (§ 50) | *songen* (*o* = *u*) | *songen* (*o* = *u*) |
| *springe* | *sprong* | *sprongen* (*o* = *u*) | *sprongen* (*o* = *u*) |

So *stinge*, *swinge*, *ringe*.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *fīnde* (§ 48) | *foond* | *founden* (*ou* = *ū*) | *founden* (*ou* = *ū*) |
| *bīnde* | *bond* | *bounden* (*ou* = *ū*) | *bounden* (*ou* = *ū*) |

So *grīnde*, *wīnde*, *clīmbe*.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *drĭnke* | *drănk* (§ 61) | *dronken* (*o* = *u*) 820 | *dronken* (*o* = *u*) 1261 |
| *sĭnke* | *sănk* | *sonken* (*o* = *u*) | *sonken* (*o* = *u*) |

So *swinke* 'toil,' *shrinke*, *stinke*.

*Moorne* (§ 50) 'mourn,' *sporne* 'spurn,' and *brenne* 'burn,' originally of this class, became weak in M.E.

## CLASS IV

§ 160. Most of the verbs in this class having in O.E. short *ĕ* before a single consonant, the corresponding M.E. vowel will have been lengthened to *ē*; see § 52.

---

[1] The M.E. form of this present stem is due to O.N. *renna*.

*Characteristic :* ę̄ before a single liquid.

*Vowel Sequence :*

| Pres. | Pret. Sing. | Pret. Pl. | P. Part. |
|---|---|---|---|
| ę̄ | ă (< O.E. æ̆) | ę̄ (< O.E. ǣ)[1] | ǭ (< O.E. ŏ) |
| *stę̄le* 'steal' | *stăl* | | *stǭlen* 2627 |
| *bę̄re* 'bear' | *baar* 237 | *bāren* 721 | *bǭre* 1542 |
| | *beer* ( : *heer* Leg. B. 216) | | *bǭrn* |
| | *băr* 105[2] | | |

So *shę̄re* 'shear,' *tę̄re* 'tear'; *wę̄re* 'wear,' originally weak, has a strong preterit plural *wę̄re* ( : *spēre* 2948) and also a weak preterit *wę̄red* 75; *hę̄le* 'conceal' has a weak past participle *hę̄led* B 4245. *Brę̄ke* (*brăk* 1468, *brǭken*) and *spę̄ke* (*spăk*, *spǭken*) belong to this class, though their characteristic would put them in Class V.

Two of the verbs of this class are irregular, viz., —

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *come* (*o*=*u*) 'come' | *cōm* : *dōm* G. 242 | | *come* (*o*=*u*) 23 |
| | *căm* : *răm* 547 pl. *cōmen* | | |
| *nĭme* 'take' | *nam* | *nōmen* | *nomen* (*o*=*u*) |
| | *undernōm* : *-dōm* G. 243 | | |

---

[1] The descendant of the O.E. preterit plural stem, ę̄, appears in some verbs of this class in M.E., and is frequently carried over to the singular.

[2] The variation is due to confusion between the vowels of the preterit singular and preterit plural stem. The vowel of the plural carried over to the singular gave *beer;* the vowel of the singular carried over to the plural gave *bāren* (§ 52); then this long ā of the plural was carried back to the singular giving *baar* (cf. e.N.E. *bāre*). All these forms are found in M.E. and well illustrate the confusion between preterit singular and preterit plural stems.

§ 161. CLASS V

*Characteristic:* ē̯ followed by a single consonant not liquid or nasal.

*Vowel Sequence:*

| PRES. | PRET. | P. PART. |
|---|---|---|
| ē̯ (<O.E. ĕ) | ă (<O.E. æ̆) | ē̯(<O.E. ĕ) |
| *gē̯te*[1] 'get' | *găt* 704 | *gē̯ten* 291 |
| *wrē̯ke* 'revenge' | *wrăk* | *wrē̯ken* |
| | | *wrō̯ken* (as Cl. IV) |
| *ē̯te* 'eat' | *eet* (O.E. ǣt[2]) | *ē̯ten* | *ē̯ten* |
| *yē̯ue, yīue*[3] 'give' | *yăf* 177 | *yāuen* | *yē̯uen* 1086 |
| *sē̯n* (O.E. *sēon*[4]) 'see' | *saugh* (§ 72 a, note 3) 1400 | *sawen* B. 218 | *yseyn* |
| | *saw* (§ 71, note 3) | | |
| | in rhyme: *seigh* (<Angl. *sǣh*) 193 | | |
| | *say, sey* (§ 71, note 3) | | |
| | *sȳ* (: *mercȳ*) G 1381 | *sȳen* Tr. v. 816 (: *ȳen*) | |
| (*cwē̯the*) | *quoth, quod,* 'said he'[5] | | |

[1] The consonant is due to the influence of the corresponding O.N. verb *geta.*

[2] An exceptional form; so also the preterit *frēt* from O.E. *frēt.*

[3] Due to influence of O.N. *gifa; yaf,* and not *gaf,* is due to analogy from the present stem, cf. § 80 (a) and note 1.

[4] O.E. *sēon* was originally **sehan;* M.E. preterit plural *sȳen* is probably from Anglian *sēgon* (§ 69 c, note 2), and from the plural *sȳen* arose a singular *sȳ* by analogy. The O.E. adjective *gesiene* (Mercian *gesēne*) meaning visible, took the place of *yseyn* in l.M.E. In Chaucer *sēne, ysēne* is still used in its adjective sense, occurring with 'to be': otherwise *yseyn, seyn.*

[5] The *ŏ* for *ă* is explained as being due to the *w*; the *d* as taken over from e.M.E. pl. *quēden,* which preserved a consonant change of *th* to *d.*

With *ĭ* and double consonant in the present:[1] —

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| *bĭdde* (§ 155, note 1) | *băd* | | *bēden* |
| *līen*,[2] *līggen* 2205 | *lay*, 20, 937 | | *leyn* |
| *sĭtte* | *săt* 271 | *sęten* 2893 | *sęten* |
| | *seet*[3] (: *feet*) 2075 | | |

## CLASS VI

§ 162. This class in O.E. had *ă* in the present and past participle before a single consonant, with *ō* in both numbers of the preterit. The M.E. vowel sequence is therefore —

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *ā* (§ 52) | *o̧* | *ā* |

*Characteristic:* *ā* followed by a single consonant.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *tāke* | *to̧k* | *tāken* |

So *wāke*, *cwāke* 'quake'; *bāke*, *forsāke*, *shāke*, *shāpe*[4]; *fāre* 'fare,' 'go,' has wk. pret. *fērde* A 1372,[5] and beside the strong *fāren* a weak *fāred* in the past participle.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *stonde* (<O.E. *standan*,[6] § 61) | *sto̧d* | *stonden* |

---

[1] These are originally weak presents in *-jan* with strong preterit and participle stems.

[2] *līen* (O.E. *licgan*) is from the stem of the O.E. 2d and 3d sing. indicative, as if the O.E. infinitive had been **ligan* (§ 69 d).

[3] *seet* is by analogy from the plural *sęten*; *sāte* shows the vowel of the singular carried into the plural and lengthened.

[4] As if from **scapan*; the O.E. form is *sceppan*; cf. § 161, note on *līen*.

[5] Due to confusion with the preterit of O.E. *fēran* 'to go.'

[6] This present stem was extended by the insertion of *n* in O.E.

Several verbs of this class having in O.E. *ă, ō + g, h*, develop diphthongs in M.E.; see §§ 70 a, 73 d (pt. sg.), and 70 d (pt. pl.).

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *drawe* (<O.E. *drăgan*) | *drough, drow* (<O. E. *drōh*) | *drawen* |
| | *drę̄w* Bl. 862 (influence of *knę̄w*) | |
| *gnawe* (<O.E. *gnagan*) | *gnow* (<O.E. *gnōh*) | *gnawen* |
| *laughe*[1] 'laugh' | *lough* (*ou* = *ū*) | *laughen* |
| *slę̄n*[2] 'slay' | *slough* (*ou* = *ū*) | *islawe* 943 (<O.E. *geslagen*) |
| | *slow* (*ow* = *ū*) | *islaye*[3] 63 (<O.E. *geslegen*) |

The following also belong to this class: —

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *swę̄re*[4] 'swear' | *swōr* | *swǭren* 810 (<O.E. *sworen*) |
| *hę̄ue*[5] 'heave' | *haf* (: *gaf*) 2428 (cf. Cl. IV) | (wk. *hę̄ued*) |
| | *hēf* Boece 17 | |
| *steppe* 'go' | *stōp* | *stāpen* B 4011 |
| *wasshe* | *wessh* 2283 | *wasshen* |

*waxe, wexe*, originally of this class, has forms according to Class VII in late O.E.; cf. § 163.

---

[1] O.E. *hliehhan* (Angl. *hlæhhan*); but M.E. *laughe*, as if from a **hlahan*; cf. note on *līen*, § 161.

[2] O.E. *slēan* (**slahan*).

[3] Chaucer uses both forms in rhyme.

[4] O.E. *swērian* from **swarjan* (wk. present).

[5] O.E. *hebban*. But M.E. as if from **hefan*; cf. note on *līen*. The verb has also weak forms in M.E.

## CLASS VII

§ 163. These verbs had originally reduplicated preterit tense-stems. These reduplications were lost in early O.E., but left a class of strong verbs which had preterit stems containing in each case a vowel different from that of the other stems of the verb. Some of them had already assumed weak forms in O.E., others became weak in M.E.; so that in Chaucer's time many verbs of this class had both strong and weak forms. In the case of verbs with O.E. *ǣ* in the present stem, the shortening before two consonants when the *-de* of the preterit and *-d* of the past participle was added, gave double forms; see § 55, note 1.

*Characteristic:* the same vowel in the present and past participle; *ę* or *ęw* in the preterit.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *lęte*[1] 'let' | *lęt* | *lęten* |
| *lāte* A. 3326, imper. *lăt* 840, 831 | (wk. *lętte*) | |
| *slēpe* 'sleep' | *slęp* 397 | *slēpen*, wk. *slept* |
| *wēpe* 'weep' | *wēp* | *wǭpen* (O.E. *wōpen*) |
| | wk. *wępte* | *wēpen*, wk. *wępt* |

So *lēpe* 'leap' with strong pret. *lęp; bēte* 'beat' with strong pret. *bęt*, wk. *bętte*, strong pp. *bēten*, and wk. *bętt; waxe, wexe*, with pl. *węx*.

*Drędе* 'dread' (< O.E. *drǣdan*) has a wk. pret. *drędde, drădde*, with wk. pp. (*y*)*drăd, dręd;* likewise *rędeп* 'read' (< O.E. *rǣdan*), wk. pret. *rędde, rădde*, and wk. pp. *rędd,*

[1] The fact that both forms, *lăt* and *lęt*, occur frequently in the imper. 2d pers. sing. in connection with other verbs (e.g. *lat be*, etc.) points to a shortening of O.E. *lǣt* (cf. § 55, note) due to lack of stress. The infinitive *lāte* and past participle *lāten* may be due to the influence of the O.N. verb *lāta*.

*rădd;* and *shędе* 'shed' (O.E. *scēadan;* Orm. *shædenn*), wk. pret. *shădde, shĕdde,* and wk. p.p. *shĕd, shăd.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *knǭwe* 'know' (<O.E. *cnāwan*) | *knęw* (<O.E. *cnēow*) | *knǭwen* (<O.E. *gecnāwen*) |

So *blǭwe* 'blow,' *grǭwe* 'grow,' *sǭwe* 'sow,' *thrǭwe* 'throw,' *crǭwe* 'crow.'

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *hǭlde* (Merc. *haldan*) | *hęld* | *hǭlden* |
| *fălle* | *fęl* ( : *wel* G. 1282) | |
| | *fill* (*fille* : *wille* 2387) | |
| *honge* | *hēng* (wk.) | *honged* 2568 |
| *hǭte*[1] 'order,' 'promise,' 'be named' | *hęt* (O.E. *hēt*) | *hǭten* |
| | *hight* (O.E. *hĕht*,[2] *hĭht*) | |

### WEAK VERBS

§ 164. There are two classes of weak verbs in M.E., viz. —

| | Pret. | Past Part. |
|---|---|---|
| Class I, | *-ede, -ed, -ęd* | *-ed, -ęd* |
| Class II, | *-de, -dę* | *-d* |

[1] As the *t* of the strong pret. *hight* looked like the regular ending of a weak verb, the *-e* was added giving a preterit, *highte* 719, and a past participle formed, *hight* ( : *knyght*) 2472. The fact, too, that *hight* looked like a present indicative third singular form contracted from *highteth*, led to its use as a present form; e.g. in Astr. 83 (p. 642) "upon this plate ben compassed certeyn cercles that *highten* almycanteras."

Besides these there was in O.E. a passive form, originally present, but used in late O.E. as preterit, viz. *hātte;* the two consonants shortened the *ā* and gave M.E. *hătte, hĕtte;* from the preterit through analogy with such verbs as *mēten, mĕtte* another present, *hęten* ( : *łęte*) B 334, was formed. All these forms occur in M.E. and are found in Chaucer.

[2] A reduplicated form which survived in O.E. from an original Gmc. **hehait.*

These do not correspond to the O.E. classes, but are due to the operation of the principle stated in § 78 (a). The preterit ending of O.E., Class I a, viz. *-ede*, thus fell together with that of Class II, viz. *-ode*, giving one class in M.E. with *-ede;* this is Class I. The M.E. verb of this class was in every case one of at least three syllables, so that the final *-e* was usually lost (cf. § 78 (c)) and *-ed*, *-ęd* thus became the typical ending for preterit and past participle, e.g. *loued*, *loued* (not *lovde*, *louęde*) though forms in *-ede* sometimes occur, e.g. *weddede* 868, *lakkede* 756, *touchede*, 2561.

Class II in M.E. is made up chiefly of verbs which added the preterit ending directly to the stem in O.E. (O.E. Classes I b, I c, and III); the typical form of its preterit ending is thus *-dę*; e.g. *herde* (: *answerde*) 1123, and that of its past participle ending *-d*; e.g. *herd* (: *swerd*) 1597.

§ 165. CLASS I

| Pret. | Past Part. |
|---|---|
| ***-ede, -edę, -ed, -ęd*** | ***-ed, -ęd*** |

Chaucer's rhythm shows that the ending both of the preterit and of the past participle in this class was usually *-ęd*; e.g. pret. *loued* 206, 1197 and often, *gamęd* 534; p.p. *sowęd* 685, *ycleped* 376.

The verbs of Class I may be conveniently arranged as follows: —

§ 166. (1) Verbs in *-ren* (O.E. *-rian* and short stem syllable, Class I), e.g.: —

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *wēre* 'wear' | *węred* 75, 564 | *wēred* |
| *hēriе*[1] 'honour' | *hēried* | *hēried* |

[1] This verb and *berien* retain the *-i-* of earlier M.E. which was preserved in Southern dialects.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *ēre* 'plow' 886 | *ēred* | *ēred* |
| *dēre* 'injure' 1822 | *dēred* | *dēred* |
| *stēre, stire* 'stir' | *stēred, stired* | *stēred, stired* |

(O.E. *styrian* § 63)

§ 167. (2) Verbs which had in O.E. the pret. *-ode*, Cl. II; e.g. —

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *loue* | *loued* | *loued* |
| *clēpe* | *clēped* | *clēped, clēpt* (like II) |
| *māke* | *māked, māde* 706 (cf. § 79 (d)) | *ymāked* 2065, *maad* 668 |

*Quāke* (O.E. *cwacian*) has strong pret. *quook* 1576.

§ 168. (3) Nearly all verbs of French origin; e.g. —

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *passe* | *passed* 448 | *passed* |
| | *paste* Tr. II 658 | *past* |
| *rǭme* | *rǭmed* 1069 | *rǭmed* |
| *graunte* | *graunted* 786 | *graunted* 810 |
| *conueye* | *conueyed* 2737 | *conveyed* |
| *suffise* | *suffised* | *suffised* 1233 |
| *honoure* | *honoured* | *honoured* 50 |
| *punysshe* | *punysshed* | *punysshed* 657 |

§ 169. A number of verbs which should belong to this class have forms according to Class II; e.g. prets. *crīed* and *crȳde* 2656, *preyed* and *preyde* 811, *answēred* and *answērde*; p.p. *answērd* ( : *cutberd*) A 4128 (Gl. Ch., p. 57); *dīed* and *dīde*.

§ 170. CLASS II

| Pret. | Past Part. |
|---|---|
| ***-de, -de*** | ***-d*** |

The verbs of this class may be arranged as follows: —

§ 171. (1) Verbs with long stem-vowel in O.E., Cl. I b; e.g. —

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *hēre* | *hĕrde* (§ 55) | *hĕrd* |
| *fēde* | *fĕdde* | *fĕd* |

So *fēle*, pret. *fĕlte; kēpe, kĕpte; slēpe* (when wk.), *slĕpte.*

*lēde* 'lead,' *lēue* 'leave,' *sprēde* 'spread,' have double forms in preterit and past participle with *ĕ* and *ă* in stem (cf. § 55, note).

*drēme, sēme* have preterit and past participle like Class I, viz. *drēmed, sēmed.*

§ 172. (2) Verbs in O.E. which had a doubled consonant in stem, Cl. I b; e.g. —

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *sette* | *sette* | *(y)sett* |

So *whette, knitte.*

§ 173. (3) Verbs which in O.E. had umlaut in present but not in preterit stem: —

(a) With doubled consonant in present: —

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *telle* 'tell' | *tōlde* (O.E. *tealde*, § 47) | *tōld* (O.E. *geteald*) |

So *selle* 'sell,' *sōlde, quellen* 'kill,' pret. not found in Chaucer.

| | |
|---|---|
| *strecche* 'stretch' | *straughte* 2916 (O.E. *streăhte*) |
| | *streighte* (O.E. *strĕhte*) |
| *abegge*[1] (O.E. *abȳcgan*) 'atone for' | *aboughte* 2303 (O.E. *abohte*) |

So by analogy *cacche* (O.Fr. *cachier*) 'catch,' *caughte.*

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *leye* (O.E. *lecgan*) 'to lay' | *leyde* (O.E. *legde*) | *leyd* |

[1] *abīen* is the usual form, from stem of second and third singular as if O.E. **abygan; abegge* is Kentish. So *leye*, as if from O.E. **lĕgan. legge*, A 3269, a North. dialect form, shows the *gg*.

(b) With long stem syllable in present (for preterit see § 72 (b)) : —

| | |
|---|---|
| *rę̄che* 'reach' | *raughte* 2915 (O.E. *rǣhte* > *răhte*) |
| | *reighte* (O.E. *rǣhte* > *rĕhte*) |
| *tę̄che* 'teach' | *taughte* 497 (O.E. *tǣhte* > *tăhte*) |
| *sēke* (North. form) 'seek' | *soughte* (O.E. *sōhte* > *sŏhte*) |
| *wirche*[1] 'work' (O.E. *wyrcean*) | *wroughte* (O.E. *wŏrhte* > *wrŏhte*) |
| *bringe* | *broughte* (O.E. *brōhte* > *brŏhte*) |
| *thenke* 'think' | *thoughte* (O.E. *þōhte* > *þŏhte*) |
| *thynke* 'seem' (impers.) | *thoughte* (*ou* = *ū*[2]) (O.E. *þūhte* > *þŭhte*) |

§ 174. (4) Verbs of Class II in O.E. : —

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| *hāue*[3] *hān* (cf. § 84, b) | *hădde* (usually *hăddę*) | *hăd* |
| | *hāde* (cf. § 84 b) | |
| *seyen* (*siggen* Tr. IV, 194) 'say' | *seyde* | *seyd* |

§ 175. **Consonant Changes in Preterits of Class II** : —

As in Class II the *-de*, *-d*, of the preterit and past participle ending is brought directly in contact with the stem, changes occur as follows : —

(1) A long vowel is shortened by the consonant group thus made (cf. 55).

(2) *d* > *t* as follows : —

(a) after voiceless consonants; e.g. *mę̄te*, *mette*; *fette*, p.p. *fet* 819.

(b) after a nasal or liquid or a nasal or liquid followed by *d* or *t*; e.g. *fę̄le*, *fę̆lte*; *mēne*, *mente*; *hente*, *hente* 1300; *girden*, *girte* 329; *bülden*, *bülte* 1548.

---

[1] Has other forms *werken*, *werchen*.

[2] But confusion with preceding verb appears already in M.E.; e.g in C 771 *hem thoughte* : *they soughte*.

[3] *Hāue*, *hān* has 2d sing. *hāst*, 3d sing. *hāth*.

(3) Verbs in *-ue* have prets. in *-fte*. This change took place in O.E.

(4) Verbs in *th* have by assimilation *dd* in preterit; e.g. *kȳthe* 'to show,' pret. *kĭdde; *clēthe* pret. *clădde, clĕdde.*

(5) Verbs in *-ste* have a preterit apparently the same as the present; e.g. *caste* 2854.

(6) Verbs in *-enche* have the pret. and p.p. *-einte;* e.g. *blenchen, bleynte* 1078, *drenchen, dreynt.*

(7) Verbs in *-enge* have preterit and past participle in *-einde;* e.g. *sprengen, spreynde; sengen, seynde.*

### INFLECTIONAL ENDINGS OF VERBS

§ 176. **The Inflections for Person and Number** in the present indicative and present subjunctive are the same for both strong and weak verbs, viz.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Indic. Sing. | 1. *-e* | Subj. Sing. | 1. 2. 3. *-e* |
| | 2. *-est* | | |
| | 3. *-eth, -th*[1] | | |
| Plur. | 1. 2. 3. *-e(n)* | Plur. | 1. 2. 3. *-e(n)* |

The *-e* of the first person is sometimes *-ę;* e.g. *haue* 2772, *telle* 1154.

§ 177. In the second and third persons singular of the present indicative the ending is frequently *ęst, ęth;* e.g. *bereth* 796; such forms as *comth, macth* appear in Mss. This is usually the case with verbs with stems ending in a vowel; e.g. *seist* 1605, *līth* 1218, 1795. When the ending is added directly to the stem, contract forms ensue; e.g.

---

[1] A few Northern indic. 3d sing. endings in *-es* occur in Chaucer's early work (e.g. Bl. 257, 74; H. of F. 225), and in the Reeves Tale (e.g. 4129 *bringes,* 3d sing. : *thinges,* plur.) as part of the local colouring of the tale.

*forget(e)th* > *forget* 'forgets,' R. of R. 61.
*hīght(e)th* > *hīght* 'is called,' Compl. 70 (Gl. Ch., p. 326)
**lygst* > *lixt* 'liest' D 1761
*sett(e)th* > *set* 'sets'
*brest(e)th* > *brest* 'bursts' 2610
*rīd(e)th* > *rĭt* 'rides' 974, 2566.

So *bit* 'bids' 187, *sit* 'sits' 1800, *liste* (subj.: *vpriste*) 1052, *fint* 'finds,' *stont* 'stands,' *worth* 'becomes.'

§ 178. The *-e*, *-en* of the third plural is sometimes *-ę*, *-ęn*; e.g. *comęn* 687, *sayn* (: *agayn*) 1197, *bledę* (? in verse pause) 1801. So in the pret. pl. *gonnę* 1879; and frequently in the case of *werę*, *werȩn* 313.

§ 179. **The Preterit Indicative** inflections of strong verbs differ from those of weak verbs thus: —

| | Strong | | Weak | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Sing. | *spak* | *yaf* | *herde* | *loued(e)* |
| | *spak(e)* | *yaue* | *herdest* | *louedest* |
| | *spak* | *yaf* | *herde* | *loued(e)* |
| Plur. | *spake(n)* | *yaue(n)* | *herde(n)* | *louede(n)* |

The second singular is often, through analogy, like the first and third persons.

§ 180. **The Preterit Subjunctive** in strong verbs is formed on the preterit plural indicative stem, and has *-e* for singular ending and *-en* for plural.

§ 181. **The Imperative** of **strong** verbs has no inflection in the singular; e.g. *help* 2312, and has the ending *-eth* in plural. **Weak** verbs have *-e* in the singular and *-eth* in the plural; the *-e* of the singular is sometimes *-ę*; e.g. *sendę me ȳym* 2325, cf. *as sende loue and pees* 2317.

*-eth* forms were often used in singular, probably on account of the plural pronoun *ye* being used for the singular

in polite address; cf. '*Cometh neer, quod he, my lady Prioresse*' 839.

§ 182. **The Infinitive** ending is *-e* or *-en*, the latter being frequently used to prevent elision as in 236 *pleyen on*. This *-e* is always written though sometimes *-ę*; e.g. *bigynnę* 853, *payę* 834, *swerę* 454, *tellę* 831. Stems ending in a vowel usually have *-n*; e.g. *sēn*, *goon*, etc. Some instances of the O.E. gerundive survive in M.E. with an ending *-ne*; there appears to be one of these in *for to sēne* (O.E. *sēonne*) (:*grene*) 2176, 1036.

§ 183. **The Present Participle** has the ending *-ynge*, usually *-yngę* within the verse and *-ynge* in rhyme; though perhaps *folwynge this* in 2367 and *shakynge the* in 2466; cf. too, 2557.

§ 184. **The Past Participle** frequently has the prefix *y-*; cf. § 80 (b). In strong forms the ending is *-e*, *-en*, which is frequently *-ę*, *-ęn*. In weak verbs the ending is *-ed*, *-d*.

### PRETERIT PRESENT VERBS

§ 185. These verbs, mostly used as auxiliary verbs in Chaucer's time, are old preterit forms.

1. ***may***. Pres. indic. 1st and 3d *may*, 2nd *mayst* 1289, pl. *may*, *mowe* (*ow* = *ū*) 2999. The subjunctive is usually the same as the indicative, e.g. *that we may* 1107; but also *mowe* (O.E. *muge*). Pret. indic. and subj. *myghte* 169, *mightę*. Infin. *mowen*, Bo. 1786 (Gl. Ch., p. 430).

2. ***shal***. Pres. indic. 1st and 3d *shal*, 2d *shalt*, pl. *shal* 1822, *shul* 1821, *shulle* (Ell.) 2356, *shullen* 3014, *shuln*. Pret. indic. and subj. *sholde* 745, *shulde* (with vowel of present).

3. ***thar***, 'it behooves.' Impers. in 3d sing. pres. *thar*, Bo. 352 (Gl. Ch., p. 368); pret. *thurfte* Tr. iii, 572 (Gl. Ch., p. 490).

4. ***can.*** Indic. pres. 1st and 3d *can*, 2d *canst*, pl. *can*, *conne*. Subj. pres. *conne*, pret. *kouthe* 390, *koude* 382, 130. Infin. *conne*, Tr. v, 1404 (p. 551). Adjectively used p.p. *couthe* 14.

5. ***dar.*** Pres. indic. 1st and 3d *dar* 1151, 2d *darst*, pl. *dar*, *dorre*, pret. *dorste* 227.

6. ***wǭt.*** Pres. indic. 1st and 3d *wǭt*, 2d *wǭst* 2301; pl. *wǭt* 829, 1260, *wǭte* (Hn. 1260), *wĭten* (Ell. 1260); pret. *wiste* 224. Infin. *witen*.

7. ***owe.*** 1st and 3d *owe*, 2d *owest*, pl. *owe*, *owen*; pret *oghte* (*o* = *ŏu*) 505.

8. ***mōt.*** 1st and 3d *mōt* 1295, (?) *mōste* 1290, 2d *mōste*, pl. *mōte* 1185, *mōte* 742. Subj. *mōte*, pret. *moste* 712.

§ 186. **Substantive Verb.** — Pres. indic. sing. 1st *am*, 2d *art*, 3d *is*; pl. *bę̄n*, *bę̄*, and occasionally *ārn* (Merc. and North.), Tr. v, 1374 (p. 551); *bę̄th* (South.); pres. subj. *bę̄*, *bę̄n*; Imper. *bę̄*, pl. *bę̄th*; pret. indic. 1st and 3d *was*, 2d *wę̄re*; pl. *wę̄re*, *wę̄rę*, *wę̄ren*, *wę̄rę̣n*, pret. subj. *wę̄re*, *wę̄rę*; p.p. *been*.

The substantive verb is very frequently combined with the negative particle *ne* in *nam* (*ne am*), *nas* (*ne was*), *nę̄re* (*ne wę̄re*)

### ANOMALOUS VERBS

§ 187 ***wil.*** 1st and 3d *wil*, *wol* (cf. § 64), 2d *wilt* 1156, *wolt*, *wol*; pl. *wil*, *wol* 816, *wiln*, *woln* (Ell.) 2121. Pres. subj. *wile*, *wolle*; pret. subj. *wolde*; pret. *wolde*, *woldę*; p.p. *wold*.

***dǭ.*** Pres. indic. 1st *dǭ*, 2d *dǭst*, 3d *dǭth*; pl. *dǭn* 268, pres. subj. *dǭ*, *doon*; pret. indic. *dĭde*, *dĭdę*, pl. *dĭden*, *dĭde*, *dę̄den* (Merc. *dēdon*) Tr. i, 82 (p. 439). Imper. sing. *dǭ* 2405, pl. *dǭth*; infin. *dǭn*; gerundive *to dǭne*.

***gǭ.*** Pres. indic. *gǭ*, *gǭst*, *gǭth*, *gēth* ( : *dēth*, Leg. 2145, p. 619) ; pl. *gǭ*, *gǭn ;* subj. *gǭ*, *gǭn ;* imper. sing. *gǭ ;* pl. *gǭth ;* infin. *gǭn*, *gǭ ;* pret. *wente*,[1] *yēde*.

---

[1] *Wente* is the regular preterit of *wenden* 'turn.' *yēdė* is from O.E. *ge-ēode*, assigned to O.E. *gān* as a preterit.

# PART III.—SYNTAX

THE Syntax of Chaucer's English is in many respects like that of the English we use to-day. There are some striking differences, however, which it will be well for the student to become familiar with before beginning to read the Middle English. A complete discussion of the subject would require far more space than can be allotted to it in an elementary text-book.

## THE SUBJECT

§ 188. **The Subject is often left unexpressed** in M.E. where it can easily be supplied from the context; e.g. —

*I was of her felaweshipe anon*
*And* (we) *made forward,* etc., 33; cf. 811.
. . . *He herde a murmurynge*
. . . *and* (it) *seyde thus: 'Victorie'* 2433.

*With hym ther was a Plowman* (who) *was his brother* 529.
*And* (the hunter) *hereth hym . . .*,
*And* (the lion) *breketh both bowes and the leues*,
*And* (the hunter) *thynketh*, etc., 1640–43.

So in 150, 478, 600, 829, 909, 1082, 1217, 1327.

This omission is especially frequent with impersonal constructions; e.g. —

(It) *Bifil that in that seson on a day*, etc., 19.
*Now is* (it) *me shape*, etc., 1225.
(Ther) *Was nowher such a worthy vauasour* 360.

*But now is* (it) *tyme to yow for to telle* 720.
(It) *Accorded not . . .*
*To haue with sike lazars acqueyntaunce* 245.

So in 230, 244, 462, 849, 1127, 1240.

§ 189. **The Subject is often repeated** in the form of a pronoun; e.g. —

*His officers with swifte feet they renne* 2868; cf. 45, 936, 941, 1687.

### APPOSITION

§ 190. Nouns in M.E. are often used in apposition with pronouns; e.g. —

*Of him, this woful louere, daun Arcite* 1379.
*Of hym, Arcite* 1333; cf. 1210.

**The M.E. Appositive construction** following proper names, which in N.E. is represented by an attributive construction, appears in —

*Of Thebes the citee,* 'Of the city of Thebes' 939.

### CASE

§ 191. **The Genitive construction** is sometimes used instead of an adjective; e.g. —

*lyues creature* 'living creature' 2395.
*noyse of peple* 'popular clamor' 2660, cf. 2534; *so noise of folk* G 912, *dite of musyk* Bo. 1454, *fortune of peple* Bo. 1421.

§ 192. **A Partitive Genitive** occurs in —

*of smale houndes* 'some little dogs' 146.

§ 193. **The Direct object** is sometimes proleptically stated in the form of a pronoun representing the object; e.g. —

*Who kouthe telle or who kouthe it endite,*
*The Ioye that is maked,* etc., 1872.

§ 194. **The Accusative of Measure** is used more widely than in N.E.; e.g. —

*tonne greet* 1994.
*we riden a litel moore than paas* 825.

§ 195. **The Dative** is frequent with impersonal verbs; e.g. —

*me thynketh* 'it seems to me' 37.
*It ran hym in his mynde* 'it occurred to him' 1402.
*It semed me* 'it seemed to me' 39.
*Wo was his cook* 'There was trouble in store for his cook' 351.

### ADJECTIVE

§ 196. **The Adjective is often used substantively** to denote a quality; e.g. —

*Were it of hoot, or cold, or moyste, or drye* 420.
*of fyn scarlet reed* 456.
*at thy large* 'at liberty' 1283.

To denote persons: —

*But al with riche* 'but entirely with rich people' 248.

In apposition with a noun: —

*A frere ther was, a wantowne and a merye,* 'There was a friar with us, a rough and jolly fellow' 208.
*A monk there was, a fair for the maistrie* 'There was a monk with us, a fine fellow in every way' 165; cf. 531, 647, 1241.

§ 197. In the use of **compound numeral adjectives** the smaller number precedes the larger; e.g. —

*nyne and twenty* 24.
*fyue and twenty yeer* 'twenty-five years' 82.

## PRONOMINAL WORDS

### THE ARTICLE

§ 198. **The Indefinite Article** still retains traces of its use as a numeral adjective (cf. § 117).

§ 199. **No Article is used** before a noun expressing a general notion; e.g. —

*greet harm was it* 'it was a great pity' 385.
*that was scathe* 'that was a misfortune'[1] 446.
*And shame it is* 'and it is a shame' 503.
*it was routhe* 'it was a pitiful thing' 914.
*He was to synful man nat despitous* 'He was not supercilious to a sinner' 516.

In comparisons: —

*Sharp as point of spere* 'as sharp as the point of a spear' 114.
*Swift as foul in flight* 'swift as a bird in its flight' 190.

### PERSONAL PRONOUNS

§ 200. **The Personal Pronoun** is also an **indefinite** pronoun in M.E.; e.g. —

*Althogh he* ('a man') *were his brother* 737.
*he sente hem hoom* 'he sent his captives home' 400.

See also 2550, 2606, 3030.

---

[1] Compare N.E. ''Tis true 'tis pity, and pity 'tis 'tis true.'

§ 201. The personal pronoun is sometimes **used reflexively** in M.E.; e.g. —

*He rideth hym* 1691.
*he wente hym hoom* 2270.

### DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN

§ 202. The **Demonstrative *this*** is frequently used in M.E. with a light force; e.g. —

*This Palamon* 1620.
*This Arcite* 1636.

§ 203. ***That*** is often used to represent a preceding subject, expressed or implied, and its verb; e.g. —

*and that a worthy man* 'and he was an excellent man' 43.
*and that a greet* 'and he was a great one' (*i.e.* a great householder) 339.
*Withoute bake mete was neuer his hous*
*Of fish and flessh, and that* ('and provisions were') *so plenteuous*
*It snewed in his hous of mete and drynke* 343–345.

With the verb repeated: —

*He was a Iangler and a goliardeys*
*And that* ('his loose talk') *was moost of synne and harlotries* 560, 561; similarly in 2166.

### RELATIVE PRONOUN

In M.E. **the relative clause may be introduced** in several ways; viz. —

§ 204. (a) By ***who*** or ***which*** (cf. § 139) in the proper case, or ***that*** (undeclined) as in N.E.; e.g. 501.

§ 205. (b) By ***who*** or ***which*** followed by ***that;*** e.g.—

*whom that I serue* 'whom I serve' 1231.
*He which that hath the shorteste shal begynne* 836.
*What array that they were inne* 41.

§ 206. (c) By ***that*** **followed by the personal pronoun** in the proper case; e.g.—

*That with a spere was thirled his brest boon* 'whose breast was pierced,' etc., 2710.
*A knyght there was . . . that, from,* etc., *. . . he loued chiualrie* 'There was a knight who had loved (for tense, cf. § 222) chivalry,' etc., 43, 44, 45.

§ 207. (d) By ***as*** (though this form is not common); e.g.—

*May with his hundred as I spak of now* 1858.

§ 208. ***That*** is frequently **a double relative**; e.g.—

*He kepte that he wan* 442.

§ 209. The relative pronoun may be used without an antecedent; e.g.—

*Which of yow that bereth him . . .*
*Shal haue a soper,* etc., 796.

§ 210. The relative may have ***swich*** for an **antecedent**; e.g.—

*. . . in swich liquor*
*Of which vertue engendred is the flour* 'in a liquor so potent that of its energy the flower is born' 3.

### INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

§ 211. ***Which*** is frequently used both substantively and adjectively in M.E. in the sense of 'what sort of'; e.g.—

*And whiche they were . . . And eek in what array that they were inne* 'and what sort of persons they were, and what kind of appearance they made' 40.

For ***what*** as interrogative corresponding to N.E. 'why' see § 141.

## THE VERB

### THE PREDICATE

§ 212. **The Predicate** is often singular in M.E. though agreeing with two subjects; e.g.—

*And after rood the queene and Emelye* 2571.

§ 213. **The Predicate** agrees with the predicate noun rather than with its subject in such phrases as,—

*It am nat I* 1460.

§ 214. **The Predicate** is frequently omitted in narrative when it can be easily supplied from the context; e.g.—

*A Cristophre* (was) *on his brest*, etc., 115.
*Wroght ful clene and weel*
*Hir girdles and hir pouches* (were) *euerydeel* 367; cf. 362, 472, 473, 2145, 2163.

### THE INFINITIVE

§ 215. **The pure Infinitive** (*i.e.* infinitive without *to*) is frequently used in M.E. where the corresponding N.E. idiom requires the preposition; e.g.—

*The statue . . . bigan his hauberk rynge* 2431.
*it is good a man been at his large* 'It is good for a man to be at liberty' 2288.
*me list . . . pleye* 1127.

§ 216. The infinitive idiom ***to speke of*** is frequently used in M.E. with a prepositional force; e.g.—

*ne was ther noon hym lik*
*To speke of phisik and of surgerye* 'There was no one like him for medicine and surgery' 413; cf. 142, 1829.

§ 217. **The Infinitive** is often used in M.E. **to describe general action** related to the rest of the sentence in various ways. A substantively used participle with appropriate preposition has taken the place of this idiom in N.E.; e.g.—

*What sholde he . . . make hymseluen wood vpon a book . . . alwey to poure?* 'Why should he drive himself mad by continually poring over a book?' 184.
*comfort . . . is ther noon.*
*To ride by the weye doumb as a stoon* 'There is no solace in riding along the road,' etc., 774.
*His lord wel koude he plesen subtilly*
*To yeue and lene hym of his owene good* 'He knew how to please his master craftily by making gifts and loans to him out of his own property' 611.

So with nouns:—

*craft to rekene wel his tydes* 'skill in reckoning,' etc., 401.
*hope wel to fare* 'hope of faring well' 2435.

With adjectives:—

*an esy man to yeue* (in giving) *penaunce* 223.

*newe t̄ bigynne* 'late in beginning,' 'of recent date' 428.
*wys to vndertake* 'prudent in undertaking voyages' 405.

§ 218. **The Infinitive**, with or without a subject, often **follows an impersonal construction** and represents the logical subject of the sentence. In N.E. the place of this idiom is in most cases taken by a subordinate clause introduced by ***that***. In some cases, however, the old infinitive idiom remains, but is introduced by ***for***; e.g. —

*It is nat likely al thy lif*
*To stonden in hir grace* 'It is not likely that you will be in her favor all your life' 1173.
*It is ful fair a man to bere him euene* 'It is a fine thing for a man to have self-control' 1523.
*No wonder is a lewed man to ruste* 'It is no wonder that a layman grows careless' 502.

The Infinitive was frequently employed in O.E. to express obligation, the person on whom the obligation rested being put in the Dative case; e.g. '*hwæt him is tō dōnne*,' what he has to do.' In M.E. this developed into a construction in which the original object became the subject, giving such idioms as: *oure conseil was not longe for to seeke*, 'he did not have to wait long for our opinion' 784.

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

§ 219. **The Subjunctive Mood** is frequent in M.E. Some of its uses are the following: —

§ 220. To express a **condition**: —

*But it were any persone obstinate* 'But if it was some obstinate person' 521.
*if a prest take keep* 'if a priest will consider the matter' 503.

But often the indicative is used; e.g. —

*Foyne if hym list* 'Let a man thrust if he wants to' 2550.

§ 221. To express any **hypothetical notion**: —

*Ful looth were hym* 'he would have disliked' 486.
*Out of the court were it a myle or tweye* 'It was perhaps a mile or two from the court' 1504.
*They seyden that it were a charitee*, etc., 'They said that it would be a kindness,' etc., 1433.
*as yow liste* 'as you may please' 1353.

§ 222. To express **concession**: —

*Though in this world he haue care and wo*, 1321; cf. 68.

§ 223. With **temporal particles**: —

*Er . . . she me mercy heete* 2398.

### THE TENSES

§ 224. **The Present Tense** is used frequently to express a general truth even in a narrative in past time; e.g. —

*A bettre preest I trowe that nowher noon is* 524.
*His berd was shaue as nygh as euer he can* 588.
*Euerich for the wisdom that he can*
*Was shaply for to been an alderman* 372.

§ 225. **The Preterit Tense** is frequently used for the N.E. pluperfect; e.g. —

*he was* ('had been') *knyght of the shire* 356.
*And by his couenant gaf* ('had given') *the rekenyng.*
*Syn that his lord was twenty yeer of age* 601.
*She was* ('had been') *a worthy womman al hir lyue* 459.
*Housbondes at chirche dore she hadde* ('had had') *fyue* 460.

§ 226. In M.E. the **Historical Present and Preterit** tenses are often **connected** in the same narrative ; e.g. —

*His baner he desplayeth and forth rood* 966.
*Dooth to the ladyes whan they from hym wente* 999.

Cf. *nas . . . taketh . . . spedde* 1217 ;
*is . . . gan* 1782 ;
*was born . . . carieth* 1633 ;
*brak . . . fleeth* 1468.

§ 227. **The Perfect Tense** is formed by the auxiliary verb ***be*** in connection with verbs of motion ; e.g. —

*Arcite vnto the temple walked is* 2368.

### ADVERBS

§ 228. The adverbs ***wel*** and ***ful*** are frequently used like N.E. *very, much, quite* to give an adjective an added force ; e.g. —

*ful plesaunt* 138, *ful fetys* 157, *ful symple* 119, *wel good* 614, *wel bettre* 'much better' 256.

§ 229. ***Ther*** is often used in M.E. with relative force, and must in such cases be rendered 'where' : —

*Ther as he wiste* 224.

§ 230. ***Ther*** often repeats a place notion already expressed : —

*At sessiouns ther was he Lord and Sire* 255.
*In louedayes there could he muchel help* 258.

§ 231. ***As*** is frequently added to adverbs to show their relative character : —

*To take oure wey ther as* ('thither') *I yow deuyse* 34.
*There as* (where) *this lord*, etc., 172.

***That*** is likewise added to adverbs introducing adverbial clauses giving combinations like *when that* 1, 18; *er that* 36.

§ 232. ***As*** is frequently used to introduce a *wish* or *adjuration* (cf. N.E. 'so' in 'so help me'); e.g. —

*As euere mote I drynke wyn or ale* 832.
*As sende me*, etc., 2325.
*As keep me*, etc., 2302.

§ 233. The use of the **negative adverb** in M.E. does not as in N.E. prevent the employment of other negative words; e.g. —

*It may nat avaunce*
*For to deelen with no swich poraille* 246.

Compare 70, 251, 889, 2306.

The adverb ***right*** (cf. N.E. *just*) often follows the phrase it modifies; e.g. —

*Vpon the cop right* ('right on the tip') *of his nose* 554.
*As it were right* ('just as if he had been') *a whelp* 257.

### PREPOSITIONS AND CONJUNCTIONS

§ 234. The syntax of prepositions and conjunctions in M.E. is so intimately connected with the development of word meanings that it will be better for the student to get his elementary knowledge of the subject from a good glossary.

# PART IV.—VERSIFICATION

## STRESS

§ 235. The Rhythm of Chaucer's verse, like that of N.E., depends upon stress.

There are two kinds of stress, viz. that which distinguishes certain syllables of every polysyllabic word from the other syllables of the word, and may therefore be called *word-stress;* e.g. *Caunt-* and *-bu-* (=*bü*) in the word *Caunterbury;* and that which distinguishes a particular word from other words of the same group and may therefore be called *sentence-* (i.e. *sense-*) *stress;* e.g. *shoures* in *his shoures*.[1]

§ 236. There are at least two grades of stress in English, primary or full stress (denoted by ′) and secondary or half stress (denoted by ″). Absence of stress is denoted by × ; e.g. —

′ × × ″ *specially*

× ″ × ′ × *That hem hath holpen*

§ 237. We do not know absolutely what the stress of Chaucer's English was, but we can make trustworthy inferences of its character from the laws governing the development of English (e.g. the one through the operation of which the vowels of inflexional syllables all become *e* in M.E.), and the following guiding principles are reasonably certain.

---

[1] Sentence-stress in English is always incident on that syllable of a word which already has word-stress; so that word-stress and sentence-stress never conflict.

## WORD-STRESS

### NATIVE WORDS

#### A. Simple Words

§ 238. The primary stress of native **simple words** falls upon the root-syllable; e.g. *heuenes* never *heuenes; louede* or *louedę* never *louede.*

#### B. Compound Words

§ 239. Native **Noun Compounds** have primary stress on the root syllable of the first element; e.g. *Caunterbury* or *Caunterbury, bretherhed, neighebur.*

(1) For an apparent exception in Chaucer's verse see § 250.

(2) Some noun compounds follow the analogy of corresponding verbs, see § 241; e.g. *answere.*

(3) The prefixes *i-* (=O.E. *ge-*) and *un-* are unstressed. In the case of the prefixes *mis-, for-, a-, de-, dis-, in-,* the root takes the primary stress; compounds of *con- com-* vary. Romance suffixes added to native words take primary stress; e.g. *dayerye* (: *pultrye*) 597.

§ 240. Adjective and pronoun compounds take the stress of noun compounds.

§ 241. Native **Verbal Compounds,** including adverbs and prepositions, have primary stress on the second element; e.g. *biseken, ouercomen, biknowe* 1556.

§ 242. The stress of compound words that are made up of phrase-groups is determined by the sentence-stress of the original phrase; e.g. *away* (O.E. *on wege*); compound pronouns ending in *-selue*(*n*) thus have the primary stress on the last element; similarly adjective compounds such as *short-sholdred* 549, as if from *short* and *sholder* + *ed.*

§ 243. A **Secondary Stress** falls upon any syllable of a polysyllabic word that is separated from another stressed syllable by an intervening unstressed syllable; e.g. *absolucioun* 222.

§ 244. In compound words whose component elements are distinctly felt a secondary stress falls upon the element which is not primarily stressed; e.g. *yeldehalle* 370, *shirreue* 359.

§ 245. The suffixes *-dom*, *-nesse*, *-esse*, *-este*, *-hed*, *-had*, *-ynge*, *-shipe* have secondary stress in M.E.

### FOREIGN WORDS

§ 246. Foreign words when first brought into English retained their foreign stress.[1]

---

[1] As most of the foreign words in the English of Chaucer's time are of Norman French origin it will be well for the student to remember that in French words as a rule the last syllable of the word takes the primary stress if it does not end in *-e*; otherwise the next to the last has it; e.g. *accomplice* 2864, *purgatorie* 1226; *desirous* 1674, *despitous* 516, still have their O.Fr. stress.*

* But they are rapidly assimilated to English stress laws. In Chaucer many foreign words are in a transition stage and can be stressed in both ways; e.g. *felawe* 648 and *felawe* 653 (O.N. *felagi*); *honour* 46 and *honour* 582 (O.Fr. *honour*); *resoun* and *resoun* (O.Fr. *resoun*); *contree* 864 and *contree* 869; *plesaunt* 138 and *plesaunt* 222; *Arcita* 2258 and *Arcita* 2256.

§ 247. Secondary stress in foreign words follows the principles which govern the secondary stress of native words; e.g. *compaynye*.

§ 248. It is probable, too, that when a foreign word took English stress its originally stressed syllable still retained a secondary stress; e.g. *honour* and *honour*.

## SENTENCE-STRESS

§ 249. Sentence-stress was, as far as we know, practically the same as that of N.E.; e.g.—

*The Reue was a sclendre colerik man* 587.

*To take oure wey ther as I yow deuyse* 34.

Chaucer makes use of certain **licenses** in regard to stress:—

§ 250. The stress group ' " (cf. §§ 244, 245) is often treated as " ' in the verse; e.g.—

*of his offryng* 489.

*wynnyng* ( : *thing*) 275; cf. 119, 326, 905, 901, 446.

*manhod* 756, *forheed* 154.

*knyghthede* ( : *kynrede*) 2789.

*gladnesse* ( : *liknesse*) 2841.

*goddesse Clemence* ( : *presence*) 928.

§ 251. Occasionally the verse accent falls on an unimportant word which occurs between two accented syllables, and the word thus gets a secondary stress:—

× ′ × ″ × ′×
. . . *a fair for the maistrie* 165.
× ′ ″ ″ × ′ × ″ ×
*The yeldyng of*[1] *his seed and of his greyn* 596.

Thus *and* in many cases receives the accent, as it frequently occurs between two unstressed syllables.[1]

### THE VERSE

§ 252. The normal verse of the *Prologue* and *Knightes Tale* is a series of five rising rhythm-waves, each wave being formed by a pair of syllables[2] the second of which receives more stress than the first. The height of the wave depends on the difference in the stress of the pair ; e.g. —

× ′ × ′ ″ ′ × ′ ″ ′
*A trewe swynkere · and a good was he*
′ ″ × ′ × ′ ″ × ′
*Lyuynge in pees · and parfit charitee*
′ ″ × ′ × ′ × ″ × ′ ×
*God loued he best · with al his hoole herte*
× ″ × ′ × ′ × ′ × ′ ×
*At alle tymes · thogh him gamęd or smerte*
× ″ × ′ × ″ ′ × × ′ ×
*And thanne his neighe-bour · right as hymselue* 531–535.

§ 253. The difference between two successive syllables may be very slight ; e.g. —

× ′ ″ ′ × ′ ″ ′ × ′
*A whit cote and a blewę hood wered he*[3] 564.

---

[1] Some of these words, however, had more sentence-stress in Chaucer's time than now; e.g. *of* (not yet *ov* or *əv*), *was* (not yet *waz* or *woz* or *wɑz*).

[2] Of course a monosyllabic word is here considered as a syllable.

[3] Here, though the usual stress relationship of adjective and noun is that of secondary to primary, the adjective is more significant than the noun and has heavier stress, the meaning being that the Miller's coat was white and his hood was blue.

§ 254. Chaucer, however, very rarely violates either word-stress or sentence-stress in his poetry, and his natural easy rhythm is one of the characteristics which distinguishes his verse from that of other poets of his day and generation.

### THE VERSE PAUSE

§ 255. Each verse is divided into two parts by a distinct pause (cæsura) coincident with a pause in the sense.[1]

§ 256. The usual position for the pause is between the second and third accented syllable in the verse. It may directly follow the second accented syllable (masculine[2] cæsura), or immediately precede the third accented syllable (feminine cæsura); e.g. —

× ′ × ″ × ″ × ′× ′
*Whan Zephirus · eek with his swete breeth*
× ′× ′ × ′ × ′ × ′
*Inspired hath · in euery holt and heeth*
× ′ × ′ × ″ × ′ × ′ ×
*The tendre croppes · and the yonge sonne* etc. 5.

§ 257. But the pause may stand anywhere between the first accent and the fourth; e.g. —

′ × ″ × ′ ″ ′ × ′ ×
*Gynglen · in a whistlynge wynd als cleere* 170.
× ′ × ″ × ′ × ″ × ′ ×
*Or swynken with his handes · and laboure* 186.

### IRREGULARITIES OF VERSE STRUCTURE

The normal verse of the *Prologue* and *Knightes Tale*, viz. a series of five simple waves of rising rhythm, divided

[1] This pause is regularly noted in the Ellesmere and Hengwrt Mss., and occasionally in the other Mss., by the sign /; in modern printing it is usually denoted by •.

[2] The German terms are '*stumpf*' and '*klingend*'; 'Rising Cæsura' and 'Falling Cæsura' would be better terms for English.

into two parts by a pause, is subject to the following variations : —

§ 258. (1) **Reversal of Rhythm.** — The first rising wave of the verse and the wave immediately following the pause are very frequently reversed, giving the order ′× ×′, etc.

(a) At the beginning of the verse ; e.g. —

′ × × ′· ″ ′ × ′×″
*Vnder his belt he bar ful thriftily* 105.

′ ″ ″ ′ × ′× ′ × ′
*Wel koude he dresse his takel yemanly* 106.

′× × ′ ″ ′ ″ ″ × ′×
*After the sondry sesons of the yeer* 347.

″ × × ′ · × ′ × ′ × ′×
*In a tabard he rood vpon a mere* 541.

So 125, 925, 2304, 2673, 2790, 2791, etc., etc.

(b) After the pause ; e.g. —

× ″ × ′ × ′ · ′ × × ′
*And for to festne his hood under his chyn*

× ′ × ′ · ′ × × ′ ″ ′
*He hadde of gold wroght a ful curious pyn* 195, 196.

× ′ × ′ · ′ × × ′ × ′
*Who wrastleth best naked with oille enoynt* 2961.

So 320, 393, 503, 680, etc., etc.

(c) Often in both places ; e.g. —

′ × ″ ′ · ′ ″ × ″ ″ ′×
*Trouthe and honour · fredom and curteisie* 46.

§ 259. (2) **Additions to the normal verse** : —

(a) An extra unstressed syllable is frequently added at the end of the verse, and often before the pause. In the latter case two stressed syllables occur together without any reversal of the rhythm ; e.g. —

′ ″ × ′ ×· × ′ × ′ ″ ′×
*That in hir coppe ther was no ferthyng sene* 134.

′ ″ × ′ ″ · × ′ × ″ × ′×
*He was a shepherde and noght a mercenarie* 514.

' " × ' " · × ' " ' × ' ×
*Myn is the stranglyng and hangyng by the throte* 2458.
× ' ×· " ' × ' × ' × ' ×
*Thanne seyde he O crewel goddes that gouerne* 1303.
So 131, 494, 613, 1097, 2002, 2464, 2503, 2523, etc.

(b) Very rarely an extra unstressed syllable is added at the beginning of a verse; clear instances are: —

× × ' " ' · ' ×× ' " '
*With a thredbare cope as is a poure scoler* 260.
× × ' × ' × ' × ' × ' ×
*Seuene hennes for to doon al his plesaunce* B 4056.

(c) But after the cæsura at the beginning of the second part of the line the extra syllable is frequently added;[1] e.g. —

" ' " ' · × × ' × "× ' ×
*Ther nas no tygre in the vale of Galgopheye* 2626.
× ' × ' · × × " × ' × ' ×
*Ne me ne list thilke opinions to telle* 2813.
× ' ×" · × × " ×" ×'
*Disherited of hir habitacioun* 2926.
× ' × "× ' · × × ' ×"
*Is likned til a fissh that is waterlees* 180.
× ' ×"· × × ' × ' × '
*And Arcita that is in the court roial* 1497.
× ' × ' ·× ' × ' ·× × '
*And some wol haue a Pruce sheeld or a targe* 2122.[2]

§ 260. 3. **Subtractions from the normal verse**: —

(a) The unstressed syllable which begins the verse is frequently omitted: —

' × ' ×· ' × ' × '
*Twenty bookes clad in blak or reed* 294.
"× ' × ' " " × '
*In a gowne of faldyng to the knee* 391.

---

[1] The scribe of $H_4$ evidently did not understand this characteristic of Chaucer's verse, for he is especially fond of exercising his ingenuity in 'doctoring' lines in which it occurs, and his doctorings have unfortunately been adopted into many modern Chaucer texts.

[2] The cæsuras are as marked in *a*.

' × ' ″ · ″ × ' ″ '
*Armed were they as I haue yow told* 2126.
' × ' · × ' ″ ' × ' ×
*Funeral he mighte al accomplice* 2864.
' × ' × ″ × ' × ″
*Nymphes, Fawnes, and Amadrides* 2928.
So 247, 1656, 2511, 1535, 2489, etc.

(b) Possibly, too, the unstressed syllable at the beginning of the second half of the verse was occasionally omitted.[1] But this is rare in the *Prologue* and *Knightes Tale*. It does not seem possible to scan 2770 in any other way: —

' ″ ″ ' · ' × ' × ' ×
*Syn that my lyf may no lenger dure.*

2367 also yields the best rhythm when scanned —

× ' × ' × ' · ' ″ '
*The nexte houre of Mars folwynge this,*
″ ' ×

since such a stress group as *folwynge* is unusual in Chaucer; see § 183; cp. also 741.

### THE DIVISION OF THE VERSE INTO SYLLABLES

While the syllable division of M.E. verse is in the main that of M.E. prose, there are some losses and slurrings of unstressed syllables that are peculiar to poetry.

### ELISION

§ 261. **A final unstressed *e*** is lost before a word beginning with a vowel, before *h* in the lightly stressed words *he, his, him, her, hit,* and sometimes before *how* and *heer;* e.g.—

' × ' × ' × ″ × ' ×
*The droghte of March hath perced to the roote* 2.
' ″ × ' × ' × ' × ″
*Wel koude he dresse his takel yemanly* 106.

[1] A theory stated by Zupitza in *Archiv für das Studium der neuren Sprachen*, 89, 354, but the clear instances are so rare as to make the matter exceedingly doubtful.

× ′ × ′ ″ ′ × ′ × ′
*On which ther was first write a crowned A* 161.
″ ′ ″ ′ ″ ′ ″ ′ × ″
*Yow loueres axe I now this questioun* 1347.

§ 262. But the elision is not always carried out; e.g. —

× ′ × ′ × ′ × ′ × ′
*That on his shyne a mormal hadde he* 386 (cf. 298).
″ ′ × ′ × ′ × ′ × ′ ×
*No berd hadde he, ne neuer sholde haue* 689.
′ × ′ ′ × ′ ′ × ′
So *doute it* 1322, *cride A* 1078, *same is* 2904.

§ 263. Elision sometimes occurs before words beginning with *h* other than those given in § 261, but only where the *h* begins an unstressed syllable. Instances do not occur in the *Prologue* and *Knightes Tale;* but cf. *to habundant* × ′ × B 4115, and *blisse habounde* E 1286, *crie* '*Harrow*' A 4072. ′ × ′ × ′ × ′

§ 264. The elided *-e* is not always an inflectional syllable; e.g. —

(1) After *l* and *r*: —

′ × × ′ ″ ′ × ′ × ′
*That of hir smylyng was ful symple and coy* 119.
× ′ × ″ × ′ × ″ × ′ ×
*Of Aristotle and his philosophie* 295.
′ × ′ × ″ × × ′ × ′
So *peple his apes* 706, *vnto his ordre he was* 214.

(2) In the unstressed form of the definite article:[1] —

× ′ × ″ × ′ × ′
*Of woodecraft wel koude he al the vsage* 110.
′ × ″
So *the effect* 1189, *the opposit* 1894.

[1] Whether or not this elision took place before a word beginning with a consonant is not yet certain.

(3) The *-e* of the unstressed negative particle: —

*Nę I nę axe nat tomorwe tọ hauę uictorie* 2239.

(This weakening of *ne* also frequently occurs before words beginning with a consonant; but there are no clear instances of it in the *Prologue* and *Knightes Tale*.)

§ 265. Other unstressed vowels than *-e* are sometimes elided before a following word beginning with a vowel.

(1) The unstressed *-o* in *to* with the infinitive (also in *unto* occasionally); e.g. —

*And certes lord tọ abyden youręe presence* 927.

This elision is sometimes indicated in the writing; e.g. —

*This was the forward, pleynly for tendite* 1209.

(2) *ē* in romance words (but rarely); e.g. —

*The groynynge and the pryuęę empoysonyng* 2460.

*Departed is with duetęę and honour* 3060.

§ 266. An initial unstressed vowel is frequently lost after a word ending with a long vowel or diphthong; e.g. —

*And where they ęngendred and of what humour* 421.

*So ęstatly was he of his gouernaunce* 281.

So are to be explained *thou ąrt* 1608, *I ąm* 1618, *By ęterne word* 1109.

### SYNCOPE OF UNSTRESSED SYLLABLES

267. The loss of the **medial unstressed vowel before a single liquid or nasal** (cf. § 78) was probably more common in poetry than in prose.

§ 268. **Unstressed *e* before a final liquid or nasal** is frequently slurred. This usually takes place before a following unstressed syllable beginning with a vowel or *h*: —

× ′ × ′ × ′ × ′ × ′
*His berd was shaue as nygh as euer he kan* 588.

× ′ ″ ′ × ′ × ′ × ′
*In curteisie was set ful muchel hir lest* 132 (cf. 211).

′ × ′ × ′ × ′ × ′
*For he hadde geten hym yet no benefice* 291.

So possibly 394, 400, though in these instances the verse-pause coming after the syllable in question allows us to scan the lines in accordance with § 259 (a).

§ 269. In a few words of romance origin ending in *-le*, *-re* (? = *-el*, *-er*), the final *-e* is slurred before words beginning with a consonant, in which case they would seem to come under § 268 rather than under § 264: e.g. —

× ′ × ′ × ′ ×
*A gentle Maunciple*[1] *was ther of a temple* 567.

× ′ ×′× ′ × ″ × ′
*Of his diete mesurable was he* 435.

× ′ × ′ × ′ × ′× ′ ×
*And yet this Maunciple sette hir aller cappe* 586.

§ 270. Words ending in *-ie* (*-ye*) are subject to the principle stated in § 78 (c); e.g. *murie steuene* 2562. But *-ie-* (*-ye-*), *-ue-* in the middle of a word often counts for but one syllable, the *i* or *u* becoming consonantal *y* or *w*;[2] e.g. ′ × ′× ″ ′ × ″
*bisier* 322, *caryeden* 2900, *famulier* 215 (cf. B 1221), ′ × ″ × ′ × ″
*murierly* 714, *perpetuelly* 1176.

§ 271. This also usually takes place when the *-ie*, *-ue* is final and followed by an unstressed word beginning with a

[1] The O.Fr. form of the word is *mancipe*, but that will not explain 435.

[2] For such forms as *Theseus* 2523 (cf. *Theseus* 1883), *Penneus* 2064, see § 68.

vowel or *h*, the three vowels thus merging into one syllable; e.g. —

*Thyn is the victorie of this auenture* 1235.

*Solitarie he was and euere allone* 1365.

*The rede statue of Mars with spere and targe* 975.

So 870, 872, 916, 917, 1898, 2698, 3057.

Sometimes, however, only the *-e* of *-ye* is lost; e.g. —

*Ne yet the folye of kyng Salamon* 1942.

*Of felonye and al the compassyng* 1996.

§ 272. The final *y* of *many* and *any* is often joined to a following vowel; e.g. *many a* 349, 350, 406, 2101, *any other* 1611.

§ 273. *This* and *is* are frequently joined in one word in M.E. verse; cf. B 4247 and variants.

### RHYME

§ 274. Chaucer's rhymes as a rule depend upon the pairing of vowels and diphthongs which are alike in respect both of quality and quantity. The exceptions are as follows: —

(1) Words which we should from their history expect to have $\bar{e}$ often rhyme with words whose development requires $\bar{e}$, and *vice versa*.[1]

[1] These are chiefly words containg O.E. *æ* (cf. § 66, note). To cover such cases Ten Brink assumed a class of words which sometimes had $\bar{e}$ and sometimes $\bar{e}$. As a large per cent of these words are such as show a change from $\bar{e}$ to $\bar{e}$ in early N.E. being written with *ea*, where we should expect *ee* or *ie*, perhaps the simplest assumption is that they were already becoming open in Chaucer's time.

(2) *ǭu* regularly rhymes with *ọ̄u* in Chaucer (cf. §§ 70 (b), (c), 75 (b)); but *ę̄u* and *ẹ̄u* do not rhyme with one another (cf. § 75 (c), (d)).

§ 275. The rhyme is always on the last stressed syllable of the verse. This may be followed by an unstressed syllable, thus making double rhyme; e.g. *Ęgeus* : *Theseus* 2905, 6; *rente* : *assente*[1] 373, 4.

§ 276. The rhyming syllables may begin with the same consonant and thus be identical in sound; e.g. *deuyse* : *seruyse* 1425, 6; *was come* : *ouer come* 2799, 2800.

§ 277. In the case of double rhymes the unstressed part of the rhyme is often a separate word with light sentence-stress; e.g. *nonys* (nonce) : *noon ys* (none is) 523, 4.

§ 278. Words which are the same in sound may rhyme with one another provided their meanings or inflectional forms are different; e.g. —

*I may* : *in May* 1461, 2; *to se* : *the large see* 1955, 6; *he . . . caste* : *I caste* 2171, 2. So in 1837, 8; 2233, 4.

---

[1] The final *-e* in Chaucer is always sounded at the end of a verse, so that we never have such rhymes as would be *rente* : *ysent* (pp. of *sende*) or *-ye* rhyming with *-y*.

# INDEX

The Arabic numerals refer to the sections of the grammar.
The Roman numerals after a verb indicate the class to which it belongs.
Single vowels left unmarked are short. A long mark over *ou* (*ow*) denotes that it is *ū*.


*ă*, < O.E. *ĕa*, 65; before *n*, *m*, in French words, 6; development of, in N.E., 9; (*ŏ*) + nasal, + nasal and voiced consonant, 61.
*ā*, > N.E. *ēi*, 10; written double, 6.
*abegge*, wk. vb., II, 173.
*aboughte*, see *abegge*.
Accusative endings used to form adverbs, 122.
Accusative of measure, 194.
Additions to normal verse, 259.
Adjective compounds, stress of, 240.
Adjectives, comparison of, 123–126; numeral, 117, 118; compound numeral, 197; possessive, 132; used substantively, 196; weak, use of, 115.
Adverb compounds, stress of, 241.
Adverbs, comparison of, 127; double forms of, 121; formed by case endings, 122; formed from prepositional phrases, 122; historic ending of, 119; inorganic ending of, 120, 121; uses of, 228–233.
*ai*, < O.Fr., 90 (3, 4); < O.E. *ăg*, 69 (a); development of, in N.E., 23.
*al*, adjectival, 143; distributive, 144; in pronominal use, 143.
*aller*, 113.
*am*, 186.
Analogy, influence of, on inflection, 91.
Anomalous verbs, 187.
*answerde*, 169.
*answēre*, n., stress of, 239 (2).
Appositive construction, 190.
*arīse*, st. vb. I, 154.
*arisen*, see *arīse*.
*ārn*, see *am*.
*arǭs*, see *arise*.
Article, definite, 133; omitted, 199; survival of neuter of, 134; survival of oblique cases, 135; indefinite as numeral, 198.
*as*, added to adverbs, 231; to introduce a wish, 232.
Assimilation, 84 (c), 85 (c), 87; of *d* to *t*, 175 (2); of *þ* to *d*, 175 (4).
*atte*, 87; *atten*, 135.
*au* (*aw*), < O.E. *ăg*, 70 (a); < O.E. *ăw*, 75 (a); *a* + nasal and consonant written *au*, 6, 62; *au* > N.E. *ǭ*, 9 (a), 24.
*augh*, < O.E. guttural vowel + *h*, 72 (b), 73 (a).
Auxiliary verbs, 185.
*aw*, see *au*.

*b*, loss of, in N.E., 37; unhistoric, 88 (b).

*baar*, see *bę̄re*.
*bădd*, see *bidde*.
*bāke*, st. vb. VI, 162.
*bār*, see *bę̄re*.
*bāren*, see *bę̄re*.
*be*, see *am*; inflection of, 186, 1.
*bę̄d*, see *bę̄de*.
*bēde*, st. vb. II, 155.
*bę̄den*, see *bidde*.
*beer*, see *bę̄re*.
*beginne*, st. vb. III, 159.
*beigh*, see *bowe*.
*bę̄n*, see *am*.
*bę̄re*, st. vb. IV, 160.
*bę̄t*, see *bę̄te*.
*bę̄te*, st. vb. VII, 163.
*bidde*, st. vb. V, 161.
*bīde*, st. vb. I, 154.
*bīnde*, st. vb. III, 159.
*bīte*, st. vb. I, 154.
*blenchen*, wk. vb. II, 175 (6).
*bleynte*, see *blenchen*.
*blowe*, st. vb. VII, 163.
*bǭden*, see *bēde*.
*bǭre*, see *bę̄re*.
*bǭthe*, inflection of, 145.
*bōwe*, st. vb. II, 155.
*bōwen*, see *bōwe*.
*brăk*, see *brę̄ke*.
*brast*, see *breste*.
*brę̄ke*, st. vb. IV, 160.
*brenne*, st. vb. III, 159.
*breste*, st. vb. III, 158.
*brę̄w*, see *brę̄we*.
*brę̄we*, st. vb. II, 155.
*bringe*, wk. vb. II, 173.
*brǭken*, see *brę̄ke*.
*brosten*, see *breste*.
*brŏughte*, see *bringe*.
*brōuke*, st. vb. II, 155.
*bülden*, wk. vb. II, 175, 2 (b).
*by-doluen*, see *delue*.
*c*, final, lost, 121; intervocalic, 79 (d); loss of, in unstressed syllable, 79 (c); palatalization of O.E. *c*, 79 (a), (b), (c); sounds of, 8, 42; (*s*) written *t* in N.E., 42.
*cacche*, wk. vb. II, 173.
Cæsura, 255–257.
*cam*, see *come*.
*can*, inflection of, 185, 4.
*carf*, see *kerue*.
*caste*, pret. 175 (5).
*caste*, wk. vb. II, 175 (5).
*caughte*, see *cacche*.
*ch*, < O.E. *c*, 79 (a), (b), (c); sound of, 8.
*chę̄s*, see *chę̄se*.
*chę̄se*, st. vb. II, 155.
*chǭsen*, see *chę̄se*.
*-cioun*, sound of, 8.
*cladde*, see *clę̄the*.
*clę̄pe*, wk. vb. I, 167.
**clę̄the*, 175 (4).
*clę̄ue*, st. vb. II, 155.
*clīmbe*, st. vb. III, 159.
*clǭuen*, see *clę̄ue*.
*cōm*, see *come*.
*come*, st. vb. IV, 160.
*cōmen*, see *come*.
Concession, expressed by subjunctive, 222.
Condition, expressed by subjunctive, 220.
Conjunctions, 234.
*conne*, see *can*.
Consonants, development of < O.E., 79–87; doubled in M.E. and N.E., 35; representation of, 8; unhistoric, 88; unhistoric in N.E., 45.
Contracted forms in present third singular, 177.
*conveye*, wk. vb. I, 168.

*coruen*, see *kerue*.
*coude*, see *can*.
*couthe*, see *can*, *kouthe*.
*crēp*, see *crēpe*.
*crēpe*, st. vb. II, 155.
*crīde*, pret. of *crīen*, 169.
*crōppen*, see *crēpe*.
*crōwe*, st. vb. VII, 163.
*cwāke*, st. vb. VI, 162.

*d*, + *j*-sound, development of in N.E., 40; loss of, 85 (d); > *th* in N. E., 43; unhistoric, 88 (c).
*dalf*, see *delue*.
*dar*, inflection of, 185, 5.
Dative, singular, form of, 98; with impersonal verb, 195.
*dēden*, see *dō*.
*delue*, st. vb. III, 158.
Demonstrative pronoun, 136, 137, 202, 203.
*dēre*, wk. vb. I, 166.
*derre*, 125.
*dide*, pret. of *dīen*, 169.
*dide*, see *dō*.
Diphthongs, development of in N.E., 23–30, 77; due to *c*, 76; due to *h*, 71–73; due to *w*, 74–75; < O.Fr., 90 (3); produced by O.E. *g*, 68–70; representation of, 7.
Direct object, proleptic, 193.
*dō*, inflection of, 187.
*dorre*, see *dar*.
*dorste*, see *dar*.
Double forms from O.Fr., 90 (2), (4), (5).
*drank*, see *drinke*.
*drawe*, st. vb. VI, 162.
*drēde*, VII, 163; wk. forms of, 163.
*drēme*, wk. vb. II, 172.
*drenchen*, wk. vb. II, 175 (6).
*drēw*, see *drawe*.
*dreynt*, participle, 175 (6); see *drenchen*.
*drinke*, st. vb. III, 159
*driuen*, see *drīue*.
*drīue*, st. vb. I, 154.
*drōf*, see *drīue*.
*dronk*, see *drinke*.
*dronken*, see *drinke*.
*drōugh*, see *drawe*.
*drōw*, see *drawe*.
*dulue*, see *delue*.

*ĕ*, < O.E. *ĕo*, 65; (Kent.) < O.E. *ȳ*, 63; loss of in unstressed syllable, 78 (b), (c), 94, 108, 110, 119; loss of in inflected syllable, 78 (a), 91; M.E. developments of in N.E., 11; sound of in inflected syllable, 78 (a); representation of in inflected syllable, 78 (a).
*ē*, < O.E. *ēo*, 65; < O.E. *ǣ*, 66; due to *ld*, 58.
*ē* < O.E. *ēa*, 65; < O.E. *ǣ*, 66; < O.Fr. *ai* or *ei*, 90 (4); due to stress lengthening, 58.
*ē*, *ē*, distinction between, 6.
*ē*, development of in N.E., 12, 13; written double, 6; unhistoric final *-e*, 95.
*eet*, see *ēte*.
*ei*, < O.Fr. 90 (4); development of in N.E., 23; produced by *c*, 76.
*ēi*, < O.E. *ĕg*, *ǣg*, 69, (b); < O.E. palatal vowel + *g*, 69 (b), (c).
*eigh*, < O.E. palatal vowel + *h*, 72 (a), (b), (c).
Elision, 261–266.
*eo* (Fr. *üe*), development of in N.E., 29.
*ēre*, wk. vb. I, 166.

*ę̄te*, st. vb. V, 161.
*ę̄ten*, see *ę̄te*.
*ēu*, *ēw*, < O.E. palatal vowel + *w*, 75 (c), (d).
*ęuerich*, 147.
*ęuerichon*, 147.
*ęuery*, 147.
*ew*, < O.Fr. *ü*, 90 (6).
*ew*, see *ēu*.
*ēyther*, inflection of, 146.
*-eynte*, prets. in, 175 (6).

*f*, assimilation of, 84 (c), 87; intervocalic voiced, representation of, 84 (a); loss of, 84 (b).
*falle*, VII, 163.
*fāre*, st. vb. VI, 162.
*faught*, see *fighten*.
*fēde*, wk. vb. II, 172.
*fēlen*, wk. vb. II, 175, 2 (b).
*fell*, see *falle*.
*fet*, see *fette*.
*fette*, wk. vb. II, 175, 2 (a).
*fīghten*, st. vb. III, 158.
*fill*, see *falle*.
*fīnde*, st. vb. III, 159.
*flaugh*, see *flȳen*.
*fleigh*, see *flȳen*.
*flēn*, st. vb. II, 155.
*flēte*, st. vb. II, 155.
*flōwen*, see *flȳen*.
*flȳ*, pret. II, 155.
*flȳen*, st. vb. II, 155.
*fond*, see *fīnde*.
Foreign words, stress of, 246–248.
*forsāke*, st. vb. VI, 162.
*fōughten*, see *fīghten*.
*fōunden*, see *fīnde*.
*ful*, 228.

*g* + guttural vowel < O.E. *g*, 80 (a); sounds of, 8.
*gat*, see *gēte*.
Genitive, plural, 99; singular, ending of, 92, 97; singular, without ending, 97; singular, ending used to form adverb, 122; used as adjective, 191; used as partitive, 192.
*gēte*, st. vb. V, 161.
*gēten*, see *gēte*.
Gerundives, 182.
*gh*, represented by 3, 8.
*girden*, wk. vb. II, 175, 2 (b).
*glīde*, inf. 154.
*gnawe*, st. vb. VI, 162.
*gnow*, see *gnawe*.
*gō*, inflection of, 187.
*graunte*, wk. vb. I, 168.
*grīnde*, st. vb. 159.
*growe*, VII, 163.

*h* (gh), development of in N.E., 44.
*h*, diphthong due to, 71–73; loss of initial, 86; written *gh*, 71, 77 (1).
*hāde*, 84 (b).
*haf*, see *hę̄ue*.
*halp*, see *helpe*.
*hān*, see *hāue*.
*hāue*, wk. vb. II, 174.
*heelp*, see *helpe*.
*hēf*, see *hę̄ue*.
*hęld*, see *hōlde*.
*hęlde*, see *hōlde*.
*hęle*, 160.
*hęng*, see *honge*.
*helpe*, st. vb. III, 158.
*hēre*, wk. vb. II, 172.
*hērie*, wk. vb. I, 166.
*hęt*, see *hōte*.
*hę̄ue*, st. vb. VI, 162.
*hīght*, see *hōte*.
*hīghte*, see *hōte*, note.

*ẖōlde*, VII, 163.
*holpen*, see *helpe*.
*honge*, st. vb. VII, 163.
*honoure*, wk. vb. I, 168.
*hōte*, st. vb. VII, 163.
Hypothetical notion expressed by subjunctive, 221.

*ĭ*, corresponding to N.E. *ĭ*, 14; interchangeable with *y*, 6; < O.E. *y*, 63; sounds of, 8.
*ĭ*, < O.E. palatal vowel + *g*, 69 (d); M.E. development of in N.E., 15.
*ic*, *ich*, 1st person, pronoun, 128.
*īgh*, < O.E. palatal vowel + *h*, 72 (c), (d).
Imperative of Strong and Weak Verbs, 181.
Impersonal verbs, construction, 214; dative with, 195; infinitive with, 218; predicate omitted with, 214.
Indefinite pronoun, 142.
Infinitive, ending of, 182; syntax of, 215–218.
Inflection of adjectives, 107–116; of nouns, 92–106; of verbs, 176–184; of verbs in infinitive, 182; in imperative, 181; in present, 176, 177, 178; in present participle, 183; in past participle, 184; in preterite, 179, 180.
Interrogative pronoun, 140, 141, 211.
*islawe*, see *slēn*.
*islaye*, see *slēn*.

*k*, < O.E. *c*, 79 (a); sound of, 8.
*kēpe*, wk. vb. II, 172.
*kerue*, st. vb. III, 158.
*kidde*, see *kȳthe*.
*knēw*, see *knōwe*.
*knitte*, wk. vb. II, 171.
*knōwe*, st. vb. III, 163.
*kōude*, see *kōwthe*.
*kōuthe*, use of in Chaucer, 85 (b).
*kȳthe*, wk. vb. II, 175, 4.

*l*, loss of in N.E., 37; O.E., loss of medial, 83 (a), of final 83 (b).
*lat*, im. vb., see *lāte*.
*lat*, see *lēte*.
*lāte*, st. vb. VII, 163.
*laughe*, st. vb. VI, 162.
*lay*, see *līe*.
*ld*, lengthenings due to, 47.
*lēde*, wk. vb. II, 172.
*leigh*, see *lȳen*.
*lenger*, 124.
Lengthenings due to consonant groups, 46, ff., to *mb*, 49; to *nd*, 48; to *rþ*, 50; to rd, 50; to rn, 50; to stress, 52–54; prevented by liquid or nasal in following syllable, 51, 53; by *ig* in following syllable, 54.
*lēþ*, see *lēþe*.
*lēþe*, st. vb. VII, 163.
*lēt*, see *lēte*.
*lēte*, st. vb. III. 163.
*lēue*, wk. vb. II, 172.
*leyn*, see *līe*.
*-lic*, adjective suffix, 121.
*līe*, st. vb. V, 161.
*liggen*, see *līe*.
Loss of *e* in unstressed syllable, 79 (c); intervocalic, 79 (d); final, 121; of *d*, 85 (d); of intervocalic *f*, 84 (a); of initial *h*, 86; of *l* in N.E., 37; of O.E. *l* medial and final, 83; of final *n*, 82 (b), 91; of unstressed vowel,

78 (b), (c), 94, 108, 110, 267; of *w*, 81; of *y* < O.E, *ge*, 80 (b).
*loue*, wk. vb. I, 167.
*lough*, see *laughe*.
*-ly*, 127.
*lȳed*, see *lȳen*.
*lȳen*, st. vb. II, 155.

*may*, inflection of, 185, 1.
*māke*, wk. vb. I, 167.
*mb*, lengthening due to, 49.
*me*, see *men*.
*men*, indefinite pronoun, 149.
*mȩnen*, wk. vb. II, 175, 2 (b).
*mȩtan*, wk. vb. II, 175, 2 (a).
*mīghte*, see *may*.
*moorne*, 159.
*mōste*, see *mōt*.
*mōt*, inflection of, 185, 8.
*mowe*, see *may*.

*n*, final, lost, 82 (b), 91; preserved, 82 (b); < O.E. final *m*, 82 (a), 91.
*nam*, see *nime*.
*nam*, 186.
*nas*, 186.
*nd*, lengthenings due to, 48.
Negative adverb, 233.
*neither*, 146.
*nȩre*, wk. vb. I, 186.
*ner*, *nerre*, 125.
*nime*, st. vb. IV, 160.
*nōmen*, see *nime*.
Nominative, generalization of, 92; singular ending of, 93, 95; plural, form of, 99–106.
*nonce*, *for the*, 135.
Noun compounds, stress of, 239.
Nouns, inflection of, 92–106; syntax of, 191–195.
Numeral adjective, cardinal, declension of, 117; ordinal, 118; compound, 197.

*ŏ*, + nasal > N.E. *æ*, 9 (c); M.E. developments of *ŏ* in N.E.
*ō̆* and *ō̤* not distinguished by scribes, 6.
*ō̤*, < O.E. *ā*, 60; M.E. developments of in N.E., 17, 18; due to group or stress lengthening, 58; written double, 6.
*o* written for *u* and *ou* (*ū*), 6; for *ou*, 7.
*oughte*, see *owe*.
*oi*, > N.E. *oi*, 28.
Old French words, development of in M.E., 90.
Old Norse words in English, 89.
Omission of unstressed syllable in verse, 260.
*other*, a form of *eyther*, 146.
*ōu*, development of in N.E., 26, 77 (5).
*ōu* (*ōw*), < O.E. guttural vowel + *g*, 70 (b), (c); < O.E, *āw*, *ōw*, 75 (b).
*ōu* > N.E. *ōw*, 27, 77 (5).
*ou* (*ū*), < O.Fr. *ou*, 90 (1); representation of, 6; diphthong, representation of, 7.
*ōugh*, < O.E. *āh*, 73, b; < O.E. *ŏh*, *ōh* + consonant, 73 (c).
*-o͞w*, unstressed form of 2d person pronoun, 129.
*ow*, see *ou*, *ū*.
*owe*, inflection of, 185, 7.

*þ*, unhistoric, 88 (a).
participle, ending of present, 183; ending of past, 184.
*passe*, wk. vb. I, 168.
Perfect tense, formation of, 227.

Personal pronoun, 200–201.
Possessive adjective, 132.
Predicate, syntax of, 212–214.
Prepositions, 234; stress of, 241.
Prepositional phrases used to form adverbs, 122.
Present indicative and subjunctive, 176, 177, 178.
Present tense to express general truth, 244; historical, 226.
Preterite, indicative, 179; subjunctive, 180; used for pluperfect, 225; historical, 226.
*preyde*, 169.
Primary stress, of foreign words, 246; of noun compounds, 239; of simple words, 238; of verbal compounds, 241.
Pronoun compounds, stress of, 240.
Pronouns, demonstrative, 133, 202, 203; indefinite, 142 ff., 200; interrogative, 140, 211; personal, 1st pers., 128, 2d pers., 129, 3d pers., 130, used reflexively, 201; relative, 138, 204–210; used as proleptic object, 193.
Proper names, form of, 96.
*punysshe*, wk. vb. I, 168.

*quook*, preterite of *quāke*, 167.

*r*, in N.E., 38.
*ran*, see *renne*.
*raughte*, see *rȩche*.
*rþ*, lengthening due to, 50.
*rd*, lengthening due to, 50.
*rȩche*, wk. vb. II, 173.
*rȩden*, VII, 163; weak forms of, 163.
Reflexive use of personal pronoun, 201.
*reighte*, see *rȩche*.
Relative pronoun, 138, 139, 204–210.
*renne*, st. vb. III, 159.
Reversal of rhythm, 258.
Rhyme, 274–278.
*rīde*, st. vb. I, 154.
*rīden*, see *rīde*.
*ringe*, st. vb. III, 159.
*rīue*, st. vb. I, 154.
*rn*, lengthening due to, 50.
*rǭd*, see *rīde*.
*rǭme*, wk. vb. I, 168.
*ronnen*, see *renne*.

*sat*, see *sitte*.
*saugh*, see *sēn*.
*saw*, see *sēn*.
*sch*, sound of, 8.
Secondary stress, 243–245.
*seet*, pret. of *sitte*, see *sitte*, n. 4.
*sēke*, wk. vb. II, 173.
*self*, inflection of, 150.
*selle*, wk. vb. II, 173.
*selue*, see *self*.
*sēme*, wk. vb. II, 172.
*sēn*, st. vb. V, 161.
*senden*, wk. vb. II, 175, 2 (b).
*sengen*, wk. vb. II, 175, 7.
Sentence stress, 249–251.
*sēten*, see *sitte*.
*sēth*, see *sēthe*.
*sēthe*, st. vb. II, 155.
*sette*, wk. vb. II, 171.
*seyen*, wk. vb. II, 174.
*seynde*, pret. 175, 5, see *sengen*.
*sh*, < O.E. *sc*, 79 (e); see *sch*.
*shāke*, st. vb. VI, 162.
*shal*, inflection of, 185, 2.
*shāpe*, 162, n. 5.
*shēde*, VII, 163; wk. forms of, 163.
*shēf*, see *shōuuen*.
*shēre*, st. vb. IV, 160.

*shēte*, st. vb. II, 155.
*shīne*, st. vb. I, 154.
*shōf*, see *shōūuen*.
*sholde*, see *shal*.
Shortenings due to two or more consonants, 55, 175 (1); to nas. or liq. or *ig* in following syllable, 56; to light stress, 57.
*shouen*, see *shouuen*.
*shōūuen*, st. vb. II, 155.
*shrīue*, inf. 154.
*shulde*, see *shal*.
*shullen*, see *shal*.
*singe*, st. vb. III, 159.
*sinke*, st. vb. III, 159.
*sitte*, st. vb. V, 161.
*slēn*, st. vb. VI, 162.
*slēp*, see *slēpe*.
*slēpe*, wk. vb. II, 172.
*slēpe*, st. vb. VII, 163.
*slough*, see *slēn*.
*slow*, see *slēn*.
*smīte*, inf. 154.
*sōden*, see *sēthe*.
*sōlde*, see *selle*.
*som*, inflection of, 151.
*somme*, see *som*.
*songen*, see *singe*.
*soong*, see *singe*.
*sought*, see *sēke*.
*spak*, see *spēke*.
*spēke*, st. vb. IV, 160.
*spinne*, st. vb. III, 159.
*spōken*, see *spēke*.
*sporne*, wk. vb. I, 159.
*sprēde*, wk. vb. II, 172.
*sprengen*, wk. vb. II, 175 (7).
*spreynde*, pret. 175 (7); see *sprengen*.
*springe*, st. vb. 159.
*ssh*, see *sch*.
*stal*, see *stēle*.
*stape*, see *steppe*.
*starf*, see *sterue*.
*stēle*, st. vb. IV, 160.
*steppe*, st. vb. VI, 162.
*stēre*, wk. vb. 166.
*sterue*, st. vb. III, 158.
*stinge*, st. vb. III, 159.
*stōd*, see *stonde*.
*stōlen*, see *stēle*.
*stonde*, st. vb. VI, 162.
*storuen*, see *sterue*.
*straughte*, see *strecche*.
*strecche*, wk. vb. II, 173.
*streighte*, see *strecche*.
Stress, grades of, 235–251; stress-lengthening, 52; stress of O.Fr. words, 90 (5); word-stress, 238–248; sentence-stress, 249–251.
*strīue*, st. vb. I, 154.
Subject, repeated, 189; unexpressed, 188.
Subjunctive, hypothetical notion expressed by, 221; uses of, 219–223.
Substantive verb, inflection of, 186, 1.
Substantive use of adjective, 196.
Subtractions from the normal verse, 260.
*such*, see *swich*.
*suffice*, wk. vb. I, 168.
*swal*, see *swelle*.
*swelle*, st. vb. III, 158.
*swēre*, st. vb. VI, 162.
*swich*, inflection of, 152.
*swimme*, st. vb. III, 159.
*swinke*, st. vb. III, 159.
*swollen*, see *swelle*.
*swōren*, see *swēre*.
*sȳen*, see *sēn*.
Syncope of unstressed syllables 267–273.

*ȝ*, + *j* sound, development of in N.E., 39.
*tāke*, st. vb. VI, 162.
*taught*, see *tę̄che*.
*tę̄che*, wk. vb. II, 173.
*telle*, wk. vb. II, 173.
Temporal particles, subjunctive with, 223.
Tenses, uses of, 224–227.
*tę̄re*, st. vb. IV, 160.
*th* (þ), voiced and voiceless, 8; assimilation of, 85 (c), 87; loss of intervocalic, 85 (a).
*thar*, inflection of, 185, 3.
*that*, added to adverbs, 232.
*thenke*, wk. vb. II, 173.
*ther*, relative, 229; repetitive, 230.
*thilke*, 148.
*thō̆*, plural of demonstrative pronoun, 136.
*thoughte*, see *thenke*, *thynke*.
*thresshe*, st. inf. III, 158.
*thrīue*, inf. 154.
*thrōwe*, VII, 163.
*thurfte*, see *thar*.
*thynke*, wk. vb. II, 173.
*tō̆k*, see *tāke*.
*tō̆lde*, see *telle*.

*u*, developments of in N.E., 19, 22; < O.E. *w*, 74; representation of, 6.
*ū*, < O.E. guttural vowel + *g*, 70 (d); development of in N.E., 20, 77 (2), 77 (4); written *ou*, 6.
*ü*, (S.W.) < O.E. *y*, 63.
*ü* (Fr.), development of in N.E., 20, 21; written *ew* in M.E., 90 (6).
*ūgh* (*ough*) < O.E. *ōh*, *uh*, 73 (d).
*ui*, development of in N.E., 30.
Umlauted form of comparatives, 124.
Unhistoric consonants, 88.

*v*, representation of, 8, 84 (a).
Verbal compounds, stress of, 241–242.
Verbs, anomalous, 187; auxiliary, 185; strong, Class I, 154; Class II, 155; Class III, 157–159; Class IV, 156, 160; Class V, 156, 161; Class VI, 162; Class VII, 163; weak, Class I, 164, 165; Class II, 164, 170–175.
Verse, the normal, 252; additions to normal v., 259; irregularities of, 258–260; verse-pause, 255–257.
Voicing of intervocalic *f*, 84 (a).
Vowels, development of < O.E., 59–66; development of unstressed vowels in N.E., 33–34; loss of unstressed vowel, 78 (b), (c), 94, 108, 110, 267; representation of, 6.

*w*, final, development of in N.E., 36; influence of on *a*, 9 (e); inorganic initial in N.E., 36; influence of on palatal vowel, 64; last element of diphthong, 7; loss of, 81; < O.E. *g* or *h* preceded by a liquid, 80 (d), (e).
*wāke*, st. vb. VI, 162.
*wan*, see *winne*.
*warth*, see *worthe*.
*was*, see *am*.
*wasshe*, st. vb. VI, 162.
*waxe* (st. vb. VII, 162, 163).
*wel*, 228.
*wente*, see *gō̆*.
*wę̄p*, see *wę̄pe*.

*wę̄pe*, st. vb. VII, 163.
*wę̄re*, see *am*.
*wę̄re*, st. vb. IV, 160.
*wę̄re*, wk. vb. I, 166.
*wesshe*, see *wasshe*.
*whette*, wk. vb. II, 171.
*which*, rel. pro. 139; interrogative pro. 140.
*wil*, inflection of, 187.
*wīnde*, st. vb. III, 159.
*winne*, st. vb. III, 159.
*wirche*, wk. vb. II, 173.
*wiste*, see *wǭt*.
*witen*, see *wǭt*.
*wolde*, see *wil*.
*wonder*, used as adv., 122.
*wonne*, see *winne*.
*wōpen*, see *wēpe*.
Word-stress, foreign words, 246; native words, 238.
*worthe*, st. vb. III, 158.
*wǭt*, inflection of, 185, 6.
*wrak*, see *wrę̄ke*.
*wrę̄ke*, st. vb. V, 161.
*wrīe*, st. vb. I, 154 and note.
*wrīte*, inf. 154.
*writen*, see *wrīte*.
*wrǭken*, see *wrę̄ke*.
*wroughte*, see *wirche*.
*wrǭt*, see *wrīte*.

*y*, as a consonant, 8; as a vowel, see *i*; < O.E. *g* + palatal vowel, 80 (a), (b); as last element of diphthong, 7; loss of *y* < O.E. *ge*, 80 (b); represented by *z*, 8.
*yaf*, see *yę̄ue*.
*yāuen*, see *yę̄ue*.
*yēde*, see *gō*.
*yę̄lde*, st. vb. III, 158.
*yę̄ue*, st. vb. V, 161.
*yę̄uen*, see *yę̄ue*.
*yiue*, see *yēue*.
*yǭld*, see *yę̄lde*.
*yǭlden*, see *yę̄lde*.
*yseyn*, see *sę̄n*.

*z*, voiced *s* in French words, 8.
3, printed *y* or *gh*, or *z*, 8; representing *-es* in words of French origin, 8.

# A BRIEF SKETCH OF CHAUCER'S LIFE

GEOFFREY CHAUCER, the son of John Chaucer, a London wine merchant,[1] and of Agnes, his wife, was born, probably in London, about 1340. The date is a matter of inference from the known facts of his life. The most important of those bearing on his age are a few entries in a fragment of the Household-Book of the Countess of Ulster,[2] wife of Prince Lionel, the third son of Edward III., which record certain expenses for the clothing and gratuities of Geoffrey Chaucer. As the sums set down against his name are in each case small in comparison with those paid to the other servants of the Household, it has been concluded that Chaucer was a page in the family. The record is for the years 1357–1359, and Chaucer, if a page, must have been then under twenty. Again, in the *Prologue to the Man of Lawes Tale*, the poet tells us that in his youth he wrote about Ceyx and Alcioun, the story made use of in his poem on the *Dethe of Blaunche*, the Countess of Lancaster (cp. *Globe Chaucer*, p. 311), which is evidently early work and must have been written in 1369 or 1370.[3] Had he been

[1] As he tells us himself in a deed dated June 19, 1380; cp. *Thynne's Animadversions*, ed. Furnivall, E.E.T.S. 9, p. 12, Note 2.

[2] Published in full by the Chaucer Society, *Life Records of Chaucer*, III., p. 97 ff.

[3] But there may have been a poem of earlier date on *Ceyx and Alcioun*, which was later incorporated into the *Dethe of Blaunche*.

born earlier than 1340, he would hardly have referred to himself as a youth at this time.

Again, in giving testimony at the Scrope trial on October 15, 1386, Geoffrey Chaucer is described as being of the age of forty years and upward (*xl ans et plus*), and as having borne arms for twenty-seven years. As the ages of the other deponents are put down but roughly, in some cases being in error by as much as ten years, no great importance is to be attached to the clerk's statement that Chaucer was forty years old and upward. But the entry concerning his military service is more significant, and is vital to the competence of Chaucer's testimony as to how long the Scrope family had worn the arms they claimed. He testifies that in the French campaign of 1359, up to the time when he was taken prisoner, he had frequently seen Sir Richard Scrope publicly bearing the arms in question. The clerk's statement, "armed for twenty-seven years," then amounts to saying that the French expedition of 1359 was Chaucer's first campaign. If he had been born later than 1340, he would have been less than twenty years old at the time.

Fitting this scanty evidence together, scholars have assumed 1340 as the date of Chaucer's birth. This would make him a seventeen-year-old page in 1357, a nineteen-year-old soldier in 1359, and a young poet writing on the *Dethe of Blaunche*, at twenty-nine.

While Hoccleve's address to Chaucer as "Universal fader of science" is likely to be a somewhat exaggerated title, there is, nevertheless, such abundant evidence of wide reading and familiarity with mediæval learning in Chaucer's work that we may easily assume for him an education, for his time, comparatively accurate and complete. But there is no direct evidence as to where he obtained it. It may have been in the household of Prince Lionel, it may have

been at Oxford or at Cambridge. Both Universities have put forth their claims, but as yet they have offered nothing more than claims. His familiarity with the surroundings of Cambridge, as shown in the *Miller's Tale*, could have been gained without residence there. His connection with Strode and the tradition that his son Lewis studied at Oxford is equally untrustworthy evidence of his having himself been an Oxford student. Chaucer tells us of his fondness for reading, and we know from the *Prologue* what a shrewd observer of men and things he was; such a disposition making the best use of the opportunities of a great house would naturally have produced a fairly well-trained scholar without the aid of either of the Universities.

Our first accurate knowledge of the poet is that we get from the Household-Books already referred to, covering his service with the wife of Prince Lionel during the years 1357–1359. That he took part in the French campaign of Edward III., probably in the retinue of Prince Lionel, and was taken prisoner, we have from his testimony in the Scrope suit. In March, 1360, the king contributed £16 to his ransom (money was worth then from ten to twenty times what it is now).

From 1360 to 1367 we know nothing of Chaucer. On June 20, 1367, he is granted by the king a pension of twenty marks, the payment of which in half-yearly instalments of £6 13*s.* 6*d.* begins on November 6 of the same year. The pension is for past and future services, and he is styled *dilectus valettus noster;* so it is likely that Chaucer had already been in the Royal Household for some time, and had enjoyed considerable favor. His duties as valet were those of personal attendance upon the king.[1]

[1] For an account of what such service was, see *Life Records*, II., edited by Dr. Furnivall, Chaucer Society, 1876.

The sums thus recorded from time to time in the Issue Rolls of the Exchequer as drawn *per manus proprias* or by deputy, tell us something of Chaucer's whereabouts when each payment is made.

In an order for gifts to the Household on December 25, 1368, he is called "squire of less degree." He is first called *armiger* when sent on secret business of the king on December 1, 1372, though in a subsequent payment of his pension he is again *valettus*. After November 22, 1373, however, he is always *armiger*.[1]

His position of valet and squire soon grew into the more responsible one of diplomatic messenger to the king. There is official record of his having been in France in 1369. In 1370 he receives letters of protection for travel in foreign parts. On November 12, 1372, he is one of a commission to treat with the Duke and citizens of Genoa (and the record adds that he went to Florence, too), about choosing a port for a Genoese commercial establishment in England. He starts on this mission on the 1st of December, and returns on the 28th of April, 1373. It used to be thought that this his first Italian journey was the occasion of his becoming acquainted with Petrarch, then living at Acqua near Padua. But the shortness of Chaucer's visit makes this unlikely.[2]

From this time on, evidences of royal favor are frequent and significant. On April 3, 1374, a pitcher of wine daily

---

[1] The records from which these and similar statements that follow are drawn are designated in Dr. Furnivall's *Temporary Preface to the Six-Text Chaucer* (the permanent preface is not yet published), in Professor Skeat's *Oxford Edition of Chaucer's Works*, Vol. I., and in Sir H. Nicholas' *Memoir of Chaucer* (to be found in Vol. I. of the *Aldine Edition of Chaucer's Works*, by Dr. Morris), where many of them are printed in full.

[2] See Mr. Mather's note in the *N. Y. Nation*, October 8, 1898, and his copy of the document there referred to in *Modern Language Notes* for December, 1898.

is granted him for life, a favor which is commuted to an annual pension of twenty marks in the first year of Richard II. On May 10, 1374, Chaucer leases a house over the gate known as Aldgate, which he occupies until October, 1386.

On June 8, 1374, he is made Comptroller of Customs on Wools, Skins, and Tanned Hides, with the express stipulation that he shall perform his duties himself and not by deputy. How onerous they were one can gather from reading *Hous of Fame* (*Globe Chaucer*, p. 566), 139 ff. On June 13 he is granted another pension of £10 for life on account of the good services of himself and his wife, Philippa, to "the Duke (of Lancaster) and his consort, and to his Queen." In 1375 he is the recipient of two lucrative appointments as guardian of the minors, Edmond Staplegate and William de Solys, of Kent.

In 1376 the king awards him the fine of £71 4*s.* 6*d.* which John Kent was amerced for shipping wool to Dordrecht without paying the duty.

In December, 1376, and in February, 1377, he is again abroad on secret business of the King, on the latter occasion in Flanders, whence he returned on the 25th of March. On April 20 he is granted letters of protection to be in force until August 1, being again engaged in the king's business abroad. This was doubtless as one of the commissioners to negotiate a peace with France. In June, 1377, Edward III. died.

During this period (1367–1377), Chaucer's career was brilliant and rapid. Marks of royal favor, pensions, diplomatic missions, all attest the confidence the king had in him. And it was no wonder. Any one who will read the *Prologue* carefully can see why Chaucer, even without friends and poetic talent, should have been successful at court.

Quiet, modest, tactful, shrewd, full of sly humor, it is not strange that he should have been often intrusted with the king's business. It was during this period, or some little while before, that he married. The date is uncertain, and there has been much dispute about the person and position of his wife. It is clear that her name was Philippa Chaucer on December 12, 1366, and that she was one of the ladies in waiting on the Queen, though her title, *domicella cameræ Reginæ*, is not evidence that she was unmarried. We know that Philippa Chaucer was Geoffrey Chaucer's wife on May 31, 1377. It is likely that they were married as early as 1366. If they were not married then, they must have been cousins and married at least as early as 1374. Speculation can go further and connect a Philippa Panetaria (?) in the household of the Countess of Ulster in 1357, with the Philippa who afterward became Philippa Chaucer. There is much evidence, too, pointing to the conclusion that Philippa, demoiselle of the Queen's chamber, was the daughter of Sir Payne Roet of Hainault, and sister of the Katherine Roet who was John of Gaunt's third wife. If this is so, the Thomas Chaucer who bore the Roet arms, and was a man of some eminence in the early part of the fifteenth century, was Geoffrey Chaucer's son, and Elizabeth Chaucer, for whose novitiate in the Abbey of Barking, John of Gaunt paid £51 8*s.* 2*d.* in 1381, may have been the poet's daughter. The question, however, is not definitely settled.[1]

The Royal favor and confidence which Chaucer enjoyed under Edward III. did not cease with the king's death. Early in 1378 he is sent on an important mission to France

---

[1] For an interesting summary of the evidence on this point, see Professor Hale's letter in the *Athenæum* of March 31, 1888, p. 404.

to negotiate for the marriage of the king with the French Princess, and again in May, 1378, to Italy, power of attorney having been granted to John Gower, the poet, and Richard Forrester to represent him during his absence. He probably returned on the 19th of September. In 1379–1380 there is scant official trace of him. The spring payment of his pension in 1379 (May 24) is by deputy, which would lead to the inference that he was then absent from London, but on December 9 he received the money *per manus proprias*. On the 8th of May, 1382, he is appointed Comptroller of the Petty Customs of the Port of London, with permission to discharge his duties by deputy. On November 23, 1383, he is especially commended for his assiduity, labor, and diligence in his office, and on the 17th of February, 1385, he is permitted to discharge the duties of his Collectorship of Customs on Wool, etc., by deputy. In 1386, he is elected a member of Parliament from Kent.

During this Parliament John of Gaunt and the Lancastrian party lost the power which they had hitherto held over the young king. Administrative changes followed, and in December, 1386, the poet had to give up both his Comptrollerships. The straitened circumstances into which this cast him give us the probable explanation of his assigning two of his pensions to John Scalvy on May 1, 1388. But he still retained the one granted by the Duke of Lancaster in 1374. The last payment of his wife's pension is recorded on June 18, 1387, giving ground for the inference that she died between this and the time for the next payment. The period that followed must have been the darkest of Chaucer's life. His affairs changed for the better, however, a year later, when Richard II. took the reins of government in his own hands. This occurred on the 3d of May, 1389, and two months later, July 12, Chaucer received

the appointment of Clerk of the King's Works, which gave him a regular income of two shillings a day.[1] He occupied this office, however, for only two years, and was succeeded in it by John Gedney, September 16, 1391.

In the autumn of 1390 he was the victim of a highway robbery, losing his horse and £19 3*s.* 8*d.* of the king's money. The robbers were caught and punished, and Chaucer was expressly released from the obligation to make good the loss by a writ of January 6, 1391.

From this time on he seems to have been frequently in straits for money. He writes to his friend Scogan, at Court, to use his influence in his behalf (*Globe Chaucer*, p. 632). Royal favor must have still remained to him, for on February 28, 1394, Richard granted him a pension of £20, which he draws frequently in advance. In 1398 his enemies are suing him for debt, and the king again intervenes with letters of protection. In October, 1398, the king grants him a tun of wine.

The accession of Henry IV. in September, 1399, brought to the throne the son of Chaucer's former patron, the Duke of Lancaster, and a personal friend. The poet is not long in making a direct appeal to him with a "Compleint to his Empty Purse" (*Globe Chaucer*, p. 634), which meets with a generous response in the way of a pension of 40 marks. With this pension, and his earlier one of £20, Chaucer must have looked forward to a period of ease and comfort in the house in the garden of St. Mary's Chapel, Westminster, which he leased for a rental of £2 13*s.* 4*d.* at Christmas, 1399.

---

[1] Three official documents connected with his incumbency of this office were copied and published by Mr. Selby in the *Athenæum* for January 28, 1888, p. 116.

In 1400 the half-yearly pension granted by Richard II. is paid February 21, and on June 5, £5 of the half-yearly sum of £8 13*s.* 6*d.* due him is drawn for him by Henry Somer. This is the last official trace we have of Geoffrey Chaucer. On October 25, 1400, according to a tradition probably well founded, and already current in 1556, he died, and was buried in Westminster Abbey.[1]

The impression which Chaucer made on his contemporaries almost always finds expression in their admiration of his skill in the use of language.

Even in the dark ages of English criticism, when all accurate knowledge of Middle-English idiom was lost, when ignorance of Middle-English sounds and inflections had obscured, in a large measure, the delicacy of his rhythm, and when the blind following of Renaissance traditions made all but the best of English literature appear mean and vulgar, even then Chaucer's matchless skill in using words seems to have been felt distinctly, despite ignorance and prejudice. And it is not strange. There is no writing like that of the *Prologue* in all English literature, save in Shakspere.

But it is not only a skill in words; it lies deeper than that in an intimate knowledge of men and things, the source of all literary excellence. Of his Canterbury Pilgrims each has his peculiar dress, his peculiar character, even his peculiar idiom. And they act on one another with that friction and resistance which make up human life. The stories they tell are mediæval, though not without literary graces, due to Chaucer's handling, but the story-tellers themselves are modern, or rather, being human, are for all time: Harry Baily, with his rough tact and his jolly good nature, not

---

[1] For a description of Chaucer's works, see the Introduction of the *Globe Chaucer*.

without its tincture of shrewdness, as when he tells them his journey with them will not cost them a penny, all the while knowing that the success of it and the story-telling will line his fat landlord's pockets with good coin of the realm; the courtly knight; the lady prioress; the rascally monk; the scant-haired, pious fraud of a Pardoner; the half-drunken miller; the absent-minded, shy student; the shrewd lawyer, who seemed shrewder than he was; the kindly parson; the doctor, long in league with the apothecary; nay, the poet himself, poking fun at his own early attempts in Romantic verse. Thrown together for a few days of travelling, in the hands of the poet they play their parts with such skill that their jolly group haunts the reader with an exuberance of life that makes generation after generation of English men and women debtors to their shy, mirth-loving creator. It may be doubted if there is anywhere a single literary work of the compass of Chaucer's *Prologue* into which so much human interest has been packed. And it is worth any student's while, be he young or old, to master Middle-English, if only to read this one piece of its literature.

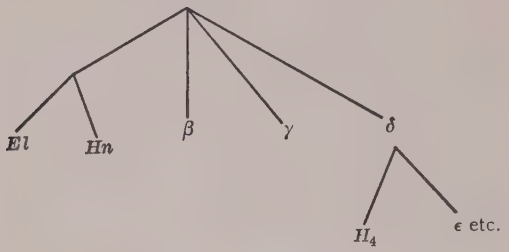
# THE MSS. OF THE CANTERBURY TALES

THERE are fifty-seven known Mss. of the *Canterbury Tales*, all of which vary more or less from the original prototype. The intricate problem of their various relations to one another was solved, at least for the *Pardoner's Tale*, after long and tedious toil by the late Professor Zupitza of Berlin.[1]

Of these Mss. seven are accessible in the publications of the Chaucer Society, viz.: Ellesmere (El), Hengwrt (Hn), University Library, Cambridge, Gg, 4.27 (Gg), Corpus (Co), at Oxford, Petworth (Pe), Lansdowne (Ln), Harleian 7334 ($H_4$). As worked out by Professor Zupitza, the Mss. fall into four groups: the first group (Group $\alpha$) contains only El and Hn, and is incomparably superior to the others in point of accurate representation of Chaucer's inflections; the second group (Group $\beta$) contains six Mss., no one of which has yet been printed; the third group (Group $\gamma$) contains three Mss., one of which, Gg, is printed in the Six-Text Edition of the Chaucer Society; the fourth group (Group $\delta$) contains three known Mss., one of which is $H_1$, and the lost source of a large number of late and untrustworthy Mss. which we designate collectively by the Greek letter $\epsilon$. These late Mss. divide into subclasses called by Zupitza the Se Group and the $Tc_1$ Group respectively. Out

[1] Cf. his *Specimens of Unprinted Mss. of the Pardoner's Tale*, parts I.–IV., published by the Chaucer Society.

of the Se Group flows the Pe Group (represented by Petworth in the Six-Text Edition), and from the $Tc_1$ Group is derived the Co Group (represented in the Six-Text by Corpus and Lansdowne). The relationship of the texts used for this edition may be conveniently represented by the following diagram: —




The grouping arrived at by Zupitza for the *Pardoner's Tale* holds also for the tales printed in this edition. $H_4$ shows a peculiar set of variations of its own, most of them evidently due to the effort of the scribe to correct what seemed to him infelicitous rhythms.

It has been suggested that $H_4$ represents Chaucer's own revision of the *Canterbury Tales;* but a study of its individual peculiarities shows that most of them are due to an effort to make up in the rhythm for lost inflectional syllables, or to remove irregularities of verse structure, or to modernize Chaucer's vocabulary; and the effort does not always meet with a happy success. Such efforts at botching are apparent, *e.g.*, in 292, 299, 305, 307, 324, 334, 363, 746, 772, 778, 803, 876, 2012, 2489. A few changes are, perhaps, betterments; cf., *e.g.*, 485, 528, 686, 1906, 2037. It is evident that in $H_4$ we have an edited Ms., the work of an unusually intelligent scribe; that the scribe worked from a Ms. of the δ

group, but had before him a Ms. of the $\alpha$ group, and possibly a Gg Ms., which he consulted frequently.[1] If it were not that many of his changes are so weak, and so often betray a misunderstanding of the text, and that no trace of them is found in later Mss., we might be tempted to attach some importance to his work. But as it is, they lack authority, whether they are for better or for worse, and Chaucer scholars have long made the mistake of paying too much attention to them.

In printing the variants, mere variations of spelling are not noted, and readings peculiar to a single Ms., save in the case of El or Hn, are likewise not recorded unless they possess unusual interest.

To make an ideal Chaucer text we need several good Mss. of the $\beta$ group, including Cambridge Dd 4. 24, and another Ms. of the $\gamma$ group, to decide the issue for us in cases where the weight of Ms. evidence is evenly distributed. But such cases are not very frequent in the *Prologue* and the *Knightes Tale*. Scribes are always at their best in the early part of a long piece of copying. Even without this additional testimony, therefore, the student may feel a reasonable confidence in the text here presented, the first strictly critical text for any part of the *Canterbury Tales*.

[1] $H_4$ often runs with Hn; *e.g.*, in vv. 140, 161, 178, 207, 217, 309, 524, 613, 1981. It shows traces of readings found only in Gg in vv. 519, 525, 1695, 1726, 1811, 1817, 1967.

# THE PROLOGUE

WHAN that Aprille with his shoures soote
The droghte of March hath perced to the roote,
And bathed euery veyne in swich licour
Of which vertu engendred is the flour;
Whan Zephirus eek with his swete breeth
Inspired hath in euery holt and heeth
The tendre croppes, and the yonge sonne
Hath in the Ram his halue cours yronne,
And smale fowles maken melodye,
That slepen al the nyght with open ye,
So priketh hem nature in hir corages;
Thanne longen folk to goon on pilgrimages,
And palmeres for to seken straunge strondes.
To ferne halwes kowthe in sondry londes,
And specially from euery shires ende
Of Engelond to Caunturbury they wende,
The hooly blisful martir for to seke,
That hem hath holpen whan that they were seeke.
Bifil that in that seson on a day
In Southwerk at the Tabard as I lay
Redy to wenden on my pilgrymage

1. Gg *does not begin until v.* 37. *The variants marked* $H_2$ (MS., Harl. 1758) *supply its place up to that point.* Co *begins at v.* 73; *up to that point the variants are from Se* (*Bodleian, Arch Selden*, B. 14). 8. *a* half. 9. *a* foweles. 10. El $H_2$ (Co Pe eyghe) eye, $H_4$ Ln yhe (El *has same mistake in* 1096, cp. § 69, c). 14. Se serue *for* ferne. 18. Se Ln *omit 2d* that. 19. Hn $H_4$ $H_2$ Ln bifel, *see* § 163; *other* MSS. sesoun, *see* § 6.

To Caunterbury with ful deuout corage,
At nyght was come in to that hostelrye
Wel nyne and twenty in a compaignye
Of sondry folk, by auenture y-falle
In felaweshipe; and pilgrimes were they alle,
That toward Caunterbury wolden ryde.
The chambres and the stables weren wyde,
And wel we weren esed atte beste.
And, shortly, whan the sonne was to reste,
So hadde I spoken with hem euerychon,
That I was of hir felaweshipe anon;
And made forward erly for to ryse
To take oure wey ther, as I yow deuyse.
But nathelees, whil I haue tyme and space,
Er that I ferther in this tale pace,
Me thynketh it acordaunt to resoun
To telle yow al the condicioun
Of ech of hem so as it semed me,
And whiche they were and of what degree,
And eek in what array that they were inne;
And at a Knyght than wol I first bigynne.

A **Knyght** ther was and that a worthy man,
That, fro the tyme that he first bigan
To riden out, he loued chiualrie,
Trouthe and honour, fredom and curteisie.
Ful worthy was he in his lordes werre,
And therto hadde he riden, no man ferre,
As wel in cristendom as in hethenesse,
And euere honoured for his worthynesse.
At Alisaundre he was whan it was wonne;

23. El were *for* was. 24. Pe Ln on *for* in. 28. ϵ *omits 2d* the. 29. ϵ *omits* we. 40. $H_4$ weren. 49. Hn $H_4$ *omit 2d* in.

Ful ofte tyme he hadde the bord bigonne
Abouen alle nacions in Pruce.
In Lettow hadde he reysed and in Ruce —
No cristen man so ofte of his degree.
In Gernade at the seege eek hadde he be
Of Algezir and riden in Belmarye.
At Lyeys was he and at Satalye,
Whan they were wonne; and in the Grete See
At many a noble armee hadde he be.
At mortal batailles hadde he been fiftene,
And foughten for oure feith at Tramyssene
In lystes thries, and ay slayn his foo.
This ilke worthy knyght hadde been also
Somtyme with the lord of Palatye
Agayn another hethen in Turkye;
And eueremoore he hadde a souereyn prys.
And though that he were worthy, he was wys,
And of his port as meeke as is a mayde.
He neuere yet no vileynye ne sayde
In al his lyf vnto no maner wight.
He was a verray parfit, gentil knyght.
But for to tellen yow of his array,
His hors were goode, but he was nat gay;
Of fustian he wered a gypon
Al bismotered with his habergeon,
For he was late y-come from his viage,
And wente for to doon his pilgrymage.
With hym ther was his sone, a yong Squier,
A louyere and a lusty bacheler,

56. $H_4$ *omits* eek. 57. $H_4$ at *for* of. 58. Gg Ln leyeys. 59 *follows* 60 *in* $H_4$. 60. $H_4$ ariue; Gg aryue. 62. Hn foghten. 68. $H_4$ e was *for* were; $H_4$ *omits* that. 70. Hn ne *for* he *and* he *for* ne. 73. e *omits* But. 74. El weren, $H_4$ Ln was *for* were; Hn $H_4$ ne was. 76. Gg besloteryd. 77. $H_4$ Hn comen, Gg Ln come. 80. Hn Gg louere.

With lokkes crulle as they were leyd in presse.
Of twenty yeer of age he was, I gesse.
Of his stature he was of euene lengthe,
And wonderly delyuere and of greet strengthe;
And he hadde been somtyme in chyuachie
In Flaundres, in Artoys and Pycardie,
And born hym weel, as of so litel space,
In hope to stonden in his lady grace.
Embrouded was he, as it were a meede
Al ful of fresshe floures whyte and reede;
Syngynge he was, or floytynge, al the day;
He was as fressh as is the monthe of May.
Short was his gowne with sleues longe and wyde;
Wel koude he sitte on hors and faire ryde;
He koude songes make and wel endite,
Iuste and eek daunce and weel purtreye and write.
So hoote he louede that by nyghtertale
He sleep namoore than dooth a nyghtyngale.
Curteis he was, lowely and seruysable,
And carf biforn his fader at the table.

A **Yeman** hadde he and seruantz namo
At that tyme, for hym liste ride soo,
And he was clad in cote and hood of grene.
A sheef of pecok arwes, bright and kene,
Vnder his belt he bar ful thriftily—
Wel koude he dresse his takel yemanly,
His arwes drouped noght with fetheres lowe—
And in his hand he baar a myghty bowe.

---

82. Hn $H_4$ he was of age. 84. $H_4$ e and greet of s. 86. Gg $H_4$ Pe Ln in Pycardie. 87. Hn $H_4$ as in *for* as of. 89. Co Pe embroydid. 91. Gg Ln floutynge. 92. El in *for* is. 94. $H_4$ wel cowde he *for* faire. 95. Hn $H_4$ wel m. and en. 98. a Gg Pe Ln slepte (see § 163). 101. Hn he hadde. 108. $H_4$ e hond (see § 61).

A not heed hadde he, with a broun visage.
Of woodecraft wel koude he al the vsage.
Vpon his arm he baar a gay bracer,
And by his syde a swerd and a bokeler,
And on that oother syde a gay daggere
Harneised wel and sharp as point of spere;
A Cristophre on his brest of siluer sheene.
An horn he bar, the bawdryk was of grene:
A forster was he soothly, as I gesse.

Ther was also a Nonne, a **Prioresse**,
That of hir smylyng was ful symple and coy;
Hire gretteste ooth was but 'By seinte Loy.'
And she was cleped Madame Eglentyne.
Ful weel she soong the seruice dyuyne,
Entuned in hir nose ful semely,
And Frenssh she spak ful faire and fetisly
After the scole of Stratford-atte-Bowe,
For Frenssh of Parys was to hire vnknowe.
At mete wel y-taught was she with alle:
She leet no morsel from hir lippes falle,
Ne wette hir fyngres in hir sauce depe;
Wel koude she carie a morsel and wel kepe
That no drope ne fille vpon hire brest;
In curteisie was set ful muchel hir lest.
Hire ouer lippe wyped she so clene,
That in hir coppe ther was no ferthyng sene
Of grece, when she dronken hadde hir draughte.
Ful semely after hir mete she raughte.
And sikerly she was of greet desport,

115. El Gg Christophere. 117. Co Pe foster. 120. MSS. seint (see § 115 (d)). 121. $H_4$ e Englentyne. 123. Gg so. 131. Hn $H_4$ *omit* ne; *a* brist. 132. *a* Gg list; Hn *omits* ful, $H_4$ al *for* ful m. 134. $H_4$ *omits* ther.

And ful plesaunt and amyable of port,
And peyned hire to countrefete cheere
Of Court, and to been estatlich of manere,
And to ben holden digne of reuerence.
But, for to speken of hire conscience,
She was so charitable and so pitous
She wolde wepe, if that she sawe a mous
Kaught in a trappe, if it were deed or bledde.
Of smale houndes hadde she that she fedde
With rosted flessh, or milk and wastel breed;
But soore wepte she if oon of hem were deed,
Or if men smoot it with a yerde smerte;
And al was conscience and tendre herte.
Ful semyly hir wympul pynched was;
Hire nose tretys, hir eyen greye as glas,
Hir mouth ful smal and ther-to softe and reed;
But sikerly she hadde a fair forheed,
It was almoost a spanne brood I trowe,
For, hardily, she was nat vndergrowe.
Ful fetys was hir cloke, as I was war;
Of smal coral aboute hir arm she bar
A peire of bedes, gauded al with grene,
And ther-on heng a brooch of gold ful sheene,
On which ther was first write a crowned A,
And after *Amor vincit omnia*.

Another **Nonne** with hir hadde she,
That was hire Chapeleyne, and Preestes thre.

A **Monk** ther was, a fair for the maistrie,
An outridere, that louede venerie;

---

140. Hn $H_4$ *omit* to. 144. El Pe saugh, Gg seye. 147. Gg ϵ or *for* and; $H_4$ and *for* or. 148. El any *for* oon. 152. $H_4$ streight, ϵ was streight *for* tretis. 161. Hn $H_4$ *omit* ther (cf. v. 134); Gg *omits* first; $H_4$ Iwriten. Co Ln writen with.

A manly man, to been an abbot able.
Ful many a deyntee hors hadde he in stable,
And whan he rood men myghte his brydel heere
Gynglen in a whistlynge wynd als cleere,
And eek as loude, as dooth the chapel belle,
Ther as this lord was kepere of the celle.
The reule of seint Maure or of seint Beneit,
By cause that it was old and som-del streit,
This ilke Monk leet (— olde thynges pace),
And heeld after the newe world the space.
He yaf nat of that text a pulled hen
That seith that hunters ben nat hooly men,
Ne that a Monk whan he is recchelees
Is likned til a fissh that is waterlees,
This is to seyn, a Monk out of his cloystre.
But thilke text heeld he nat worth an oystre;
And I seyde his opinion was good.
What sholde he studie and make hymseluen wood
Vpon a book in cloystre alwey to poure,
Or swynken with his handes and laboure,
As Austyn bit? How shal the world be serued?
Lat Austyn haue his swynk to him reserued.
Therfore he was a prikasour aright;
Grehoundes he hadde, as swift as foul in flight;
Of prikyng and of huntyng for the hare
Was al his lust, for no cost wolde he spare.
I seigh his sleues purfiled at the hond
With grys, and that the fyneste of a lond;
And for to festne his hood vnder his chyn

170. ϵ Gynglyng. 172. Hn is *for* was. 175. $H_4$ forby hem *for* olde thinges. 177. ϵ the text. 178. El beth; Hn $H_4$ none *for* nat. 179. $H_4$ cloysterless *for* recchelees. 180. Gg $H_4$ to *for* til. 188. El his owene sw. 190. $H_4$ greyhoundes; α fowel (cf. 9). 191. Gg *omits 2d* of. 193. El Co Pe y-purfiled.

He hadde of gold y-wroght a ful curious pyn,
A loue knotte in the gretter ende ther was.
His heed was balled that shoon as any glas,
And eek his face as he hadde been enoynt.
He was a lord ful fat and in good poynt;
Hise eyen stepe and rollynge in his heed,
That stemed as a forneys of a leed;
His bootes souple, his hors in greet estaat.
Now certeinly he was a fair prelaat:
He was nat pale, as a forpyned goost,
A fat swan loued he best of any roost.
His palfrey was as broun as is a berye.

A **Frere** ther was, a wantowne and a merye,
A lymytour, a ful solempne man, —
In alle the ordres foure is noon that kan
So muche of daliaunce and fair langage.
He hadde maad ful many a mariage
Of yonge wommen at his owene cost.
Vnto his ordre he was a noble post:
Ful wel biloued and famulier was he
With frankeleyns ouer al in his contree,
And with worthy wommen of the toun;
For he hadde power of confessioun,
As seyde hym-self, moore than a curat,
For of his ordre he was licenciat.
Ful swetely herde he confessioun,
And plesaunt was his absolucioun.
He was an esy man to yeue penaunce
Ther as he wiste to haue a good pitaunce;

196. Hn ϵ wroght; $H_4$ *omits* ful. 198. $H_4$ and *for* that. 199. El it *for* he. 207. Hn $H_4$ as any b. 212. $H_4$ I-made. 215. El And *for* Ful. 217. Hn $H_4$ And eek; *perhaps* the *has fallen out after* with. 224. $H_4$ *omits* to.

For vnto a poure ordre for to yiue
Is signe that a man is wel y-shryue.
For if he yaf, he dorste make avaunt,
He wiste that a man was repentaunt:
For many a man so hard is of his herte
He may nat wepe, al thogh hym soore smerte;
Therfore in stede of wepynge and preyeres
Men moot yeuę siluer to the poure freres.
His typet was ay farsed full of knyues
And pynnes, for to yeuen faire wyues.
And certeinly he hadde a murye note,
Wel koude he synge and pleyen on a rote;
Of yeddynges he baar outrely the pris.
His nekke whit was as the flour de lys,
Ther-to he strong was as a champioun.
He knew the tauernes wel in euery toun
And euerich hostiler and tappestere
Bet than a lazar or a beggestere;
For vnto swich a worthy man as he
Acorded nat, as by his facultee,
To haue with sike lazars aqueyntaunce.
It is nat honeste, it may nat avaunce
For to deelen with no swich poraille,
But al with riche and selleres of vitaille;
And ouer al, ther as profit sholde arise,
Curteis he was and lowely of seruyse.
Ther nas no man nowher so vertuous;

225. Co pouer (*which may be right*—vnto a pouer), Gg pore orderys; Hn Gg $H_4$ Pe Ln yeue. 226. Pe $H_4$ I-shreue. 230. $H_4$ *omits* al; Hn Ln he *for* hym. 232. Mss. moote ($H_4$ mooten). 234. El yonge *for* faire. 239. ϵ was strong. 240. El al the *for* euery; $H_4$ wel the t. 241. $H_4$ or gay tap. 242. $H_4$ ϵ beggere. 245. Gg ϵ *insert* swiche *before* sike. 247. $H_4$ ϵ *omit* no. 248. Co Ln seller. 249. Gg *omits* as, $H_4$ any *for* as. 250. $H_4$ lowe *for* lowely. 251. Hn Gg $H_4$ was *for* nas.

He was the beste beggere in his hous,
For thogh a wydwe hadde noght a sho,
So plesaunt was his '*In principio*'
Yet wolde he haue a ferthyng er he wente:
His purchas was wel bettre than his rente.
And rage he koude, as it were right a whelp.
In louedayes ther koude he muchel help,
For there he was nat lyk a cloysterer
With a thredbare cope, as is a poure scoler,
But he was lyk a maister, or a pope.
Of double worstede was his semycope,
That rounded, as a belle, out of the presse.
Somwhat he lipsed for his wantownesse,
To make his Englissh sweete vpon his tonge,
And in his harpyng, whan that he hadde songe,
Hise eyen twynkled in his heed aryght,
As doon the sterres in the frosty nyght.
This worthy lymytour was cleped Huberd.

A **Marchant** was ther with a forked berd,
In mottelee, and hye on horse he sat;
Vpon his heed a Flaundryssh beuere hat,
His bootes clasped faire and fetisly.
Hise resons he spak ful solempnely,
Sownynge alway thencrees of his wynnyng.
He wolde the see were kept for any thing

252. Hn of *for* in; $H_4$ in al. *After* 252 Hn *inserts:*

"And yaf a certeyn ferme for the graunt
Noon of his bretheren cam ther in his haunt."

253. $H_4$ but oo *for* noght a. 257. Co Pe right as it were, $H_4$ and pleyen as *for* as it w. r. 259. α Pe Ln cloystrer. 260. $H_4$ ε *omit* is, Gg *omits* poure. 263. Co on the pr., Ln *omits* of, $H_4$ *omits* the. 264. $H_4$ lipsede *for* w. 270. Pe longe *for* forked. 271. α Gg Motlee, $H_4$ Ln motteleye; $H_4$ *omits* and. 272. Gg bemysch *for* beuere. 273. Gg full f. *for* faire and f. 275. ε Schewyng, $H_4$ swownynge *for* sownynge.

Bitwixe Middelburgh and Orewelle.
Wel koude he in eschaunge sheeldes selle.
This worthy man ful wel his wit bisette;
Ther wiste no wight that he was in dette,
So estatly was he of his gouernaunce
With his bargaynes and with his cheuyssaunce.
For sothe he was a worthy man with alle
But, sooth to seyn, I noot how men hym calle.

A **Clerk** ther was of Oxenford also
That vnto logyk hadde longe y-go.
As leene was his hors as is a rake,
And he nas nat right fat, I vndertake,
But looked holwe, and ther-to sobrely;
Ful thredbare was his ouereste courtepy;
For he hadde geten hym yet no benefice,
Ne was so worldly for to haue office;
For hym was leuere haue at his beddes heed
Twenty bookes clad in blak or reed
Of Aristotle and his philosophie,
Than robes riche, or fithele, or gay sautrie.
But al be that he was a philosophre,
Yet hadde he but litel gold in cofre;
But al that he myghte of his freendes hente
On bookes and on lernynge he it spente,
And busily gan for the soules preye
Of hem that yaf hym wher-with to scoleye:
Of studie took he moost cure and moost heede.

---

280. Gg $H_4$ man *for* wight. 281. $H_4$ *omits* his. 284. ϵ soþly. 288. Hn $H_4$ Pe Ln was. 291. ϵ *omits* yet; $H_4$ hadde nouȝt. 292. $H_4$ Ne was not worþy to hauen an office. 296. $H_4$ *omits* gay. 297. $H_4$ al þough he were. 298. Gg þat *for* yet *and omits* he; Co *inserts* a *after* but. 299. $H_4$ might gete and his fr. sende. 300. El $H_4$ his *for 2d* on; $H_4$ spende. 301. Pe Ln þo s. 303. Gg kep *for* cure; $H_4$ *omits 2d* moost.

Noght o word spak he moore than was neede,
And that was seyd in forme and reuerence,
And short and quyk and ful of hy sentence;
Sownynge in moral vertu was his speche,
And gladly wolde he lerne and gladly teche.

A **Sergeant of the Lawe** war and wys,
That often hadde been at the Parvys,
Ther was also, ful riche of excellence.
Discreet he was and of greet reuerence —
He semed swich, hise wordes weren so wise.
Iustice he was ful often in Assise
By patente and by pleyn commissioun.
For his science and for his heigh renoun,
Of fees and robes hadde he many oon:
So greet a purchasour was nowher noon;
Al was fee symple to hym in effect,
His purchasyng myghte nat been infect.
Nowher so bisy a man as he ther nas,
And yet he semed bisier than he was.
In termes hadde he caas and doomes alle
That from the tyme of kyng William were falle;
Ther-to he koude endite and make a thyng,
Ther koude no wight pynche at his writyng;
And euery statut koude he pleyn by rote.
He rood but hoomly in a medlee cote,
Girt with a ceint of silk with barres smale;
Of his array telle I no lenger tale.

305. $H_4$ Al þat he spak it was of heye prudence; Hn spoke *for* seyd. 306. $H_4$ gret *for* hy. 307. $H_4$ manere *for* vertu. 309. Hn $H_4$ *omit* the. 311. e þat *for* ther. 318. Co neuer *for* nowher. 324. Hn *omits* the; $H_4$ that kyng *for* of k. W.; El yfalle. 326. a pynchen.

A **Frankeleyn** was in his compaignye.
Whit was his berd as is the dayesye,
Of his complexioun he was sangwyn.
Wel louęd he by the morwe a sop in wyn;
To lyuen in delit was euęre his wone,
For he was Epicurus owęne sone,
That heeld opinioun that pleyn delit
Was verraily felicitee parfit.
An housholder, and that a greet, was he:
Seint Iulian he was in his contree;
His breed, his ale, was alweys after oon;
A better enuyned man was nowher noon.
Withoute bake-metę was neuer his hous
Of fissh and flessh, and that so plenteuous
It snewed in his hous of mete and drynke.
Of alle deyntees that men koude thynke
After the sondry sesons of the yeer,
So chaunged he his mete and his soper.
Ful many a fat partrich hadde he in mewe
And many a breem and many a luce in stewe.
Wo was his cook but if his sauce were
Poynaunt and sharpe and redy al his geere.
His table dormant in his halle alway,
Stood redy coueręd al the longe day.
At sessiouns ther was he 'Lord and Sire';
Ful ofte tyme he was knyght of the shire.
An anlaas, and a gipser al of silk,
Heeng at his girdel, whit as morne milk.

---

332. El heed *for* berd *and* a *for* the. 334. $H_4$ in *for* by; $H_4$ sop of w. 335. ϵ euere was; $H_4$ was al. 338. Mss. *except* $H_4$ verray; $H_4$ verraily. 339. $H_4$ ϵ houshalder. 340. El was he. 341. Gg Ln aiwey. 342. α Co Ln neuere *for* nowher (cf. 318). 344. Co Pe $H_4$ fleissh. 349, 350. α muwe, stuwe. 351. ϵ *omits* if. 357. ϵ anelas.

A shirreue hadde he been, and a countour.
Was nowher such a worthy vavasour.

An **Haberdassher**, and a **Carpenter**,
A **Webbe**, a **Dyere**, and a **Tapycer**, —
And they were clothed alle in o lyueree
Of a solempne and a greet fraternitee.
Ful fressh and newe hir geere apiked was;
Hir knyues were chaped noght with bras,
But al with siluer; wroght ful clene and weel
Hir girdles and hir pouches euerydeel.
Wel semed ech of hem a fair burgeys
To sitten in a yeldehalle on a deys.
Euerich for the wisdom that he kan
Was shaply for to been an alderman.
For catel hadde they ynogh and rente,
And eek hir wyues wolde it wel assente,
And elles certeyn were they to blame;
It is ful fair to been y-cleped 'Madame,'
And goon to vigilies al bifore,
And haue a mantel roialliche y-bore.

A **Cook** they hadde with hem for the nones
To boille the chicknes with the marybones,
And poudre-marchant tart, and galyngale;
Wel koude he knowe a draughte of Londoun ale;
He koude rooste and sethe and broille and frye,
Maken mortreux and wel bake a pye.
But greet harm was it, as it thoughte me,

359. *a* Gg *omit 2d* a. 363. $H_4$ weren with vss eeke clothed, etc. 364. *All but* $H_4$ a gret. 371. $H_4$ euery man *for* euerich. 376. *All but a* cleped. 380. $H_4$ *omits 1st* the. 383. El Gg $H_4$ boille; $H_4$ *omits 1st two* and's. 384. Gg mortereus. 385. Gg $H_4$ semede *for* thoughte.

That on his shyne a mormal hadde he;
For blankmanger, that made he with the beste.

A **Shipman** was ther, wonynge fer by weste,
For aught I woot he was of Dertemouthe.
He rood vpon a rouncy as he kouthe,
In a gowne of faldyng to the knee;
A dagger hangynge on a laas hadde he
Aboute his nekke vnder his arm adoun.
The hoote somer hadde maad his hewe al broun;
And certeinly he was a good felawe.
Ful many a draughte of wyn hadde he y-drawe
Fro Burdeuxward whil that the chapman sleep.
Of nyce conscience took he no keep:
If that he faught and hadde the hyer hond,
By water he sente hem hoom to euery lond.
But of his craft to rekene wel his tydes,
His stremes and his daungers hym bisides,
His herberwe and his moone, his lodemenage,
Ther nas noon swich from Hulle to Cartage.
Hardy he was, and wys to vndertake;
With many a tempest hadde his berd been shake;
He knew alle the hauenes, as they were,
From Gootlond to the Cape of Fynystere,
And euery cryke in Britaigne and in Spayne.
His barge y-cleped was the Maudelayne.

With vs ther was a **Doctour of Phisik**,
In all this world ne was ther noon hym lik,

---

387. Gg at the beste; $H_4$ he made *for* that made he. 396. Co he hadde; $H_4$ a ϵ drawe. 397. ϵ *omits* that. 400. Gg Ln by *for* to. 402. ϵ daunger. 404. Hn $H_4$ ϵ (*exc.* Pe) was *for* nas. 407. $H_4$ knew wel. 408. $H_4$ Scotland *for* Gootl.; ϵ Cape de fynystere.

To speke of phisik and of surgerye.
For he was grounded in astronomye,
He kepte his pacient a ful greet deel
In houres by his magyk natureel;
Wel koude he fortunen the ascendent
Of his ymages for his pacient.
He knew the cause of euery maladye,
Were it of hoot, or cold, or moyste, or drye,
And where they engendred and of what humour.
He was a verray parfit praktisour;
The cause y-knowe and of his harm the roote,
Anon he yaf the sike man his boote.
Ful redy hadde he his apothecaries
To sende him drogges and his letuaries,
For ech of hem made oother for to wynne—
Hir frendshipe nas nat newe to bigynne.
Wel knew he the olde Esculapius
And Deyscorides, and eek Rufus,
Olde Ypocras, Haly and Galyen,
Serapion, Razis and Auycen,
Auerrois, Damascien and Constantyn,
Bernard and Gatesden and Gilbertyn.
Of his diete mesurable was he,
For it was of no superfluitee,
But of greet norissyng and digestible.
His studie was but litel on the Bible.
In sangwyn and in pers he clad was al
Lyned with taffata and with sendal;
And yet he was but esy of dispence.
He kepte that he wan in pestilence;

---

419. El eueriche. 420. Gg *omits 1st* of, Co of h. of c., Ln of c. of h., $H_4$ of c. or hete. 421. Hn it *for* they, ϵ *omits* they, Gg engendere. 426. Hn Gg his dr.; $H_4$ dragges.

For gold in phisik is a cordial,
Therfore he louede gold in special.

A **Good wif** was ther **of** biside **Bathe**,
But she was som del deef, and that was scathe.
Of clooth makyng she hadde swich an haunt
She passed hem of Ypres and of Gaunt.
In al the parisshe wif ne was ther noon
That to the offrynge bifore hire sholde goon:
And if ther dide, certeyn so wrooth was she,
That she was out of alle charitee.
Hir couerchiefs ful fyne were of ground,
I dorste swere they weyeden ten pound,
That on a Sonday weren vpon hir heed.
Hir hosen weren of fyn scarlet reed,
Ful streite y-teyd, and shoes ful moyste and newe;
Boold was hir face, and fair, and reed of hewe.
She was a worthy womman al hir lyue;
Housbondes at chirche dore she hadde fyue
Withouten oother compaignye in youthe
(But ther of nedeth nat to speke as nowthe).
And thries hadde she been at Ierusalem;
She hadde passed many a straunge strem:
At Rome she hadde been and at Boloigne,
In Galice at Seint Iame and at Coloigne.
She koude muchel of wandrynge by the weye.
Gat-tothed was she, soothly for to seye.
Vpon an amblere esily she sat,
Y-wympled wel, and on hir heed an hat
As brood as is a bokeler or a targe;

450. Gg ϵ tofore. 451 ϵ *omits* so. 452. $H_4$ þanne out. 453. El $H_4$ weren. 460. $H_4$ ϵ atte (Ln att þe). 467. Gg $H_4$ ϵ meche. 469. Gg $H_4$ ful esily; $H_4$ *omits* she.

A foot mantel aboute hir hipes large,
And on hire feet a paire of spores sharpe.
In felawęship wel koudę she laughe and carpe
Of remedies of loue she knew per chaunce,
For she koude of that art the olde daunce.

A good man was ther of religioun,
And was a Poure **Persoun of a Toun**,
But riche he was of hooly thoght and werk;
He was also a lerned man, a clerk,
That Cristes Gospel trewely woldę preche:
Hisę parisshens deuoutly wolde he teche.
Benygne he was, and wonder diligent,
And in aduersitee ful pacient,
And swich he was y-preued ofte sithes.
Ful looth were hym to cursen for hisę tithes,
But rather wolde he yeuen, out of doute,
Vnto his poure parisshens aboute
Of his offryng and eek of his substaunce;
He koude in litel thyng hauę suffisaunce.
Wyd was his parisshe, and houses fer asonder,
But he ne lafte nat for reyn ne thonder,
In siknessę nor in meschief to visite
The ferreste in his parisshe, muchę and lite,
Vpon his feet and in his hond a staf.
This noble ensample to his sheep he yaf,
That firste he wroghte and afterward he taughte:
Out of the gospel he tho wordes caughte,

476. ϵ colde (Pe *omits*) *for* olde. 480. ϵ and a cl. 481. $H_4$ gladly *for* trewely. 485. MSS *exc.* $H_4$ preued. 489. Gg ϵ *omit* eek. 495. El hand. 497. El Pe afterward that, $H_4$ after þat

And this figure he added eek therto
That "If gold ruste what shal iren doo?"
For if a preest be foul, on whom we truste,
No wonder is a lewed man to ruste;
. . . . . .
. . . . . .
Wel oghte a preest ensample for to yiue
By his clennesse how that his sheep sholde lyue.
He sette nat his benefice to hyre
And leet his sheep encombred in the myre,
And ran to Londoun, vnto Seinte Poules,
To seken hym a chauntrie for soules,
Or with a bretherhed to been withholde,
But dwelte at hoom and kepte wel his folde
So that the wolf ne made it nat myscarie;
He was a shepherde, and noght a mercenarie.
And though he hooly were and vertuous,
He was to synful man nat despitous,
Ne of his speche daungerous ne digne,
But in his techyng discreet and benygne;
To drawen folk to heuene by fairnesse,
By good ensample, this was his bisynesse:
But it were any persone obstinat
What so he were, of heigh or lough estat,
Hym wolde he snybben sharply for the nonys.
A bettre preest I trowe that nowher noon ys;
He waited after no pompe and reuerence,

499. Gg Ln *omit* eek, $H_4$ ȝit. 500. Hn $H_4$ Ln sholde *for* shal. 505. El Gg Pe yeue. 506. Gg Ln *omit* that. 508. Gg ϵ acombred. 509. Co $H_4$ seynte (*perhaps by accident*), *others* seint. 510. $H_4$ ϵ chaunterie. 512. El dwelleth, kepeth. 514. $H_4$ no mercenarie. 519. Hn with f., Gg $H_4$ clennesse *for* fairnesse. 520. $H_4$ *omits* this. 521. Gg But if ȝit; Pe $H_4$ eny, Gg Co ony. 523. $H_4$ ϵ nones. 524. ϵ non es; Hn $H_4$ ther *for* that, Gg trowe neuere non is. 525. Gg $H_4$ ne reu.

Ne maked him a spiced conscience,
But Cristes loore and hise Apostles twelue
He taughte; but first he folwed it hym selue.

With hym ther was a **Plowman**, was his brother,
That hadde y-lad of dong ful many a fother;
A trewe swynkere and a good was he,
Lyuynge in pees and parfit charitee.
God loued he best with al his hoole herte,
At alle tymes thogh him ganed or smerte,
And thanne his neighebour right as hymselue.
He wolde thresshe, and therto dyke and delue,
For Cristes sake, for every poure wight,
Withouten hire, if it laye in his myght.
Hise tithes payede he ful faire and wel,
Bothe of his propre swynk and his catel.
In a tabard he rood vpon a mere.

Ther was also a **Reue** and a **Millere**,
A **Somnour** and a **Pardoner** also,
A **Maunciple** and myself, — ther were namo.
The **Millere** was a stout carl for the nones,
Ful byg he was of brawn and eek of bones;
That proued wel, for ouer al ther he cam,
At wrastlynge he wolde haue alwey the ram.
He was short-sholdred, brood, a thikke knarre,
Ther was no dore that he noolde heue of harre,
Or breke it at a rennyng with his heed.

---

528. $H_4$ and *for* but; ϵ in *for* it. 529. Gg that was, $H_4$ *omits* was. 533. Co Ln *omit* hoole; $H_4$ trewe *for* hoole *and omits* with. 534. El Pe Ln he *for* him. 537. Hn $H_4$ with *for* for. 538. El Co Pe lay. 539. α Ln paide. 544. ϵ nare, $H_4$ was *for* were. 548. $H_4$ ϵ awey; $H_4$ bere *for* haue. 549. ϵ *omits* brood. 550. El Gg nas; El Pe Ln ne wolde, Gg wolde. 551. $H_4$ Ln with *for* at.

His berd as any sowe or fox was reed
And therto brood, as though it were a spade.
Vpon the cop right of his nose he hade
A werte, and theron stood a tuft of herys,
Reed as the brustles of a sowes erys;
His nosethirles blake were and wyde;
A swerd and a bokeler bar he by his syde;
His mouth as greet was as a greet forneys;
He was a Iangler and a goliardeys,—
And that was moost of synne and harlotries.
Wel koude he stelen corn and tollen thries—
And yet he hadde a thombe of gold, pardee!
A whit cote and a blew hood wered he.
A baggepipe wel koude he blowe and sowne,
And therwithal he broghte vs out of towne.

A gentil **Maunciple** was ther of a temple,
Of which achatours myghte take exemple
For to be wise in byynge of vitaille;
For, whether that he payde or took by taille,
Algate he wayted so in his achaat
That he was ay biforn and in good staat.
Now is nat that of God a ful fair grace
That swich a lewed mannes wit shal pace
The wisdom of an heep of lerned men!
Of maistres hadde he mo than thries ten,
That were of lawe expert and curious,
Of whiche ther were a doseyn in that hous
Worthy to been stywardes of rente and lond

555. El In toft. 558. Co *omits 2d* a (*the repetition of the* a *may be a mistake of the original scribe*). 559. $H_4$ wyde *for* greet. 565. Gg e co ne. 570. α wheither, Gg where. 577. α weren. 578. El weren, e was; El duszeyne.

Of any lord that is in Engelond,
To make hym lyue by his propre good
In honour dettelees (but he were wood)
Or lyue as scarsly as hym list desire;
And able for to helpen al a shire
In any caas that myghte falle or happe —
And yet this Manciple sette hir aller cappe.

The **Reue** was a sclendre colerik man.
His berd was shaue as nygh as euer he kan;
His heer was by his erys ful round y-shorn,
His top was dokked lyk a preest biforn;
Ful longe were his legges and ful lene
Ylyk a staf, ther was no calf ysene.
Wel koude he kepe a gerner and a bynne,
Ther was noon auditour koude on him wynne.
Wel wiste he by the droghte and by the reyn
The yeldynge of his seed and of his greyn.
His lordes sheep, his neet, his dayerye,
His swyn, his hors, his stoor, and his pultrye
Was hoolly in this reues gouernyng,
And by his couenant yaf the rekenyng
Syn that his lord was twenty yeer of age.
Ther koude no man brynge hym in arrerage.
There nas baillif, ne hierde, nor oother hyne,
That he ne knew his sleighte and his couyne;
They were adrad of hym as of the deeth.
His wonyng was ful faire vpon an heeth,
With grene trees shadwed was his place.

---

581. El maken. 588. El ny; Hn $H_4$ neigh. 589. $H_4$ Ln *omit* ful. 590. El doked. 593. Gg ϵ couthe; ϵ or *for* and. 594. El of *for* on. 602. $H_4$ ϵ couthe. 603. Hn Gg *omit 1st* ne; Gg Pe $H_4$ ne *for* nor. 604. $H_4$ they *for* he. 607. Gg $H_4$ I-schadewid.

He koude bettre than his lord purchace.
Ful riche he was a-stored pryuely:
His lord wel koude he plesen subtilly
To yeue and lene hym of his owene good
And haue a thank and yet a coote and hood.
In youthe he hadde lerned a good myster,
He was a wel good wrighte, a carpenter.
This reue sat vpon a ful good stot,
That was a pomely grey and highte Scot;
A long surcote of pers vpon he hade,
And by his syde he baar a rusty blade.
Of Northfolk was this Reue of which I telle,
Biside a toun men clepen Baldeswelle.
Tukked he was as is a frere aboute,
And euere he rood the hyndreste of oure route.

A **Somonour** was ther with vs in that place,
That had a fyr reed cherubynnes face,
For sawcefleem he was, with eyen narwe;
As hoot he was and lecherous as a sparwe,
With scaled browes blake and piled berd:
Of his visage children were aferd.
Ther nas quyk-siluer, lytarge, ne brymstoon,
Boras, ceruce, ne oille of Tartre noon,
Ne oynement that wolde clense and byte,
That hym myghte helpen of his whelkes white,
Nor of the knobbes sittynge on his chekes.
Wel loued he garleek, oynons, and eek lekes,

612. El $H_4$ *omit 1st* and; El gowne *for* coote; $H_4$ a cote and eek an *for* yet a c. and. 613. Hn $H_4$ lerned hadde. 616. El Co Pe al *for* a. 617. $H_4$ blew *for* pers; Gg $H_4$ ϵ hadde; Hn haade. 618. $H_4$ bladde. 620. ϵ *insert* it *before* Bald. 623. $H_4$ sompnour. 624. ϵ fyri *for* fyr reed. 627. $H_4$ ϵ scalled. 630. ϵ orsure *for* ceruce. 632. El the *for* his. 633. ϵ in *for* on.

And for to drynken strong wyn reed as blood :
Thanne wolde he speke and crie as he were wood.
And whan that he wel dronken hadde the wyn,
Than wolde he speke no word but Latyn.
A fewe termes hadde he, two or thre,
That he had lerned out of som decree, —
No wonder is, he herde it al the day,
And eek ye knowen well how that a Iay
Kan clepen "Watte" as wel as kan the pope.
But whoso koude in oother thyng hym grope,
Thanne hadde he spent al his philosophie ;
Ay "*Questio, quid juris?*" wolde he crie.
He was a gentil harlot and a kynde ;
A bettre felawe sholde men noght fynde.
He wolde suffre for a quart of wyn
A good felawe to haue his concubyn
A twelf monthe, and excuse hym atte fulle.
Ful priuely a fynch eek couthe he pulle ;)
And if he foond owher a good felawe,
He wolde techen him to haue noon awe
In swich caas of the Ercedekenes curs,
But if a mannes soule were in his purs ;
For in his purs he sholde punysshed be :
'Purs is the Ercedekenes helle,' seyde he.
But wel I woot he lyed right in dede :
Of cursyng oghte ech gilty man him drede,
For curs wol slee right as assoillyng sauith,
And also war him of a *Significavit*.
In daunger hadde he at his owene gise

637, 638. Hn *omits*. 642. ϵ knowen it. 648. $H_4$ nowher *for* noght. 650. $H_4$ *omits* to. 652. El $H_4$ Ln And *for* Ful; ϵ eek a f.; α koude. 655. $H_4$ such a. 657. α ypunysshed. 659. Gg $H_4$ lyeth. 660. α Gg Pe *omit* him; $H_4$ to drede.

The yonge girles of the diocise,
And knew hir conseil, and was al hir reed.
A gerland hadde he set vpon his heed
As greet as it were for an ale-stake;
A bokeleer hadde he maad him of a cake.

With hym ther rood a gentil **Pardoner**
Of Rounciuale, his freend and his compeer,
That streight was comen fro the court of Rome.
Ful loude he soong "*Com hider, loue, to me!*"
This Somonour bar to hym a stif burdoun,
Was never trompe of half so greet a soun.
This Pardoner hadde heer as yelow as wex,
But smothe it heeng as dooth a strike of flex;
By ounces henge hise lokkes that he hadde,
And therwith he his shuldres ouerspradde;
But thynne it lay by colpons oon and oon;
But hood for Iolitee wered he noon,
For it was trussed vp in his walet.
Hym thoughte he rood al of the newe Iet;
Dischevelee, saue his cappe, he rood al bare.
Swiche glarynge eyen hadde he as an hare,
A vernycle hadde he sowed vpon his cappe;
His walet lay biforn hym in his lappe
Bretful of pardoun, comen from Rome al hoot.
A voys he hadde as smal as hath a goot.
No berd hadde he, ne neuer sholde haue,
As smothe it was as it were late shaue;

665. ϵ what was. 669. Gg Ioly *for* gentil. 672. Gg loue come hedir come, Pe come *for* to me, Co $H_4$ tome. 680. $H_4$ ne wered. 686. *All but* $H_4$ *omit* lay (*apparently a correction in* $H_4$. *The omitted word was probably* was; *cp.* $H_4$ *variant to v.* 711.) 688. Gg Co Pe *omit* hath, Pe it were *for* hath, $H_4$ eny *for* hath a. 689. $H_4$ Co Pe ne hadde. 690. Hn $H_4$ yshaue.

I trowe he were a geldyng or a mare.
But of his craft, fro Berwyk into Ware
Ne was ther swich another pardoner;
For in his male he hadde a pilwebeer
Which that he seyde was oure lady veyl;
He seyde he hadde a gobet of the seyl
That Seinte Peter hadde whan that he wente
Vpon the see til Ihesu Crist hym hente.
He hadde a croys of latoun ful of stones,
And in a glas he hadde pigges bones.
But with thise relikes, whan that he fond
A poure person dwellynge vpon lond,
Vpon a day he gat hym moore moneye
Than that the person gat in monthes tweye;
And thus with feyned flaterye and Iapes
He made the person and the peple his apes.
But trewely to tellen atte laste,
He was in chirche a noble ecclesiaste;
Wel koude he rede a lessoun or a storie,
But alderbest he song an offertorie;
For wel he wiste, whan that song was songe,
He moste preche and wel affile his tonge
To wynne siluer, as he ful wel koude;
Therefore he song the murierly and loude.

Now have I toold you soothly in a clause
Thestaat, tharray, the nombre, and eek the cause
Why that assembled was this compaignye
In Southwerk at this gentil hostelrye
That highte the Tabard, faste by the Belle.
But now is tyme to yow for to telle

697. Mss. seynt. 705. ϵ flatering. 711. $H_4$ *omits* wiste.
713. Gg ϵ *omit* ful; $H_4$ right w. 714. ϵ so meriely, $H_4$ ful meriely.
715. El $H_4$ shortly *for* soothly. 718. El as *for* at.

How that we baren vs that ilke nyght,
Whan we were in that hostelrie alyght;
And after wol I telle of our viage
And al the remenaunt of oure pilgrimage.
But first, I pray yow of youre curteisye,
That ye narette it nat my vileynye,
Thogh that I pleynly speke in this mateere
To telle yow hir wordes and hir cheere,
Ne thogh I speke hir wordes proprely;
For this ye knowen al so well as I,
Who so shal telle a tale after a man
He moote reherce as neigh as euere he kan
Euerich a word, if it be in his charge,
Al speke he neuer so rudeliche and large;
Or ellis he moot telle his tale vntrewe,
Or feyne thyng, or fynde wordes newe.
He may nat spare, althogh he were his brother;
He moot as wel seye o word as another.
Crist spak hymself ful brode in hooly writ,
And wel ye woot no vileynye is it;
Eek Plato seith, whoso kan hym rede,
'The wordes moote be cosyn to the dede.'
Also I prey yow to foryeue it me
Al haue I nat set folk in hir degree
Heere in this tale as that they sholde stonde;
My wit is short, ye may wel vnderstonde.

Greet chiere made oure hoost vs euerichon,
And to the soper sette he vs anon;
He serued vs with vitaille at the beste:

---

721. Gg ϵ beren. 726. $H_4$ ϵ ne rette. 732. El ny. 734. El or, $H_4$ ne *for* and. 736. ϵ thinges. 741. $H_4$ þat can. 743. ϵ *omits* to. 746. $H_4$ thynne *for* short. 749. El $H_4$ And serued; ϵ vitailles.

Strong was the wyn and wel to drynke vs leste.
A semely man **Oure Hooste** was with-alle
For to been a marchal in an halle.
A large man he was with eyen stepe,
A fairer burgeys is ther noon in Chepe,
Boold of his speche and wys and well y-taught,
And of manhod hym lakkede right naught.
Eek therto he was right a myrie man,
And after soper pleyen he bigan,
And spak of myrthe amonges othere thynges,
Whan that we hadde maad our rekenynges;
And seyde thus: 'Now, lordynges, trewely
Ye been to me right welcome, hertely;
For by my trouthe, if that I shal nat lye,
I saugh nat this yeer so myrie a compaignye
At ones in this herberwe as is now;
Fayn wolde I doon yow myrthe, wiste I how.
And of a myrthe I am right now bythoght
To doon yow ese, and it shal coste noght.
'Ye goon to Canterbury — God yow speede,
The blisful martir quite yow youre meede!
And, wel I woot, as ye goon by the weye,
Ye shapen yow to talen and to pleye;
For trewely confort ne myrthe is noon
To ride by the weye doumb as a stoon;
And therfore wol I maken yow disport,
As I seyde erst, and doon yow som confort.
And if yow liketh alle by oon assent
For to stonden at my Iuggement

---

750. ϵ *omits* to. 752. $H_4$ to han ben. 754. α was *for* is. 756. Hn ϵ manhode, $H_4$ manhede; α Pe Ln lakked, $H_4$ lakkede he. 757–964. *missing from* Gg; *Ms. Sloane 1685* [*Sl*] *supplies its place in Six-Text.* 764. $H_4$ ne saugh *for* saugh nat. 772. $H_4$ talken *for* talen. 774. El the, Ln any *for* a, Hn *omits*. 778. $H_4$ Now for to.

And for to werken as I shal yow seye,
To-morwe whan ye riden by the weye,
Now by my fader soule that is deed
But ye be myrie, I wol yeue yow myn heed!
Hoold vp youre hondes withouten moore speche.'
Oure conseil was nat longe for to seche;
Vs thoughte it was noght worth to make it wys,
And graunted hym withouten moore auys,
And bad him seye his voirdit as hym leste.
'Lordynges,' quod he, 'now herkneth for the beste,
But taak it nought, I pray yow, in desdeyn.
This is the poynt, to speken short and pleyn,
That ech of yow to shorte with oure weye
In this viage shal telle tales tweye,
To Caunterburyward, I mene it so,
And homward he shal tellen othere two,
Of auentures that whilom han bifalle.
And which of yow that bereth hym beste of alle,
That is to seyn, that telleth in this caas
Tales of best sentence and moost solaas,
Shal haue a soper at oure aller cost
Heere in this place sittynge by this post
Whan that we come agayn fro Caunterbury.
And for to make yow the moore mury
I wol myselue goodly with yow ryde
Right at myn owene cost, and be youre gyde;
And who so wole my Iuggement withseye
Shal paye al that we spenden by the weye.
And if ye vouche-sauf that it be so

781. Sl Now so god saue me at my most nede. 782. $H_4$ smyteþ of *for* I—yow. 783. El $H_4$ Co hond. 785. Sl Pe to wys. 791. Co $H_4$ your w. 801, 802. $H_4$ Caunterbery, mery. 803. *a* my self; $H_4$ gladly *for* goodly.

Tel me anon withouten wordes mo,
And I wol erly shape me therfore.'
This thyng was graunted, and oure othes swore
With ful glad herte, and preyden hym also
That he would vouche-sauf for to do so,
And that he wolde been oure gouernour
And of our tales Iuge and reportour,
And sette a sóper at a certeyn pris,
And we wol reuled been at his deuys
In heigh and lough. And thus by oon assent
We been acorded to his Iuggement.
And thervpon the wyn was fet anon;
We dronken, and to reste wente echon,
Withouten any lenger taryynge.
Amorwe, whan that day began to sprynge,
Vp roos oure Hoost and was oure aller cok,
And gadrede vs togidre alle in a flok.
And forth we riden a litel moore than paas,
Vnto the wateryng of Seint Thomas;
And there oure Hooste gan his hors areste
And seyde, 'Lordynges herkneth if yow leste;
Ye woot youre foreward, and it yow recorde:
If 'euen-song and morwe-song accorde,'
Lat se now who shal telle the firste tale.
As euere mote I drynke wyn or ale,
Whoso be rebel to my Iuggement
Shal paye for al that by the wey is spent!
Now draweth cut, er that we ferrer twynne.
He which that hath the shorteste shal bigynne.

811. Sl ϵ (Ln praieyng) preien. 816. $H_4$ Pe wolde. 818. Sl ϵ the *for* his. 822. Sl ϵ the *for* that; El gan for to, Sl Pe Ln gan to. 824. Hn togydres; Hn Sl Pe Ln *omit* alle. 827. *all but* Pe hoost; α $H_4$ began. 829. $H_4$ ϵ *insert* I *before* it *making an Alexandrine*. 831. $H_4$ ferst a tale. 836. $H_4$ Sl Pe Ln *omit* He.

Sirę Knyght,' quod he, 'my mayster and my lord,
Now draweth cut for that is myn accord.
Cometh neer,' quod he, 'my lady Prioresse,
And ye sirę Clerk lat be your shamefastnesse
Ne studieth noght; ley hond to, euery man.'
Anon to drawen euery wight bigan,
And shortly for to tellen as it was,
Were it by auenture or sort or cas,
The sothe is this, the cut fil to the knyght,
Of which ful blithe and glad was euery wyght,
And telle he moste his tale as was resoun
By foreward and by composicioun
As ye han herd; what nedeth wordes mo?
And whan this goodę-man saugh that it was so,
As he that wys was and obedient
To kepe his foreward by his free assent,
He seyde, 'Syn I shal bigynnę the game,
What welcome be the cut a Goddes name!
Now lat us ryde, and herkneth what I seye.'
And with that word we ryden forth ourę weye;
And he bigan with right a myrie cheere
His tale anon, and seyde as ye may here.

---

839. Sl Pe Ln nere, Co nerre, $H_4$ ner. 846. $H_4$ Pe glad and blipe. 847. ę as it was r. 850. Hn *omits* so. 854. Hn in, Ln one *for* a. 858. El in this manere, $H_4$ right in þis manere *for* as ye.

# KNIGHTES TALE

## HEERE BIGYNNETH THE KNYGHTES TALE

Whilom, as olde stories tellen vs,
Ther was a duc that highte Theseus ;
Of Atheṇes he was lord and gouernour,
And in his tyme swich a conquerour
That gretter was ther noon vnder the sonne ;
Ful many a riche contree hadde he wonne.
What with his wysdom and his chiualrie
He conquered al the regne of Femenye,
That whilom was y-cleped Scithie ;
And weddede the queene Ypolita,
And broghte hir hoom with hym in his contree
With muchel glorie and greet solempnytee,
And eek hir yonge suster Emelye.
And thus with victorie and with melodye
Lete I this noble duc to Atheṇes ryde,
And al his hoost in armes hym bisyde.
And certes, if it nere to long to heere,
I wolde haue told fully the manere
How wonnen was the regne of Femenye
By Theseus and by his chiualrye ;
And of the grete bataille for the nones

---

859. ϵ whilom was. 860. Pe A worlɔi *for* Ther was a. 863. ϵ *omits* ther. 865. El $H_4$ That *for* What. 868. α Pe Ln wedded. 869. Pe Ln to *for* in. 870. *All but* α muche. 871. El faire. 876. El wolde yow haue, *etc.* (cp. B 4489 *where* El *inserts* yow), $H_4$ told yow fully, *etc.*

Bitwixen Atthenes and Amazones;
And how asseged was Ypolita,
The faire, hardy queene of Scithia,
And of the feste that was at hir weddynge,
And of the tempest at hir hoom-comynge.
But al that thyng I moot as now forbere;
I haue, God woot, a large feeld to ere,
And wayke been the oxen in my plough;
The remenant of the tale is long ynough,
I wol nat letten eek noon of this route.
Lat every felawe telle his tale aboute,
And lat se now who shal the soper wynne;
And ther I lefte I wol ayeyn bigynne.

This duc of whom I make mencioun
Whan he was comen almost to the toun,
In al his wele and in his mooste pride,
He was war, as he caste his eye aside,
Where that ther kneled in the heighe weye
A compaignye of ladyes, tweye and tweye
Ech after oother, clad in clothes blake;
But swich a cry and swich a wo they make
That in this world nys creature lyuynge
That herde swich another waymentynge.
And of this cry they nolde neuere stenten,
Til they the reynes of his brydel henten.

'What folk been ye, that at myn hom-comynge
Perturben so my feste with criynge?'
Quod Theseus, 'Haue ye so greet enuye
Of myn honour that thus compleyne and crye?
Or who hath yow mysboden or offended?
And telleth me if it may been amended,

889. $H_4$ lette *and* al þis r. 894. a come; El $H_4$ vnto. 895. e *omits 2d* in. 897. El *omits* heighe. 903. $H_4$ that c. ne wolde þey s.

And why that ye been clothed thus in blak?'
The eldeste lady of hem alle spak
Whan she hadde swowned with a deedly cheere,
That it was routhe for to seen and heere.
She seyde, 'Lord, to whom fortune hath yiuen
Victorie and as a conqueror to lyuen,
Nat greueth vs youre glorie and youre honour,
But we biseken mercy and socour.
Haue mercy on oure wo and oure distresse,
Som drope of pitee thurgh thy gentillesse
Vpon vs wrecched wommen lat thou falle.
For certes, lord, ther is noon of vs alle
That she ne hath been a duchesse or a queene;
Now be we caytyues as it is wel seene,
Thanked be Fortune and hir false wheel
That noon estat assureth to be weel.
And certes, lord, to abyden youre presence,
Heere in this temple of the goddesse Clemence
We haue ben waitynge al this fourtenyght;
Now help vs, lord, sith it is in thy myght.
I wrecche, which that wepe and waille thus,
Was whilom wyf to kyng Cappaneus,
That starf at Thebes; cursed be that day!
And alle we that been in this array
And maken al this lamentacioun,
We losten alle oure housbondes at that toun,
Whil that the seege ther aboute lay.
And yet now the olde Creon, weylaway!

---

911. $H_4$ clad þus al in bl. 915. El $H_4$ And seyde; El Pe $H_4$ yeuen. 917. $H_4$ *omits 2d* youre. 920. $H_4$ youre g. 921. Sl yow, Pe nowe, Co Ln ȝe *for* thou. 926. ϵ ensureth. 928. El $H_4$ the tem. 929. El $H_4$ Pe han. 930. ϵ *omits* Now. 931. El crie *for* waille. 932. Sl Co Ln of *for* to. 933. Hn the day. 936. $H_4$ we leften, the toun. 937. ϵ assege.

That lord is now of Thebes the citee,
Fulfild of ire and of iniquitee,
He, for despit and for his tirannye,
To do the dede bodyes vileynye
Of alle oure lordes whiche that been slawe,
Hath alle the bodyes on an heep ydrawe,
And wol nat suffren hem, by noon assent,
Neither to been yburyed nor ybrent,
But maketh houndes ete hem in despit.'
And with that word withouten moore respit
They fillen gruf and criden pitously,
'Haue on vs wrecched wommen som mercy,
And lat oure sorwe synken in thyn herte.'
This gentil duc doun from his courser sterte
With herte pitous, whan he herde hem speke.
Hym thoughte that his herte wolde breke
Whan he saugh hem, so pitous and so maat,
That whilom weren of so greet estaat;
And in his armes he hem alle vp hente,
And hem conforteth in ful good entente,
And swoor his ooth, as he was trewe knyght
He wolde doon so ferforthly his myght
Vpon the tiraunt Creon hem to wreke,
That al the peple of Grece sholde speke
How Creon was of Theseus yserued
As he that hadde his deeth ful wel deserued.
And right anoon withouten moore abood
His baner he desplayeth and forth rood
To Thebesward, and al his hoost biside.
No neer Atthenes wolde he go ne ride,

943. $H_4$ I-slawe. 944. El He hath. 955. Sl Co Ln pite.
965. Gg *begins again.* Sl *extract ends with 964.* 966. ϵ displaied.
968. Gg ϵ $H_4$ ner (Co Ln nerre).

Ne take his ese fully half a day,
But onward on his wey that nyght he lay.
And sente anon Ypolita the queene,
And Emelye, hir yonge suster sheene,
Vnto the toun of Atthenes to dwelle,
And forth he rit; ther is namoore to telle.
The rede statue of Mars with spere and targe
So shyneth in his white baner large,
That alle the feeldes glyteren vp and doun;
And by his baner born is his penoun
Of gold ful riche, in which ther was y-bete
The Mynotaur which that he slough in Crete.
Thus rit this duc, thus rit this conquerour,
And in his hoost of chiualrie the flour,
Til that he cam to Thebes, and alighte
Faire in a feeld ther as he thoughte to fighte.
But shortly for to speken of this thyng,
With Creon, which that was of Thebes kyng,
He faught, and slough hym manly as a knyght
In pleyn bataille, and putte the folk to flyght;
And by assaut he wan the citee after,
And rente adoun bothe wall and sparre and rafter;
And to the ladyes he restored agayn
The bones of hir freendes that were slayn
To doon obsequies as was tho the gyse.
But it were al to longe for to deuyse
The grete clamour and the waymentynge
That the ladyes made at the brennynge
Of the bodies, and the grete honour

974. Hn Co nys. 977. Co Ln feelde. 978. Gg is born, Hn born was, $H_4$ was b. 980. Hn ϵ wan *for* slough. 983. Gg Co Pe come. 984. α *omits* to. 989. Gg ϵ assent (? asseut) *for* assaut. 992. El $H_4$ housbondes *for* freendes; El weren. 993. $H_4$ exequies.

That Theseus, the noble conquerour,
Dooth to the ladyes whan they from hym wente;
But shortly for to telle is myn entente.
Whan that this worthy duc, this Theseus,
Hath Creon slayn and wonne Thebes thus,
Stille in that feeld he took al nyght his reste,
And dide with al the contree as hym leste.
To ransake in the taas of bodyes dede,
Hem for to strepe of harneys and of wede,
The pilours diden bisynesse and cure
After the bataille and disconfiture.
And so bifel that in the taas they founde,
Thurgh-girt with many a greuous blody wounde,
Two yonge knyghtes liggynge by and by,
Bothe in oon armes wroght ful richely,
Of whiche two Arcita hightę that oon,
And that oother knyght highte Palamon.
Nat fully quykę, ne fully dedę they were,
But by herę cote-armures and by hir gere
The heraudes knewe hem best in special
As they that weren of the blood roial
Of Thebes, and of sustren two yborn.
Out of the taas the pilours han hem torn,
And han hem caried softe vnto the tente
Of Theseus; and he ful soone hem sente
To Atthenes to dwellen in prisoun
Perpetuelly, he nolde no raunsoun.
And whan this worthy duc hath thus ydon,
He took his hoost and hoom he ryt anon,

999. ϵ bodyes *for* ladyes. 1005, 1009. $H_4$ ϵ cas *for* taas; El ϵ the b. 1008. Pe Ln the d. 1012. ϵ armes same *for* oon a. 1016. Gg $H_4$ armure. 1017. ϵ self, $H_4$ wel *for* best. 1020. ϵ caas, $H_4$ chaas. 1022. El $H_4$ ful s. he hem. 1024. ϵ hem nolde he (Ln *omits* he) not r. 1025. $H_4$ And þis d. whan he hadde thus. 1026. El rood.

With laurer crowned as a conquerour;
And ther he lyueth in Ioye and in honour
Terme of his lyf; what nedeth wordes mo?
And in a tour in angwissh and in wo
This Palamon and his felawe Arcite
For euermoore; ther may no gold hem quite.
This passeth yeer by yeer and day by day,
Til it fil ones in a morwe of May,
That Emelyę, that fairer was to sene
Than is the lylie vpon his stalke grene,
And fressher than the May with floures newe, —
For with the rose colour stroof hir hewe,
I noot which was the fairer of hem two, —
Er it were day, as was hir wone to do,
She was arisen and al redy dight;
For May wolę haue no slogardie a nyght.
The sesoun priketh euery gentil herte
And maketh it out of his slep to sterte,
And seith, 'Arys and do thyn obseruaunce.'
This maketh Emelye haue remembraunce
To doon honour to May, and for to ryse.
Yclothed was she fressh, for to deuyse:
Hir yelow heer was broyded in a tresse
Bihynde hir bak, a yerde long, I gesse.
And in the gardyn at the sonne vp-riste
She walketh vp and doun, and as hir liste
She gadęreth floures, party white and rede,
To make a subtil gerland for hir hede,
And as an aungel heuęnysshly she soong.

---

1029. El Gg *omit* his; El lyue; $H_4$ wolle ȝe *for* nedeth. 1031. Hn ϵ Dwellen this Palamon and eek Arcite. 1039. El Gg $H_4$ fyner. 1040. $H_4$ as sche was wont. 1042. El slogardrie. 1044. El $H_4$ hym *for* it. 1045. ϵ don May. 1046. El $H_4$ maked. 1052. $H_4$ wher *for 2d* and. 1055. $H_4$ Pe heuenly.

The grete tour, that was so thikke and stroong,
Which of the castel was the chief dongeoun
(Ther as the knyghtes weren in prisoun,
Of whiche I tolde yow and tellen shal),
Was euene Ioynant to the gardyn wal
Ther as this Emelye hadde hir pleyynge.
Bright was the sonne and cleer in that mornynge,
And Palamon, this woful prisoner,
As was his wone bi leue of his gayler,
Was risen and romed in a chambre on heigh,
In which he al the noble citee seigh,
And eek the gardyn, ful of braunches grene,
Ther as this fresshe Emelye the sheene
Was in hire walk and romed vp and doun.
This sorweful prisoner, this Palamoun,
Goth in the chambre romynge to and fro,
And to hymself compleynynge of his wo
That he was born; ful ofte he seyde, 'Allas!'
And so bifel, by auenture or cas,
That thurgh a wyndow, thikke of many a barre
Of iren greet and square as any sparre,
He cast his eye vpon Emelya,
And therwithal he bleynte and cride, 'A!'
As though he stongen were vnto the herte.
And with that cry Arcite anon vp sterte
And seyde, 'Cosyn myn, what eyleth thee,
That art so pale and deedly on to see?
Why cridestow? who hath thee doon offence?
For Goddes loue, taak al in pacience
Oure prisoun, for it may noon oother be;

---

1062. El $H_4$ *omit* in; El Gg $H_4$ morwenynge. 1063. El this Pal. 1066. Gg *omits* noble. 1070. Gg louere *for* prisoner. 1073. Gg I *for 1st* he; ϵ *omits 2d* he. 1077. $H_4$ ϵ eyen. 1083. Gg cryestow.

Fortune hath yeuẹn vs this aduersitee.
Som wikke aspect or disposicioun
Of Saturnẹ, by sum constellacioun,
Hath yeuen vs this, although we hadde it sworn;
So stood the heuenẹ whan that we werẹ born,
We moste endure it, this is the short and playn.'
This Palamon answerde and seyde agayn,
'Cosyn, for sothe of this opinioun
Thow hast a veyn ymaginacioun;
This prison caused me nat for to crye,
But I was hurt right now thurghout myn ye
Into myn herte, that wol my bane be.
The fairnesse of that lady that I see
Yond in the gardyn romen to and fro,
Is cause of al my criyng and my wo.
I noot wher she be womman or goddesse,
But Venus is it, soothly, as I gesse.'
And therwithal on knees doun he fil
And seyde: 'Venus, if it be thy wil
Yow in this gardyn thus to transfigure
Biforẹ me, sorwẹful, wrecche creature,
Out of this prisoun help that we may scape.
And if so be my destynee be shape
By ẹterne word to dyen in prisoun,
Of ourẹ lynage hauẹ som compassioun
That is so lowe ybroght by tirannye.'
And with that word Arcite gan espye
Wher as this lady romed to and fro;
And with that sighte hir beautee hurte hym so,

---

1087. Hn Gg Ln wikked. 1091. El *omits* it. 1095. Hn ε *omit* for. 1096. El Ln eye. 1099. Pe Ln romyng. 1106. $H_4$ ε wrecched. 1107. Co Pe mowe. 1107, 1108. El scapen, shapen. 1108. $H_4$ Co oure d.

That, if that Palamon was wounded sore,
Arcite is hurt as moche as he, or moore.
And with a syk he seyde pitously:
'The fresshe beautee sleeth me sodeynly
Of hir that rometh in the yonder place,
And but I haue hir mercy and hir grace
That I may seen hir atte leeste weye,
I nam but deed; ther nys namoore to seye.'
This Palamon whan he tho wordes herde,
Dispitously he looked and answerde,
'Wheither seistow this in ernest or in pley?'
'Nay,' quod Arcite, 'in ernest, by my fey!
God help me so, me list ful yuele pleye.'
This Palamon gan knytte his browes tweye.
'It were to thee,' quod he, 'no greet honour,
For to be fals ne for to be traitour
To me, that am thy cosyn and thy brother
Y-sworn ful depe and ech of vs til oother,
That neuere, for to dyen in the peyne,
Til that the deeth departe shal vs tweyne,
Neither of vs in loue to hyndre oother,
Ne in noon oother cas, my leeue brother;
But that thou sholdest trewely forthren me
In euery cas, and I shal forthren thee —
This was thyn ooth and myn also certeyn,
I woot right wel, thou darst it nat withseyn.
Thus artow of my conseil out of doute;
And now thow woldest falsly been aboute

---

1117. El $H_4$ Pe sigh. 1119. $H_4$ yonder in the. 1123. ϵ þis wordes. 1125. Wheither *is better written in v. 1101.* 1126. $H_4$ in good fey. 1129. El $H_4$ It nere quod he to thee. 1134. El $H_4$ *omit* the, Ln til deþe haþe d. 1137. ϵ forþer more (? forther me *misread as* forthermo). 1138. El as *for* and; ϵ forþre þe þore (*for the sake of rhyme*). 1139. Hn as *for* and.

To loue my lady whom I loue and serue,
And euere shal til that myn herte sterue.
Now certes, false Arcite, thow shalt nat so;
I loued hir first, and tolde thee my wo
As to my conseil and my brother sworn
To forthre me, as I haue toold biforn.
For which thou art ybounden as a knyght
To helpen me, if it lay in thy myght;
Or elles artow fals, I dar wel seyn.'
This Arcite ful proudly spak ageyn;
'Thow shalt,' quod he, 'be rather fals than I;
But thou art fals, I telle thee vttirly,
For *par amour* I loued hir first er thow.
What wiltow seyn? thou wistest nat yet now
Wheither she be a womman or goddesse!
Thyn is affecciouN of hoolynesse,
And myn is loue as to a creature;
For which I tolde thee myn auenture
As to my cosyn and my brother sworn.
I pose that thow louedest hir biforn,
Wostow nat wel the olde clerkes sawe,
That '*Who shal yeue a louere any lawe?*
*Loue is a gretter lawe, by my pan,*
*Than may be yeue to any erthely man?*'
And therfore positif lawe and swich decree
Is broke al day for loue in ech degree.
A man moot nedes loue, maugree his heed;
He may nat fleen it, thogh he sholde be deed,
Al be she mayde, or wydwe, or elles wyf.

---

1147. El Gg to my b., $H_4$ to b. *for* my b. (*But* conseil *may be a mistake for* cosyn, *cp. 1131, 1161.*) 1154. α And thou; ε witterly, α outrely. 1156. Hn $H_4$ wost; $H_4$ ε it not. 1161. ε to my b. 1166. El of *for* to. 1171. $H_4$ or be sche widwe or wyf.

And eek it is nat likly al thy lyf,
To stonden in hir grace, namoore shal I;
For wel thou woost thyseluen verraily
That thou and I ben dampned to prisoun
Perpetuelly; vs gayneth no raunsoun.
We stryue as dide the houndes for the boon,
They foughte al day and yet hir part was noon;
Ther cam a kyte, whil that they were so wrothe,
And baar awey the boon bitwixe hem bothe.
And therfore at the kynges court, my brother,
Ech man for hymself, ther is noon oother.
Loue if thee list, for I loue and ay shal,
And soothly, leeue brother, this is al.
Heere in this prisoun moote we endure
And euerich of vs take his auenture.'
Greet was the strif, and long, bitwix hem tweye,
If that I hadde leyser for to seye;
But to theffect. It happed on a day,
To telle it yow as shortly as I may,
A worthy duc, that hightę Perotheus,
That felawę was vnto duc Theseus
Syn thilke day that they were children lite,
Was come to Atthenes his felawę to visite,
And for to pleye as he was wont to do;
For in this world he loued no man so,
And he louęd hym as tendrely agayn.
So wel they louęde, as olde bookes sayn,
That whan that oon was deed, soothly to telle,
His felawę wente and soughte hym doun in helle —
But of that storie list me nat to write.

1177. Co now as; ϵ *omit* dide the, $H_4$ doth the. 1179. ϵ $H_4$ com; El *omits* that, Gg *omits* so. 1189. ϵ this eff. 1192. El to, $H_4$ to þe *for* vnto. 1195. El Gg won.

Duc Perotheus loued wel Arcite
And hadde hym knowe at Thebes yeer by yere.
And finally, at requeste and preyere
Of Perotheus, withouten any raunsoun
Duc Theseus hym leet out of prisoun
Frely to goon wher that hym liste oueral,
In swich a gyse as I you tellen shal.
This was the forward, pleynly for tendite,
Bitwixen Theseus and hym Arcite:
That if so were that Arcite were founde
Euere in his lif, by day or nyght or stounde,
In any contree of this Theseus,
And he were caught, it was acorded thus,
That with a swerd he sholde lese his heed.
Ther nas noon oother remedie ne reed;
But taketh his leue and homward he him spedde —
Lat hym be war, his nekke lith to wedde.
How greet a sorwe suffreth now Arcite!
The deeth he feeleth thurgh his herte smyte;
He wepeth, wayleth, crieth pitously;
To sleen hymself he waiteth priuely.
He seyde, 'Allas that day that I was born!
Now is my prisoun worse than biforn;
Now is me shape eternally to dwelle
Nat in purgatorie but in helle.
Allas that euere knew I Perotheus!
For elles hadde I dwelled with Theseus
Y-fetered in his prisoun euermo.
Thanne hadde I been in blisse, and nat in wo;

1209. $H_4$ Ln to *for* forto. 1211. α yfounde. 1217. $H_4$ took. 1221. Pe he w. and w. and c., Ln he w. he w. and c. 1223. El he *for* I; $H_2$ the d.; Ln *omits* that day. 1226. El my purg. 1227. ε euer I knew.

Oonly the sighte of hir whom that I serue,
Though that I neuer hir grace may deserue,
Wolde han suffised right ynough for me.
O deere cosyn Palamon,' quod he,
'Thyn is the victorie of this auenture!
Ful blisfully in prison maistow dure,—
In prisoun? certes nay, but in Paradys!
Wel hath Fortune y-turned thee the dys,
That hast the sighte of hir and I thabsence.
For possible is, syn thou hast hir presence
And art a knyght a worthy and an able,
That by som cas, syn Fortune is chaungeable,
Thow maist to thy desir som tyme atteyne.
But I that am exiled and bareyne
Of alle grace and in so greet dispeir
That ther nys erthe, water, fir, ne eir,
Ne creature that of hem maked is,
That may me helpe or doon confort in this—
Wel oughte I sterue in wanhope and distresse;
Farwel my lif, my lust and my gladnesse!
'Allas, why pleynen men so in commune
Of purueiaunce of God, or of Fortune,
That yeueth hem ful ofte in many a gyse
Wel bettre than they kan hem self deuyse?
Som man desireth for to han richesse,
That cause is of his mordre, or greet siknesse;
And som man wolde out of his prisoun fayn,
That in his hous is of his meynee slayn.
Infinite harmes been in this mateere,

1236. ϵ might þou d.; $H_4$ to endure. 1237. Hn nay c., Gg nay parde; ϵ *omits 2d* in. 1238. ϵ torned. 1242. El *omits* by. 1248. El heele *for* helpe. 1250. *omitted in* Ln.; $H_4$ my l. and al my Iolynesse. 1251. α $H_4$ folk *for* men. 1254. ϵ bet. 1256. Hn ofte of; α moerdre.

We woot nat what thing that we preyen heere.
We faren as he that dronke is as a mous.
A dronke man woot wel he hath an hous,
But he noot which the righte wey is thider,
And to a dronke man the wey is slider;
And certes in this world so faren we:
We seken faste after felicitee,
But we goon wrong ful often trewely.
Thus may we seyen alle, and namely I,
That wende and hadde a greet opinioun
That if I myghte scapen from prisoun,
Thanne hadde I been in Ioye and perfit heele,
Ther now I am exiled fro my wele.
Syn that I may nat seen you, Emelye,
I nam but deed, there nys no remedye.'

Vpon that oother syde Palamon,
Whan that he wiste Arcitę was agon,
Swich sorwę he maketh that the grete tour
Resouneth of his youlyng and clamour;
The pure fettres of his shynes grete
Weren of his bittre, salte teeres wete.
'Allas!' quod he, 'Arcita, cosyn myn,
Of al ourę strif God woot the fruyt is thyn;
Thow walkest now in Thebes at thy large,
And of my wo thow yeuest litel charge.
Thou mayst, syn thou hast wysdom and manhede,
Assemblen al the folk of ourę kynrede,
And make a werre so sharp on this citee,
That by som auenture or som tretee

---

1260. El witen nat what we, *etc.*, $H_4$ wote neuere wh. þing we, *etc.*
1262. wel that. 1268. a Gg ϵ seyn. 1270. El escapen.
1272. El that *for* ther. 1274. ϵ am; Gg non other weye *for* no rem.
1276. $H_4$ ϵ þat A. 1278. El resouned. 1279. El Ln on *for* of.

Thow mayst haue hir to lady and to wyf
For whom that I moste nedes lese my lyf.
For as by wey of possibilitee,
Sith thou art at thy large, of prisoun free,
And art a lord, greet is thyn auauntage,
Moore than is myn that sterue here in a cage.
For I moot wepe and wayle while I lyue
With al the wo that prison may me yiue,
And eek with peyne that loue me yeueth also,
That doubleth al my torment and my wo.'
Therwith the fyr of Ialousie vpsterte
Withinne his brest and hente him by the herte
So woodly that he lyk was to biholde
The boxtree, or the asshen, dede and colde.
Thanne seyde he, 'O crewel goddes that gouerne
This world with byndyng of youre word eterne,
And writen in the table of atthamaunt
Youre parlement and youre eterne graunt,
What is mankynde moore vnto you holde
Than is the sheep that rouketh in the folde?
For slayn is man right as another beest,
And dwelleth eek in prison and arreest,
And hath siknesse and greet aduersitee,
And ofte tymes giltelees, *pardee.*
'What gouernance is in this prescience,
That giltelees tormenteth innocence?
And yet encreseth this al my penaunce,
That man is bounden to his obseruaunce
For Goddes sake to letten of his wille
Ther as a beest may al his lust fulfille;

1289. hire wynne *for* haue h. 1295. ϵ whil þat; Co Ln leue.
1296. $H_4$ Co ȝyue, *others* yeue. 1306. Gg Thorw par. 1312.
1314. α Pe Ln giltless.

And whan a beest is deed he hath no peyne,
But man after his deeth moot wepe and pleyne,
Though in this world he haue care and wo —
Withouten doutë it may stonden so.
The answere of this I lete to dyuynys,
But well I woot that in this world greet pyne ys.
Allas! I se a serpent or a theef,
That many a trewe man hath doon mescheef,
Goon at his large, and where hym list may turne;
But I moot been in prisoun thurgh Saturne,
And eek thurgh Iuno, Ialous and eek wood,
That hath destroyed wel ny al the blood
Of Thebes, with his waste walles wyde;
And Venus sleeth me on that oother syde
For Ialousie and fere of hym Arcite.'
Now wol I stynte of Palamon a lite
And lete hym in his prisoun stille dwelle,
And of Arcita forth I wol yow telle.
The sommer passeth, and the nyghtes longe
Encresen double wise the peynes stronge
Bothe of the louere and the prisoner.
I noot which hath the wofuller myster;
For shortly for to seyn this Palamoun
Perpetuelly is dampned to prisoun
In cheynes and in fettres to been deed,
And Arcite is exiled vpon his heed
For euermo, as out of that contree,
Ne neuermo ne shal his lady see.

1319. Hn it *for* he. 1320. El ϵ man *follows* deeth. 1322. Hn moot. 1335. $H_4$ stille in his pr. 1337. El sonne *for* somer; Hn *omits* passeth. 1338. ϵ encreseth. 1340. Hn sorwefuller *for* wof.; $H_4$ w. cheer. 1341. Hn soothly; Co of Pal., Pe of þis Pal. 1343. ϵ to be ded. 1346. El he shal, Gg shal, Co he ne schal, $H_4$ schal he *for* ne shal.

Yow loueres axe I now this questioun,
Who hath the worse, Arcite or Palamoun?
That oon may seen his lady day by day,
But in prison he moot dwelle alway;
That oother wher hym list may ride or go,
But seen his lady shal he neuer mo.
Now demeth as yow liste, ye that kan,
For I wol telle forth as I bigan.

**Explicit prima pars.**

## PART II.

**Sequitur pars secunda.**

Whan that Arcite to Thebes comen was,
Ful ofte a day he swelte and seyde, 'Allas!'
For seen his lady shal he neueremo.
And shortly to concluden al his wo,
So muche sorwe hadde neuere creature
That is, or shal, whil that the world may dure.
His slep, his mete, his drynke, is hym biraft,
That lene he weex and drye as is a shaft:
His eyen holwe and grisly to biholde,
His hewe falwe, and pale asshen colde,
And solitarie he was and euere allone,
And waillynge al the nyght makynge his mone:
And if he herde song or instrument
Thanne wolde he wepe, he myghte nat be stent.
So feble eek were his spiritz and so lowe,
And chaunged so that no man koude knowe
His speche nor his voys, though men it herde:

---

1350. Hn ε moot he. 1353. α Co Pe list. 1362. El Pe wexeth
1364. α falow. 1369. ε he *for 2d* so.

And in his geere for al the world he ferde,
Nat oonly lik the loueris maladye
Of Hereos, but rather lyk Manye
Engendred of humour malencolik
Biforen in his celle fantastik ;
And shortly turned was al vpsodoun
Bothe habit and eek disposicioun
Of hym, this woful louere daun Arcite.
What sholde I al day of his wo endite?
Whan he endured hadde a yeer or two
This crueel torment and this peyne and woo,
At Thebes, in his contree, as I seyde,
Vpon a nyght in sleep as he hym leyde,
Hym thoughte how that the wynged god Mercurie
Biforn hym stood and bad hym to be murie.
His slepy yerde in hond he bar vprighte,
An hat he werede vpon his heris brighte.
Arrayed was this god, as he took keep,
As he was whan that Argus took his sleep.
And seyde hym thus, 'To Atthenes shaltou wende,
Ther is thee shapen of thy wo an ende.'
And with that word Arcite wook and sterte.
'Now trewely, how soore that me smerte,'
Quod he, 'to Atthenes right now wol I fare,
Ne for the drede of deeth shal I nat spare
To se my lady that I loue and serue ;
In hir presence I recche nat to sterue.'
And with that word he caughte a greet mirour,
And saugh that chaunged was al his colour,

---

1373. ϵ comly *for* oonly *and* to *for* the. 1374. ϵ heres; $H_4$ hercos. 1376. *All but* $H_4$ *omit* in (*due to* n *in* biforen?); α Gg his owene selle. 1377. ϵ vp and d. 1378. ϵ *omit* eek. 1388. El vp hise *for* vpon his.

And saugh his visage al in another kynde.
And right anon it ran hym in his mynde,
That sith his face was so disfigured
Of maladye the which he hadde endured,
He myghte wel, if that he bar hym lowe,
Lyue in Atthenes euerẹmore vnknowe,
And seen his lady wel ny day by day.
And right anon he chaunged his array
And cladde hym as a poure laborer,
And al allone, saue oonly a squier
That knew his priuetee and al his cas,
Which was disgised pourẹly as he was,
To Atthenẹs is he goon the nexte way.
And to the court he wente vpon a day,
And at the gate he profreth his seruyse
To drugge and drawe what so men wol deuyse.
And shortly of this materẹ for to seyn,
He fil in office with a chamberleyn
The which that dwellyngẹ was with Emelye;
For he was wys and koude soone espye
Of euery seruaunt which that serueth here.
Wel koude he hewen wode, and water bere,
For he was yong and myghty for the nones,
And therto he was long and big of bones
To doon that any wight kan hym deuyse.
A yeer or two he was in this seruyse,
Page of the chambre of Emelyẹ the brighte,
And Philostrate he seyde that he highte,
But half so wel biloued a man as he
Ne was ther neuerẹ in court of his degree;

1416. Gg drogge; Gg wolde d. 1417. $H_4$ on this m. 1419. ϵ was dwellyng. 1420. ϵ sone coupe. 1421. $H_4$ serued. 1424. Hn ϵ strong *for* long. 1425. Hn what any; ϵ him can.

He was so gentil of condicioun
That thurghout al the court was his renoun.
They seyden that it were a charitee
That Theseus wolde enhauncen his degree,
And putten hym in worshipful seruyse,
Ther as he myghte his vertu exercise.
And thus withinne a while his name is spronge,
Bothe of hise dedes and his goode tonge,
That Theseus hath taken hym so neer,
That of his chambre he made hym a squier,
And yaf him gold to mayntene his degree.
And eek men broghte hym out of his contree
From yeer to yeer, ful pryuely, his rente;
But honestly and slyly he it spente,
That no man wondred how that he it hadde.
And thre yeer in this wise his lif he ladde,
And bar hym so in pees, and eek in werre,
Ther was no man that Theseus hath derre.
And in this blisse lete I now Arcite
And speke I wole of Palamon a lite.
In derknesse and horrible and strong prison
This seuen yeer hath seten Palamon
Forpyned what for wo and for distresse.
Who feeleth double soor and heuynesse
But Palamon, that loue destreyneth so
That wood out of his wit he goth for wo?
And eek ther-to he is a prisoner
Perpetuelly, noght only for a yer.
Who koude ryme in Englyssh proprely
His martirdom? for sothe it am nat I;
Therfore I passe as lightly as I may.

1431. El $H_4$ of his c. 1436. Gg Co Ther that. 1454. El *omits* and; Gg $H_4$ sorwe *for* soor. 1455. Co drencheþ so.

It fel that in the seuenthe yer, in May,
The thridde nyght (as olde bookes seyn,
That al this storie tellen moore pleyn)
Were it by auenture or destynee —
As whan a thyng is shapen it shal be, —
That soone after the mydnyght Palamoun
By helpyng of a freend brak his prisoun,
And fleeth the citee faste as he may go;
For he hadde yeue his gayler drynke so
Of a claree maad of a certeyn wyn,
With nercotikes and opie of Thebes fyn,
That al that nyght, thogh that men wolde him shake,
The gayler sleep, he myghte nat awake;
And thus he fleeth as faste as euere he may.
The nyght was short and faste by the day,
That nedes cost he moot hymseluen hyde;
And til a groue faste ther bisyde
With dredeful foot thanne stalketh Palamoun.
For, shortly, this was his opinioun,
That in that groue he wolde hym hyde al day,
And in the nyght thanne wolde he take his way
To Thebes-ward, his freendes for to preye
On Theseus to helpe him to werreye;
And, shortly, outher he wolde lese his lif,
Or wynnen Emelye vnto his wyf.
This is theffect and his entente pleyn.

Now wol I turne vnto Arcite ageyn,
That litel wiste how ny that was his care,
Til that Fortune had broght him in the snare.
The bisy larke, messager of day,

---

1462. Hn that seu.; Hn ϵ of May. 1464. ϵ telleþ. 1468. ϵ *omits* his. 1471. Hn Gg $H_4$ *omit* a. 1481. Gg muste hym. 1486. ϵ to his louely wif. 1488. α to *for* vnto; Ln Now whiles turne we to A., *etc.* 1490. ϵ kaught him in his snare.

Salueth in hir song the morwe gray,
And firy Phebus riseth vp so brighte
That al the orient laugheth of the lighte,
And with hise stremes dryeth in the greues
The siluer dropes hangynge on the leues.
And Arcita, that is in the court roial
With Theseus his squier principal,
Is risen and looketh on the merye day.
And for to doon his obseruaunce to May,
Remembrynge on the poynt of his desir,
He on a courser, startlynge as the fir,
Is riden into the feeldes hym to pleye,
Out of the court, were it a myle or tweye.
And to the groue of which that I yow tolde
By auenture his wey he gan to holde,
To maken hym a garland of the greues,
Were it of wodebynde or hawethorn leues;
And loude he song ayeyn the sonne shene:
'May, with alle thy floures and thy grene
Welcome be thou, faire, fresshe May,
In hope that I som grene gete may.'
And from his courser with a lusty herte
Into the groue ful hastily he sterte,
And in a path he rometh vp and doun
Ther as by auenture this Palamoun
Was in a bussh, that no man myghte hym se,
For soore afered of his deeth was he.
No-thyng ne knew he that it was Arcite.
God woot he wolde haue trowed it ful lite,

1494. Pe of his si t; Ln of þe sight. 1497. Hn ϵ *omit* is, Co *also* orriis that. 1498. Hn *omits* his; Gg is *for* his. 1502. $H_4$ ϵ stertyng. 1512. ϵ I hope. 1514. El a gr. 1515. Gg $H_4$ romed. 1516. ϵ of þis P. 1518. El ϵ aferd.

But sooth is seyd, go sithen many yeres,
'That feeld hath eyen and the wode hath eres;'
It is ful fair a man to bere hym euene,
'For al day meeteth men at vnset steuene.'
Ful litel woot Arcite of his felawe
That was so ny to herken of his sawe,
For in the bussh he sitteth now ful stille.
Whan that Arcite hadde romed al his fille,
And songen al the roundel lustily,
Into a studie he fil sodeynly,
As doon thise loueres in hir queynte geres,
Now in the crop, now doun in the breres,
Now up, now doun, as boket in a welle.
Right as the Friday, soothly for to telle —
Now it shyneth, now it reyneth faste —
Right so kan geery Venus ouercaste
The hertes of hir folk; right as hir day
Is gereful, right so chaungeth she array, —
'Selde is the Friday al the wike ylike.'
Whan that Arcite had songe he gan to sike,
And sette hym doun withouten any moore:
'Allas,' quod he, 'that day that I was bore!
How longe, Iuno, thurgh thy crueltee,
Woltow werreyen Thebes the citee?
Allas, ybroght is to confusioun
The blood roial of Cadme and Amphioun, —
Of Cadmus, which that was the firste man
That Thebes bulte, or first the toun bigan,
And of the citee first was crouned kyng.

---

1524. El Pe meten, $H_4$ men meteþ. 1526. *a* herknen al his s; Gg heryn of his tale. 1530. El al sod. 1532. $H_4$ *e* croppe (*perhaps* croppes *is the right reading*). 1536. $H_4$ *e* gan *for* kan. 1539. El Gg wowke; Pe Ln weke. 1548. Hn bulte and first bigan.

Of his lynage am I and his ofspryng,
By verray ligne as of the stok roial;
And now I am so caytyf and so thral,
That he that is my mortal enemy,
I serue hym as his squier pourely.
And yet dooth Iuno me wel moore shame,
For I dar noght biknowe myn owene name;
But ther as I was wont to highte Arcite
Now highte I Philostrate, noght worth a myte.
Allas, thou felle Mars! allas, Iuno!
Thus hath youre ire oure lynage al fordo
Saue oonly me, and wrecched Palamoun,
That Theseus martireth in prisoun.
And ouer al this, to sleen me outrely
Loue hath his firy dart so brennyngly
Y-stiked thurgh my trewe, careful herte,
That shapen was my deeth erst than my sherte.
Ye sleen me with youre eyen, Emelye!
Ye been the cause wherfore that I dye!
Of al the remenant of myn oother care
Ne sette I nat the mountance of a tare,
So that I koude doon aught to youre plesaunce.'
And with that word he fil doun in a traunce
A longe tyme, and afterward he vp-sterte.
This Palamoun, that thoughte that thurgh his herte
He felte a coold swerd sodeynliche glyde,
For ire he quook, no lenger wolde he byde.
And whan that he had herd Arcites tale,
As he were wood, with face deed and pale
He stirte hym vp out of the buskes thikke,

1550. Pe Ln of his *for* his. 1555. ϵ me Iuno; $H_4$ wel moore. 1559. ϵ þou Iuno. 1560. El kynrede *for* lynage. 1564. Co his faire dart; Pe Ln faire his d. 1573. El after he, *etc.*; $H_4$ *omits* he; Ln he afterwarde. 1575. Hn Pe Ln sodeynly.

And seide, 'Arcite, false traytour wikke,
Now artow hent, that louest my lady so,
For whom that I haue al this peyne and wo.
And art my blood, and to my conseil sworn,
As I ful ofte haue seyd the heer-biforn,
And hast byiaped heere duc Theseus,
And falsely chaunged hast thy name thus!
I wol be deed, or elles thou shalt dye;
Thou shalt nat loue my lady Emelye,
But I wol loue hire oonly and namo.
For I am Palamon, thy mortal foo,
And though that I no wepnę haue in this place,
But out of prison am astert by grace,
I drede noght that outher thow shalt dye,
Or thow ne shalt nat louen Emelye.
Chees which thou wolt, for thou shalt nat asterte!'
This Arcite, with ful despitous herte,
Whan he hym knew and had his tale herd,
As fiers as leoun pulled out a swerd,
And seyde thus, 'By God that sit aboue,
Nere it that thou art sik and wood for loue,
And eek that thow no wepnę hast in this place,
Thou sholdest neuere out of this groue pace,
That thou ne sholdest dyen of myn hond;
For I defye the seurete and the bond
Which that thou seist that I haue maad to thee.
What, verray fool, thynk wel that loue is fre!
And I wol loue hir mawgree al thy myght.
But for as muche as thou art a worthy knyght

1585. $H_4$ þe duc T. 1586. Ln haste þou ch. 1598. *a* his *for* a. 1599. Hn $H_4$ *e* sitteth. 1600. *e* nere (Pe ne) it were that. 1608. El Gg Co *omit 2d* as, $H_4$ But for þou art a gentil parfiȝt knight.

And wilnest to darreyne hire by bataille,
Haue heer my trouthe, tomorwe I nyl nat faile,
Withoute wityng of any oother wight
That heere I wol be founden as a knyght,
And bryngen harneys right ynough for thee;
And chees the beste and leef the worste for me:
And mete and drynke this nyght wol I brynge
Ynough for thee, and clothes for thy beddynge.
And if so be that thou my lady wynne
And sle me in this wode ther I am inne,
Thou mayest wel haue thy lady as for me.'
This Palamon answerde, 'I graunte it thee.'
And thus they been departed til amorwe,
Whan ech of hem had leyd his feith to borwe.

O Cupide, out of alle charitee!
O regne that wolt no felawe haue with thee!
Ful sooth is seyd that loue ne lordshipe
Wol noght his thankes haue no felaweshipe.
Wel fynden that Arcite and Palamoun!
Arcite is riden anon into the toun,
And on the morwe, er it were dayes light,
Ful priuely two harneys hath he dight,
Bothe suffisaunt and mete to darreyne
The bataille in the feeld betwix hem tweyne;
And on his hors allone as he was born,
He carieth al the harneys hym biforn.
And in the groue at tyme and place y-set
This Arcite and this Palamon ben met.
To chaungen gan the colour in hir face,

---

1609. $H_4$ wenest *for* wilnest. 1610. El Gg wol *for* nyl; Ln wil I. 1614. El e chese (*infin.*); El Pe Ln leue (*infin.*). 1616. $H_4$ cloth. 1621. Gg to parted. 1623. Co Ln occupied *for* O Cupide. 1626. El hir *for* his. 1627. e we fynde that of A. and of P.; Gg fyndy. 1629. Gg Pe day l.

Right as the hunters in the regne of Trace,
That stondeth at the gappe with a spere,
Whan hunted is the leoun or the bere.
And hereth hym come russhyng in the greues
And breketh bothe bowes and the leues,
And thynkeþ, 'Heere comeþ my mortal enemy,
With-oute faile he moot be deed or I;
For outher I moot sleen hym at the gappe,
Or he moot sleen me, if that me myshappe.'
So ferden they in chaungyng of hir hewe,
As fer as euerich of hem oother knewe.
Ther nas no 'Good day' ne no saluyng,
But streight withouten word or rehersyng
Euerich of hem heelp for to armen oother
As frendly as he were his owene brother.
And after that with sharpe speres stronge
They foynen ech at oother wonder longe.
Thou myghtest wene that this Palamoun
In his fightyng were a wood leoun,
And as a crueel tigre was Arcite:
As wilde bores gonne they to smyte,
That frothen whit as foom for ire wood,—
Vp to the ancle foghte they in hir blood.
And in this wise I lete hem fightyng dwelle,
And forth I wole of Theseus yow telle.

The Destinee, ministre general,
That executeth in the world oueral
The purueiaunce that God hath seyn biforn,

1639. Hn stonden. 1640. El and the b. 1647. Pe Ln *omit* they. 1648. Hn oother of hem kn. 1651. Gg halp; Co hilp; Pe $H_4$ helpeþ (*in A* 4246 *same set of variants save that Pe has* helpe; see § 158). 1652. El freenly. 1654. Gg $H_4$ foynedyn; $H_4$ *omits* wonder. 1655. $H_4$ Tho it semed þat. 1656. Gg fyȝt. 1660. Hn Anclees; Gg anches.

So strong it is that, though the world had sworn
The contrarie of a thyng by ye or nay,
Yet somtyme it shal fallen on a day
That falleth nat eft withinne a thousand yeer.
For certeinly oure appetites heer,
Be it of werre or pees or hate or loue, —
Al is this reuled by the sighte aboue.
This mene I now by myghty Theseus,
That for to hunten is so desirus,
And namely at the grete hert in May,
That in his bed ther daweth hym no day
That he nys clad, and redy for to ryde
With hunte and horne, and houndes hym bisyde.
For in his huntyng hath he swich delit,
That it is al his ioye and appetit
To been hymself the grete hertes bane,
For after Mars he serueth now Dyane.
Cleer was the day, as I haue tookl er this,
And Theseus, with alle ioye and blis,
With his Ypolita, the faire queene,
And Emelye, clothed al in grene,
On huntyng be they riden roially.
And to the groue, that stood ful faste by,
In which ther was an hert, as men hym tolde,
Duc Theseus the streighte way hath holde.
And to the launde he rideth hym ful right,
For thider was the hert wont to haue his flight,
And ouer a brook, and so forth on his weye.
This duc wol han a cours at hym or tweye
With houndes swiche as that hym list comaunde.

1666. $H_4$ ϵ þei *for* though. 1680. Ln is hope ioye *for* his i. 1690. Gg ryȝte way. 1692. *a omits* to. 1693. El $H_4$ in *for* on. 1695. El Gg Ln $H_4$ *omit* that; Gg $H_4$ which as.

And whan this duc was come vnto the launde
Vnder the sonne he looketh, and anon
He was war of Arcite and Palamon,
That foughten breme, as it were bores two.
The brighte swerdes wenten to and fro
So hidously, that with the leeste strook
It semed as it wolde felle an ook;
But what they were no thyng he ne woot.
This duc his courser with his spores smoot
And at a stert he was bitwix hem two,
And pulled out a swerd and cride, 'Hoo!
Namoore, vp peyne of lesynge of youre heed!
By myghty Mars, he shal anon be deed
That smyteth any strook that I may seen.
But telleth me what myster men ye been,
That been so hardy for to fighten heere
Withouten Iuge, or oother officere,
As it were in a lystes roially!'
This Palamon answerde hastily
And seyde, 'Sire, what nedeth wordes mo?
We haue the deeth disserued, bothe two.
Two woful wrecches been we, two caytyues
That been encombred of oure owene lyues,
And as thou art a rightful lord and Iuge,
Ne yif vs neither mercy ne refuge,
But sle me first, for seinte Charitee,
But sle my felawe eek as wel as me;
Or sle hym first, for though thow knowest it lite,
This is thy mortal foo, this is Arcite,

1699. Hn ϵ boles (Ln boly). 1702. El fille. 1707. α Ln vpon *for* vp. 1713. ϵ litell liste r. 1720. El Pe $H_4$ yeue; Co ȝiue. 1723. ϵ *omits* first; Hn $H_4$ knowe; $H_4$ him *for* it. 1724. Gg He is þyn dedly enemy arcyte.

That fro thy lond is banysshed on his heed,
For which he hath deserued to be deed.
For this is he that cam vnto thy gate
And seyde that he highte Philostrate.
Thus hath he iaped thee ful many a yer,
And thou hast maked hym thy chief squier;
And this is he that loueth Emelye;
For sith the day is come that I shal dye,
I make pleynly my confessioun
That I am thilke woful Palamoun,
That hath thy prisoun broken wikkedly.
I am thy mortal foo, and it am I
That loueth so hoote Emelye the brighte
That I wol dye present in hir sighte.
Therfore I axe deeth and my Iuwise;
But sle my felawe in the same wise,
For bothe han we deserued to be slayn.'
This worthy duc answerde anon agayn,
And seyde, 'This is a short conclusioun:
Youre owene mouth by your confessioun
Hath dampned yow, and I wol it recorde,
It nedeth noght to pyne yow with the corde;
Ye shal be deed, by myghty Mars the rede!'
The queene anon for verray wommanhede
Gan for to wepe, and so dide Emelye,
And alle the ladyes in the compaignye.
Greet pitee was it, as it thoughte hem alle,
That euere swich a chaunce sholde falle;
For gentil men they were of greet estaat,
And no thyng but for loue was this debaat.
And saugh hir blody woundes, wyde and soore,

1726. Gg seruyd; $H_4$ I-serued. 1732. e þat day. 1741. Pe Ln $H_4$ we haue.

And alle crięden bothe lasse and moore,
'Haue mercy, Lord, vpon vs wommen alle!'
And on hir bare knęes adoun they falle,
And wolde haue kist his feet ther as he stood.
Til at the laste aslaked was his mood,
For pitee renneth soone in gentil herte,
And though he first for ire quook and sterte,
He hath considered shortly in a clause
The trespas of hem bothe, and eek the cause.
And although that his ire hir gilt accused,
Yet in his resoun he hem bothe excused;
As thus: he thoghte wel that euery man
Wol helpe hymself in loue, if that he kan,
And eek deliuęre hymself out of prisoun.
And eek his herte haddę compassioun
Of wommen, for they wepen euerę in oon;
And in his gentil herte he thoughte anon,
And softe vnto hym-self he seyde, 'Fy
Vpon a lord that wol haue no mercy,
But been a leoun, bothe in word and dede,
To hem that been in repentaunce and drede,
As wel as to a proud despitous man
That wol maynteyne that he first bigan.
That lord hath litel of discrecioun,
That in swich cas kan no diuisioun,
But weyeth pride and humblesse after oon.'
And shortly, whan his ire is thus agoon,
He gan to looken vp with eyen lighte,
And spak thise same wordes al on highte:
'The God of loue, a *benedicite!*

1758. ϵ doun. 1763. Ln $H_4$ *omit* hath. 1767. El $H_4$ Pe Ln and thus (*pause-mark after* thus *in* α). 1771. Hn wepten. 1773. Gg to *for* vnto.

How myghty and how greet a lord is he!
Ayeyns his myght ther gayneth none obstacles,
He may be cleped a god for his myracles;
For he kan maken at his owene gyse
Of euerich herte as that hym list diuyse.
Lo heere this Arcite and this Palamoun,
That quitly weren out of my prisoun
And myghte haue lyued in Thebes roially!
And witen I am hir mortal enemy
And that hir deth lith in my myght also;
And yet hath loue, maugree hir eyen two,
Broght hem hyder bothe for to dye.
Now looketh, is nat that an heigh folye?
"Who may been a fole, but if he loue?"
Bihoold, for Goddes sake that sit aboue,
Se how they blede! Be they noght wel arrayed?
Thus hath hir lord, the god of loue, ypayed
Hir wages and hir fees for hir seruyse;
And yet they wenen for to been ful wyse
That seruen loue, for aught that may bifalle.
But this is yet the beste game of alle,
That she for whom they han this Iolitee,
Kan hem ther-fore as muche thank as me.
She woot namoore of al this hoote fare,
By God, than woot a cokkow or an hare.
"But all moot ben assayed, hoot and coold,
A man moot ben a fool, or young or oold,"—
I woot it by myself ful yore agon;
For in my tyme a seruant was I oon.

---

1787, 8. Gg $H_4$ obstakèll, mirakell. 1788. Co $H_4$ of his m. 1792. Hn $H_4$ ϵ were. 1797. $H_4$ I-brought. 1798. Gg Pe this *for* that. 1799. $H_4$ if that *for* but if. 1800. ϵ sitteþ. 1802. Gg Pe $H_4$ hem payed. 1804. Hn to *for* for to; $H_4$ wenen they to ben wise. 1811. Gg $H_4$ hot or c.

And therfore, syn I knowe of loues peyne,
And woot how soore it kan a man distreyne,
As he that hath ben caught ofte in his laas
I yow foryeue al hooly this trespaas,
At requeste of the queene, that kneleth heere,
And eek of Emelye, my suster deere.
And ye shul bothe anon vnto me swere,
That neuere mo ye shal my contree dere,
Ne make werre vpon me nyght ne day,
But been my freendes in al that ye may.
I yow foryeue this trespas euery deel.'
And they him sworen his axyng, faire and weel,
And hym of lordshipe and of mercy preyde;
And he hem graunteth grace, and thus he seyde:
'To speke of roial lynage and richesse,
Though that she were a queene or a princesse,
Ech of you bothe is worthy, doutelees,
To wedden whan tyme is. But nathelees
I speke as for my suster Emelye,
For whom ye haue this strif and Ialousye,
Ye woot your self she may nat wedden two
At ones, though ye fighten euermo.
That oon of you, al be hym looth or lief,
He moot go pipen in an yuy leef.
This is to seyn, she may nat now han bothe,
Al be ye neuer so Ialous ne so wrothe.
And for-thy, I yow putte in this degree,
That ech of yow shal haue his destynee
As hym is shape; and herkneth in what wyse,

1817. Gg Pe $H_4$ hath ofte be c. 1819. $H_4$ ϵ at þe r. 1822. $H_4$ Co Ln coroune *for* contree. 1823. Hn nor *for* ne. 1828. Gg $H_4$ grauntede; $H_4$ mercy *for* grace; Hn thanne *for* thus. 1832. El doutelees *for* but n. 1838. El *omits* go. 1839. $H_4$ Co Ln *omit* now.

Lo heere your ende of that I shal deuyse.
'My wyl is this, for plat conclusioun
Withouten any repplicacioun —
If that you liketh, take it for the beste :
That euerich of you shal goon where hym leste
Frely, withouten raunson or daunger ;
And this day fifty wykes, fer ne ner,
Euerich of you shal brynge an hundred knyghtes
Armed for lystes vp at alle rightes,
Al redy to darreyne hire by bataille.
And this bihote I yow with-outen faille
Vpon my trouthe ; and as I am a knyght,
That wheither of yow bothe that hath myght,
This is to seyn, that wheither, he or thow,
May with his hundred as I spak of now
Sleen his contrarie, or out of lystes dryue,
Thanne shal I yeue Emelya to wyue
To whom that Fortune yeueth so fair a grace.
The lystes shal I maken in this place,
And God so wisly on my soule rewe
As I shal euene Iuge been and trewe.
Ye shul noon oother ende with me maken
That oon of yow ne shal be deed or taken.
And if yow thynketh this is weel ysayd,
Seyeth youre auys and holdeth you apayd.
This is youre ende and youre conclusioun.'
Who looketh lightly now but Palamoun?
Who spryngeth vp for Ioye but Arcite?
Who kouthe telle, or who kouthe it endite,
The Ioye that is maked in the place

1852. *e omits* at. 1854. Co Ln biheete. 1860. Co Ln That, $H_4$ Him *for* Thanne. 1866. Gg Co Pe $H_4$ *omit* ne. 1872. El Gg $H_4$ *omit* it. 1873. Gg that is now schewid in the place.

Whan Theseus hath doon so fair a grace?
But doun on knees wente euery maner wight
And thonked hym with al hir herte and myght;
And namely the Thebans often sithe.
And thus with good hope and with herte blithe
They take hir leue, and homward gonne they ride
To Thebes with his olde walles wyde.

**Explicit secunda pars.**

## PART III

**Sequitur pars tertia.**

I trowe men woldę deme it necligence
If I foryetę to tellen the dispence
Of Theseus, that gooth so busily
To maken vp the lystes roially,
That swich a noble theatrę as it was
I dar wel seyen in this world ther nas.
The circüit a myle was aboute,
Walled of stoon and dyched al withoute.
Round was the shap in manere of compaas
Ful of degrees the heighte of sixty pas,
That whan a man was set on o degree
He letted nat his felawe for to see.
Estward ther stood a gate of marbul whit,
Westward right swich anothęr in thę opposit.
And shortly to concluden, swich a place
Was noon in erthe as in so litel space;
For in the lond ther nas no crafty man

---

1876. *a* thonken. 1880. *All but El omit* hise. (*Perhaps* Thebes-ward *in original.*) 1882. Ln foryate. 1886. Mss. seyn (Ln $H_4$ saye, say); $H_4$ þat in. 1892. El lette Gg lettyth; Ln let it. 1894. Co $H_4$ *omit* the. 1896. Gg of, $H_4$ in *for* as in; Hn Co Ln so lite a sp. 1897. *a* was *for* nas.

That geometrie or ars-metrike kan,
Ne portreiour, ne keruere of ymages,
That Theseus ne yaf hym mete and wages
The theatre for to maken and deuyse.
And for to doon his ryte and sacrifise,
He estward hath, vpon the gate aboue,
In worship of Venus, goddesse of loue,
Doon make an auter and an oratorie;
And on the westward, in mynde and in memorie
Of Mars, he maked hath right swich another,
That coste largely of gold a fother.
And northward, in a touret on the wal,
Of alabastre whit and reed coral
An oratorie riche for to see
In worship of Dyane of chastitee
Hath Theseus doon wroght in noble wyse.

But yit hadde I foryeten to deuyse
The noble keruyng and the portreitures,
The shap, the contenaunce, and the figures
That weren in thise oratories thre.

First, in the temple of Venus maystow se
Wroght on the wal, ful pitous to biholde,
The broken slepes and the sikes colde,
The sacred teeris and the waymentynge,
The firy strokes, of the desirynge
That loues seruauntz in this lyf enduren;
The othes that her couenantz assuren;

---

1898. α Gg Ln ars metrik (*cp.* D 2222). 1899. El Gg portreitour. 1900. α Ln *omit* hym; Gg hym ȝaf *for* ne y. hym; Co ne gain him; Pe ne gaue him; $H_4$ ne ȝaf hem. 1901. Pe Ln *omit* for. 1905. Hn maad. 1906. *All but* $H_4$ And on (Co of, Ln in) the westward (Pe w. side) in memorie, $H_4$ And w. in the mynde and in m. 1908. Gg of gold largely. 1909. Gg of *for* on. 1915. Co Ln peyntyng *for* keru.; Pe kervingges. 1919. $H_4$ Co Ln in *for* on. 1921. Gg secret terys. 1922. El $H_4$ and the d.

Plesaunce and Hope, Desir, Foolhardynesse,
Beautee and Youthe, Bauderie, Richesse,
Charmes and Force, Lesynges, Flaterye,
Despense, Bisynesse, and Ialousye
That wered of yelewe gooldes a gerlond
And a cokkow sittynge on hir hond;
Festes instrumentz, caroles, daunces,
Lust and array, and alle the circumstaunces
Of loue whiche that I rekened and rekne shal,
By ordre weren peynted on the wal,
And mo than I kan make of mencioun.
For soothly al the mount of Citheroun,
Ther Venus hath hir principal dwellynge,
Was shewed on the wal in portreyynge,
With al the gardyn and the lustynesse.
Nat was foryeten the porter Ydelnesse,
Ne Narcisus the faire of yore agon,
Ne yet the folye of kyng Salamon,
Ne yet the grete strengthe of Ercules,
Thenchauntementz of Medea and Circes,
Ne of Turnus, with the hardy fiers corage,
The riche Cresus, kaytyf in seruage.
Thus may ye seen that Wysdom ne Richesse,
Beautee ne Sleighte, Strengthe ne Hardynesse,
Ne may with Venus holde champartie,
For as hir list the world than may she gye.
Lo, alle thise folk so caught were in hir las
Til they for wo ful ofte seyde, 'Allas!'
Suffiseth heere ensamples oon or two,

1927. $H_4$ sorcery *for* force; Gg lesynge; Gg Pe $H_4$ les. and fl. 1933. $H_4$ Pe *omit* that; Co Ln *omit* I; El rekned haue, Gg reken *for* rekened. 1942. El Gg And *for* Ne. 1943. El Gg And eek *for* Ne yet. 1948. a Pe *omit 2d* ne, Ln B. ne strengeþe ne sleiht ne h. 1949. Hn maken ch.

And though I koude rekene a thousand mo.
The statue of Venus glorious for to se
Was naked, fletynge in the large see,
And fro the nauele doun al couered was
With wawes grene and brighte as any glas.
A citole in hir right hand hadde she,
And on hir heed, ful semely for to se,
A rose gerland, fressh and wel smellynge,
Aboue hir heed hir dowues flikerynge;
Biforn hir stood hir sone Cupido,
Vpon his shuldres wynges hadde he two,
And blind he was, as it is often seene;
A bowe he bar and arwes brighte and kene.
Why sholde I noght as wel eek telle yow al
The portreiture that was vpon the wal
Withinne the temple of myghty Mars the rede?
Al peynted was the wal in lengthe and brede
Lyk to the estres of the grisly place
That highte the grete temple of Mars in Trace,
In thilke colde frosty regioun
Ther as Mars hath his souereyn mansioun.
First on the wal was peynted a forest,
In which ther dwelleth neither man nor best,
With knotty, knarry, bareyne trees olde
Of stubbes sharpe and hidouse to biholde;
In which ther ran a rumble in a swough
As though a storm sholde bresten euery bough.
And dounward from an hille, vnder a bente,
Ther stood the temple of Mars armypotente

1956. Gg maked, Ln made, Co inaked *for* naked. 1958. Gg which was *for* with w. 1964. ϵ wenges. 1966. $H_4$ arwes faire and greene. 1967. Gg $H_4$ *omit* eek. 1969. Gg wal *for* temple. 1976. Co Ln dwelled; Pe wonneþ. 1979. El And a sw.; Pe þer was a rombled and a sw.; $H_4$ as wymbul *for* a r. 1981. Hn $H_4$ on *for* from.

Wroght al of burned steel, of which the entree
Was long and streit, and gastly for to see.
And ther out came a rage, and such a veze
That it made al the gate for to rese.
The northren lyght in at the dores shoon,
For wyndowe on the wal ne was ther noon
Thurgh which men myghten any light discerne;
The dore was al of adamant eterne,
Y-clenched ouerthwart and endelong
With iren tough; and for to make it strong,
Euery pyler, the temple to sustene,
Was tonne greet of iren bright and shene.
Ther saugh I first the derke ymaginyng
Of Felonye, and al the compassyng;
The crueel Ire, reed as any gleede,
The pykepurs, and eke the pale Drede,
The smyler with the knyfe vnder the cloke,
The shepne brennynge with the blake smoke,
The tresoun of the mordrynge in the bedde,
The Open Werre with woundes al bibledde,
Contek with blody knyf and sharp manace.
Al ful of chirkyng was that sory place.
The sleer of hymself yet saugh I ther,
His herte blood hath bathed al his heer;
The nayl ydryuen in the shode anyght,
The colde Deeth with mouth gapyng vpright.
Amyddes of the temple sat Meschaunce,
With disconfort and sory countenaunce.
Yet saugh I Woodnesse laughynge in his rage,

1985. Gg in swich a wese; Pe. in such a wise; $H_4$ of suche aprise. 1986. $H_4$ ϵ gates; $H_4$ rise *for* rese. 1990. Gg Co Ln $H_4$ dores were; $H_4$ all ademauntz. 1996. El Gg *omit* al. 1997. Ln $H_4$ as rede as. 1998. El Gg *omit* eke. 2003. $H_4$ kuttud *for* contek. 2004. Co Ln shrikyng.

Armed Compleint, Out-Hees, and fiers Outrage;
The careyne in the busk with throte ycorue;
A thousand slayn and nat of qualm ystorue;
The tiraunt with the pray by force yraft,
The toun destroyed, ther was no thyng laft.
Yet saugh I brent the shippes hoppesteres,
The hunte strangled with the wilde beres,
The sowe freten the child right in the cradel,
The cook yscalded for al his longe ladel,—
Noght was foryeten: by the infortune of Marte
The cartere ouerryden with his carte,
Vnder the wheel ful lowe he lay adoun.
Ther were also of Martes diuisioun,
The barbour and the bocher, and the smyth
That forgeth sharpe swerdes on his styth.
And al aboue, depeynted in a tour,
Saugh I Conquest sittynge in greet honour
With the sharpe swerd ouer his heed
Hangynge by a soutil twynes threed.
Depeynted was the slaughtre of Iulius,
Of grete Nero, and of Antonius;
Al be that thilke tyme they were vnborn,
Yet was hir deth depeynted ther-biforn
By manasynge of Mars, right by figure;
So it was shewed in that portreiture,
As is depeynted in the sterres aboue
Who shal be slayn or elles deed for loue;

2012–2017. $H_4$ *omits these verses.* 2015. Co w. his pr. his f. thraste; Ln w. pr. be for þraste. 2017. Gg hospesterys. 2018. Co breeres, $H_4$ bores corage (*to rhyme with* rage *in* 2011) *for* beres. 2019. Pe Ln fretinge. 2026. Gg Pe on the s. (Gg steyth). 2027. Gg al aboute. 2028. Co *omits* sittynge; Ln sit. 2030. Gg Co Pe twyned; Ln $H_4$ twine. 2033. Gg $H_4$ ε (*exc.* Pe) that ilke. 2037. El Certres; Hn Sertres; Gg Co Ln sertres; Pe certres (*cf. B* 190–203).

Suffiseth oon ensample in stories olde,
I may nat rekene hem alle though I wolde.
The statue of Mars upon a carte stood
Armed, and looked grym as he were wood;
And ouer his heed ther shynen two figures
Of sterres that been cleped in scriptures
That oon Puella, that oother Rubeus.
This god of armes was arrayed thus:
A wolf ther stood biforn hym at his feet
With eyen rede, and of a man he eet.
With soutil pencel was depeynted this storie
In redoutynge of Mars and of his glorie.
Now to the temple of Dyane the chaste,
As shortly as I kan I wol me haste,
To telle yow al the descripsioun.
Depeynted been the walles vp and doun
Of huntyng and of shamefast chastitee.
Ther saugh I how woful Calistopee,
Whan that Diane agreued was with here,
Was turned from a womman til a bere,
And after was she maad the loode sterre;
Thus was it peynted, I kan sey yow no ferre.
Hir sone is eek a sterre, as men may see.
Ther saugh I Dane, y-turned til a tree,—
I mene nat the goddesse Diane,
But Penneus doughter which that highte Dane.
Ther saugh I Attheon an hert y-maked
For vengeaunce that he saugh Diane al naked;
I saugh how that his houndes haue hym caught

2040. $H_4$ *omits, leaving space for it;* Gg *omits* alle. 2044. Co Ln closed *for* cleped. 2054. Pe was *for* ben; Gg Pe walle. 2056. Ln Caliste. 2058. El $H_4$ Pe Ln to *for* til. 2060. ϵ she *for* it; Gg That shynyth in the hevyn from yow so ferre *in later hand.* 2062. $H_4$ ϵ turned; Hn Pe to a tr.

And freeten hym, for that they knewe hym naught.
Yet peynted was a litel forther moor
How Atthalante hunted the wilde boor,
And Meleagree, and many another mo,
For which Dyane wroghte hym care and wo
Ther saugh I many another wonder storie,
The whiche me list nat drawen to memorie.
This goddesse on an hert ful hye seet,
With smale houndes al aboute hir feet,
And vndernethe hir feet she hadde a moone,
Wexynge it was, and sholde wanye soone.
In gaude grene hir statue clothed was,
With bowe in honde and arwes in a cas;
Hir eyen caste she ful low adoun
Ther Pluto hath his derke regioun.
A womman trauaillynge was hir biforn;
But for hir child so longe was vnborn,
Ful pitously Lucyna gan she calle,
And seyde, 'Help, for thou mayst best of alle.'
Wel koude he peynten lifly that it wroghte,
With many a floryn he the hewes boghte.
Now been thise lystes maad, and Theseus,
That at his grete cost arrayed thus
The temples and the theatre euery deel,
Whan it was doon hym lyked wonder weel;
But stynte I wole of Theseus a lite,
And speke of Palamon and of Arcite.
The day approcheth of hir retournynge,
That euerich sholde an hundred knyghtes brynge,

---

2069. *a* yit; $H_4$ *e* ypeynted; El *omits* was. 2073. $H_4$ saugh I eek; Co $H_4$ *omit* wonder, Pe worþi. 2084. Pe Ln was so longe. 2089. El the l. 2091. Gg Pe temple. 2092. $H_4$ Gg Ln it liked him; $H_4$ right w. 2094. Gg Pe *omit ad* of.

The bataille to darreyne, as I yow tolde.
And til Atthenes, hir couenantz for to holde,
Hath euerich of hem broght an hundred knyghtes
Wel armed for the werre at alle rightes.
And sikerly ther trowed many a man
That neuer sithen that the world bigan,
As for to speke of knyghthod, of hir hond,
As fer as God hath maked see or lond
Nas, of so fewe, so noble a compaignye.
For euery wight that loued chiualrye
And wolde his thankes han a passant name,
Hath preyd that he myghte been of that game.
And wel was hym that ther-to chosen was;
For if ther fille tomorwe swich a caas,
Ye knowen wel that euery lusty knyght
That loueth paramours and hath his myght,
Were it in Engelond or elles-where,
They wolde hir thankes wilnen to be there,
To fighte for a lady — *benedicitee*,
It were a lusty sighte for to see!
And right so ferden they with Palamon,
With hym ther wenten knyghtes many oon.
Som wol ben armed in an haubergeoun,
And in a brestplate and in a light gypoun;
And som wol haue a paire plates large;
And som wol haue a Pruce sheeld or a targe;
Som wol ben armed on his legges weel,
And haue an ax, and som a mace of steel —
Ther is no newe gyse that it nas old.

2099. $H_4$ Pe euery. 2106. Gg El louede; $H_4$ loueþ. 2108. Gg $H_4$ Co preyed. 2120. El $H_4$ *omits* And; Pe *omits both* in's; $H_4$ a bright br. *and omits 2d* in. 2121, 2122, 2123. El somme woln. 2123. El $H_4$ hir legges. 2124. El somme.

Armed weren they, as I haue yow told,
Euerych after his opinion.
Ther maistow seen comynge with Palamon
Lygurge hymself, the grete kyng of Trace.
Blak was his berd, and manly was his face;
The cercles of hise eyen in his heed,
They gloweden bitwyxen yelow and reed,
And lik a grifphon looked he aboute
With kempe heeris on his browes stoute;
His lymes grete, his brawnes harde and stronge,
His shuldres brode, his armes rounde and longe;
And, as the gyse was in his contree,
Ful hye vpon a chaar of gold stood he,
With foure white boles in the trays.
In stede of cote-armure ouer his harnays,
With nayles yelwe and brighte as any gold
He hadde a beres skyn, col-blak, for-old.
His longe heer was kembd bihynde his bak;
As any rauenes fethere it shoon for-blak;
A wrethe of golde, arm-greet, of huge wighte,
Vpon his heed, set ful of stones brighte,
Of fyne rubyes and of dyamauntz.
Aboute his chaar ther wenten white alauntz
Twenty and mo, as grete as any steer,
To hunten at the leoun or the deer,
And folwed hym with mosel faste y-bounde,
Colered of gold and tourettes fyled rounde.
An hundred lordes hadde he in his route,
Armed ful wel, with hertes stierne and stoute.

---

2135. Gg grete and s; Pe *omits* harde and. 2138. he *in later hand* in El. 2041. El yelewe; ϵ yelowe. 2145. Hn *omits* arm. 2146. Hn and *for* set. 2150. El *repeats* or. 2152. ϵ colers.

With Arcita, in stories as men fynde,
The grete Emetreus, the kyng of Inde,
Vpon a steede bay trapped in steel,
Coueręd in clooth of gold, dyapred weel,
Cam ridyngę lyk the god of armes, Mars.
His cote-armure was of clooth of Tars
Couched with perles, white and rounde and grete;
His sadel was of brend gold newe y-bete;
A mantelet vpon his shulder hangynge,
Bret-ful of rubyes rede as fyr sparklynge;
His crispe heer, lyk rynges was y-ronne,
And that was yelow and glyteręd as the sonne.
His nosę was heigh, his eyen bright citryn,
His lippes rounde, his colour was sangwyn;
A fewe frakęnes in his face y-spreynd,
Bitwixen yelow and somdel blak y-meynd;
And as a leoun he his lookyng caste.
Of fyue and twenty yeer his age I caste,
His berd was wel bigonne for to sprynge;
His voys was as a trompe thonderynge;
Vpon his heed he wereḍ of laurer grene,
A gerland, fressh and lusty for to sene.
Vpon his hand he bar for his deduyt
An egle tame, as any lilye whyt.
An hundred lordes hadde he with hym there,
Al armed saue hir heddes in al hir gere,
Ful richely in alle maner thynges.
For trusteth wel that dukes, erles, kynges,
Were gadereḍ in this noble compaignye

---

2155. El Arcite. 2159. Gg Co Pe come. 2162. Gg $H_4$ bete. 2163. El Gg Pe Mantel. 2164. El Brat ful. 2166. $H_4$ ę gliteryng. 2174. El thondrynge. 2175. Gg Co Pe $H_4$ a laurer. 2176. Gg Pe garlond Co Ln garland. 2177. Pe $H_4$ delite *for* deduyt.

For loue, and for encrees of chiualrye.
Aboute this kyng ther ran on euery part
Ful many a tame leoun and leopart.
And in this wise these lordes alle and some
Been on the Sonday to the citee come
Aboute pryme and in the toun alight.
This Theseus, this duc, this worthy knyght,
Whan he had broght hem into his citee
And inned hem, euerich at his degree,
He festeth hem, and dooth so greet labour
To esen hem and doon hem al honour,
That yet men wenen that no mannes wit
Of noon estaat ne koude amenden it.
The mynstralcye, the seruice at the feeste,
The grete yiftes to the meeste and leeste,
The riche array of Theseus paleys,
Ne who sat first ne last vpon the deys,
What ladyes fairest been or best daunsynge,
Or which of hem kan dauncen best or synge,
Ne who moost felyngly speketh of loue;
What haukes sitten on the perche aboue,
What houndes liggen in the floor adoun,—
Of al this make I now no mencioun,
But al theffect, that thynketh me the beste.
Now cometh the point, and herkneth if yow leste.
The Sonday nyght er day bigan to sprynge,
Whan Palamon the larke herde synge,
(Al though it nere nat day by houres two,
Yet song the larke, and Palamon also)
With hooly herte and with an heigh corage

2186. El Gg leopard. 2192. El in his deg. 2195. El Co Ln weneth; El no maner w. 2201. Hn and best d. 2002. α best and s. 2205. Hn ϵ on the floor. 2212. Hn ϵ right þo *for* also.

He roos to wenden on his pilgrymage
Vnto the blisful Citherea benigne, —
I mene Venus honurable and digne.
And in hir houre he walketh forth a paas
Vnto the lystes, ther hire temple was;
And doun he kneleth and with humble cheere
And herte soor, and seyde as ye shal heere.
'Fairest of faire, o lady myn, Venus,
Doughter to Ioue, and spouse of Vulcanus,
Thow glader of the mount of Citheron,
For thilke loue thow haddest to Adoon,
Haue pitee of my bittre teeris smerte,
And taak myn humble preyere at thyn herte.
Allas! I ne haue no langage to telle
Theffectes ne the tormentz of myn helle;
Myn herte may myne harmes nat biwreye;
I am so confus that I kan noght seye.
But mercy, lady bright, that knowest weele
My thought and seest what harmes that I feele,
Considere al this and rewe vpon my soore
As wisly as I shal for euermoore
Emforth my myght thy trewe seruant be,
And holden werre alwey with chastitee;
That make I myn avow, so ye me helpe.
I kepe noght of armes for to yelpe,
Ne I ne axe nat tomorwe to haue victorie,
Ne renoun in this cas, ne veyne glorie
Of pris of armes blowen vp and doun;
But I wolde haue fully possessioun

---

2215. Gg Pe $H_4$ Cythera. 2219. El with ful *for* and with. 2222. Hn $H_4$ of Ioue; Hn ϵ $H_4$ to Vul. 2228. ϵ torment. 2239. $H_4$ Ne nat I aske to morn, *etc.* 2241. $H_4$ blowyng.

Of Emelye, and dye in thy seruyse.
Fynd thow the manere how, and in what wyse ;
I recche nat but it may bettre be
To haue victorie of hem or they of me,
So that I haue my lady in myne armes.
For though so be that Mars is god of armes,
Youre vertu is so greet in heuene aboue
That if yow list I shal wel haue my loue.
Thy temple wol I worshipe euermo,
And on thyn auter, wher I ride or go,
I wol doon sacrifice and fires beete.
And if ye wol nat so, my lady sweete,
Thanne preye I thee, tomorwe with a spere
That Arcita me thurgh the herte bere ;
Thanne rekke I noght, whan I haue lost my lyf,
Though that Arcita wynne hir to his wyf.
This is theffect and ende of my preyere :
Yif me my loue, thow blisful lady deere.'
Whan the orison was doon of Palamon,
His sacrifice he dide, and that anon,
Ful pitously with alle circumstaunces,
Al telle I noght as now his obseruaunces ;
But atte laste the statue of Venus shook
And made a signe, wher-by that he took
That his preyere accepted was that day.
For thogh the signe shewed a delay,
Yet wiste he wel that graunted was his boone ;
And with glad herte he wente hym hoom ful soone.
The thridde houre in-equal that Palamon
Bigan to Venus temple for to gon,

2243. Pe her, Ln his *for* thy. $H_4$ *omits* 2250 *and inserts* And se be Venus þe goddes of loue *before* 2249. 2250. Gg þou, Pe þe *for* yow. 2263. El Gg circumstaunce. 2264. El Gg obseruaunce

Vp róos the sonne and vp roos Emelye,
And to the temple of Dyane gan hye.
Hir maydens that she thider with hir ladde
Ful redily with hem the fyr they hadde,
Thencens, the clothes, and the remenant al
That to the sacrifice longen shal;
The hornes fulle of meeth, as was the gyse,
Ther lakked noght to doon hir sacrifise.
Smokynge the temple, ful of clothes faire,
This Emelye, with herte debonaire,
Hir body wessh with water of a welle.
But hou she dide hir ryte I dar nat telle,
But it be any thing in general;
And yet it were a game to heeren al.
To hym that meneth wel it were no charge,
But it is good a man been at his large.
Hir brighte heer was kempd vntressed al,
A coroune of a grene ook cerial
Vpon hir heed was set, ful faire and meete.
Two fyres on the auter gan she beete,
And dide hir thynges, as men may biholde
In Stace of Thebes, and thise bookes olde.
Whan kyndled was the fyr, with pitous cheere
Vnto Dyane she spak as ye may heere: —
'O chaste goddesse of the wodes grene,
To whom bothe heuene and erthe and see is sene,
Queene of the regne of Pluto derk and lowe,
Goddesse of maydens that myn herte hast knowe

---

2274. Pe $H_4$ gan she hye. 2275. Co Ln *omit* she. 2276. Gg the f. w. h. they; El ladde *for* hadde. 2279. Hn mede; Co mete. 2283. Co Ln *omit* wessh. 2285. Gg But ȝif. 2286. $H_4$ here it al. 2289. Hn kembed; Ln vnkembed. 2294. Hn othere, $H_4$ þe *for* thise.

Ful many a yeer and woost what I desire,
As keep me fro thy vengeaunce and thyn ire,
That Attheon aboughte cruelly.
Chaste goddesse, wel wostow that I
Desire to ben a mayden al my lyf,
Ne neuere wol I be no loue, ne wyf.
I am, thow woost, yet of thy compaignye,
A mayde, and loue huntynge and venerye,
And for to walken in the wodes wilde,
And noght to ben a wyf and be with childe;
Noght wol I knowe compaignye of man.
Now help me, lady, sith ye may and kan
For tho thre formes that thou hast in thee,
And Palamon, that hath swich loue to me,
And eek Arcite, that loueth me so soore,
(This grace I preye thee withoute moore)
As sende loue and pees bitwixe hem two;
And fro me turne awey hir hertes so
That al hir hoote loue and hir desir,
And al hir bisy torment and hir fir,
Be queynt, or turned in another place.
And if so be thou wolt noght do me grace,
Or if my destynee be shapen so
That I shal nedes haue oon of hem two,
As sende me hym that moost desireth me.
Bihoold, goddesse of clene chastitee,
The bittre teeris that on my chekes falle.
Syn thou art mayde, and kepere of vs alle,
My maydenhede thou kepe and wel conserue

---

2301. $H_4$ ȝe woot *for* and w. 2302. $H_4$ þe v. of þilk yre. 2303. $H_4$ trewely *for* cruelly. 2311. El $H_4$ the c. 2316. Co Ln ȝow *for* thee. 2317. *All but* Hn And *for* As; Hn seend. 2322. El Pe $H_4$ wolt do me no gr. 2323. El And *for* Or. 2325. $H_4$ So *for* As; Hn seend.

And whil I lyue a mayde I wol thee serue.'
The fires brenne vp on the auter cleere
Whil Emelyę was thus in hir preyere.
But sodeynly she saugh a sighte queynte,
For right anon oon of the fyres queynte
And quyked agayn, and after that anon
That oother fyr was queynt and al agon.
And as it queynte it made a whistelynge,
As doon thisę wete brondes in hir brennynge;
And at the brondes ende outran anon
As it werę blody dropes many oon.
For which so soore agast was Emelye
That she was wel ny mad, and gan to crye;
For she ne wiste what it signyfied,
But oonly for the feere thus hath she cried,
And weep that it was pitee for to heere.
And ther-with-al Dyane gan appeere,
With bowe in honde, right as an hunteresse,
And seyde, 'Doghter, stynt thyn heuynesse.
Among the goddes hye it is affermed,
And by eterne word writęn and confermed,
Thou shalt ben wedded vnto oon of tho
That han for thee so muchel care and wo;
But vnto which of hem I may nat telle.
Farwel, for I ne may no lenger dwelle.
The fires which that on myn auter brenne
Shul thee declaren, er that thou go henne,
Thyn auenture of loue as in this cas.'
And with that word the arwes in the caas

---

2330. Co Ln 3ou *for* thee. 2332. Hn is thus; $H_4$ *omits* thus. 2337. α Co whistlynge. 2342. Co ful ny; Ln was ny; $H_4$ sche wel neih mad was. 2344. Pe fire þus she; $H_4$ feere þus she. 2355. El whiche. 2356. El shulle.

Of the goddesse clateren faste and rynge,
And forth she wente and made a vanysshynge.
For which this Emelye astoned was,
And seyde, 'What amounteth this, allas?
I putte me in thy protecciouN,
Dyane, and in thy disposicioun.'
And hoom she goth anon the nexte weye.
This is theffect, ther nys namoore to seye.
The nexte houre of Mars folwynge this,
Arcite vnto the temple walked is
Of fierse Mars, to doon his sacrifise
With alle the rytes of his payen wyse.
With pitous herte and heigh deuocioun
Right thus to Mars he seyde his orisoun:
'O stronge god, that in the regnes colde
Of Trace honoured art and lord y-holde,
And hast in euery regne and euery lond
Of armes al the brydel in thyn hond,
And hem fortunest as thee lyst deuyse,
Accepte of me my pitous sacrifise.
If so be that my youthe may deserue,
And that my myght be worthy for to serue
Thy godhede, that I may been oon of thyne,
Thanne preye I thee to rewe vpon my pyne.
For thilke peyne, and thilke hoote fir
In which thou whilom brendest for desir,
Whan that thou vsedest the beautee
Of faire, yonge, fresshe Venus free
And haddest hir in armes at thy wille
(Al-though thee ones on a tyme mysfille,
Whan Vulcanus hadde caught thee in his las,

2366. El Cm Pe Ln is *for* nys. 2380. Co Ln I *for* my.
2383. Pe $H_4$ that hote f. 2384. Pe þou br. wh.

And foond thee liggynge by his wyf, allas !) —
For thilke sorwe that was in thyn herte,
Haue routhe as wel vpon my peynes smerte.
I am yong and vnkonnynge, as thow woost,
And as I trowe with loue offended moost
That euere was any lyues creature;
For she that dooth me al this wo endure
Ne reccheth neuer wher I synke or fleete.
And wel I woot, er she me mercy heete,
I moot with strengthe wynne hir in the place;
And wel I woot withouten helpe or grace
Of thee, ne may my strengthe noght auaille.
Thanne help me, lord, tomorwe in my bataille,
For thilke fyr that whilom brente thee,
As well as thilke fyr now brenneth me,
And do that I tomorwe haue victorie.
Myn be the trauaille, and thyn be the glorie !
Thy souereyn temple wol I moost honouren
Of any place, and alwey moost labouren
In thy plesaunce, and in thy craftes stronge;
And in thy temple I wol my baner honge
And alle the armes of my compaignye,
And euer mo, vnto that day I dye,
Eterne fir I wol biforе thee fynde.
And eek to this auow I wol me bynde:
My beerd, myn heer, that hongeth long adoun,
That neuere yet ne felte offensioun
Of rasour nor of shere, I wol thee yiue,
And ben thy trewe seruant whil I lyue.

---

2400. Hn h. and gr. 2402. Ln $H_4$ to morn (*so, too, in v. 2405*). 2405. Hn may haue. 2412. Hn Ln vntil, Co vnto til *for* vnto. 2413. El biforn. 2415. Pe lorde *for* berd, Ln *omits;* Hn Gg $H_4$ hangeth; Co longeth. 2417. El Gg Pe Ln yeue. 2418. Gg Ln leue.

Now, lord, haue routhe vpon my sorwes soore,
Yif me the victorie, I aske thee namoore!'
The preyere stynt of Arcita the stronge,
The rynges on the temple dore that honge,
And eek the dores, clatereden ful faste,
Of which Arcita som-what hym agaste.
The fyres brende vp on the auter brighte,
That it gan al the temple for to lighte;
A sweete smel anon the ground vp yaf,
And Arcita anon his hond vp haf,
And moore encens into the fyr he caste,
With othere rytes mo. And atte laste
The statue of Mars bigan his hauberk rynge;
And with that soun he herde a murmurynge
Ful lowe and dym, and seyde thus: 'Victorie!'
For which he yaf to Mars honour and glorie.
And thus with ioye and hope wel to fare
Arcite anon vnto his inne is fare,
As fayn as fowel is of the brighte sonne.
And right anon swich strif ther is bigonne
For thilke graunteyng in the heuene aboue,
Bitwixe Venus, the goddesse of loue,
And Mars, the stierne god armypotente,
That Iuppiter was bisy it to stente;
Til that the pale Saturnus the colde,
That knew so manye of auentures olde,
Foond in his olde experience an art
That he ful soone hath plesed euery part.

---

2420. $H_4$ þy v.; $H_4$ *omits* thee. 2423. Co Pe clateren. 2425. Co vp þe; $H_4$ br. on the. 2427. El ϵ And *for* A. 2427. El Co Ln anon *after* ground. 2428. α hand. 2432. Co Ln þe soun. 2433. Gg ϵ þat seyde. 2438. Gg þere is sw. s. b.; $H_4$ ϵ *omit* ther; Ln Frissche *for* sw. 2445. Pe bolde *for* olde, $H_4$ *omits*; El and art; Pe and & art.

As sooth is seyd, elde hath greet auantage;
In elde is bothe wysdom and vsage;
'Men may the olde at-renne and noght at-rede.'
Saturne anon to stynten strif and drede,
Al be it that it is agayn his kynde,
Of al this strif he gan remedie fynde.
'My deere doghter Venus,' quod Saturne,
'My cours, that hath so wyde for to turne,
Hath moore power than woot any man.
Myn is the drenchyng in the see so wan,
Myn is the prison in the derke cote,
Myn is the stranglyng and hangyng by the throte,
The murmure and the cherles rebellyng,
The groynynge and the pryuee empoysonyng;
I do vengeance and pleyn correccioun;
Whil I dwelle in the signe of the leoun,
Myn is the ruyne of the hye halles,
The fallynge of the toures and of the walles
Vpon the mynour or the carpenter;
I slow Sampsoun, shakynge the piler;
And myne be the maladyes colde,
The derke tresons and the castes olde;
My lookyng is the fader of pestilence.
Now weep namoore, I shal doon diligence
That Palamon, that is thyn owene knyght,
Shal haue his lady, as thou hast him hight.
Though Mars shal helpe his knyght, yet nathelees
Bitwixe yow ther moot be som tyme pees,
Al be ye noght of o complecciouN,

2447. Co Ln A, Pe $H_4$ And *for* As. 2449. Pe $H_4$ but *for* and. 2452. Hn Pe $H_4$ kan *for* gan. 2458. Co Ln strangle. 2459. Gg cherle. 2460. Co Ln emprisonynge *for* empoy. 2462. El in signe. 2465. Co Ln and the c. 2466. $H_4$ in shakyng. 2472. Co Ln $H_4$ *omit* hast; Co $H_4$ bihight. 2475. Co Ln bobe of.

That causeth al day swich diuisioun.
I am thyn aiel, redy at thy wille;
Weep now namoore, I wol thy lust fulfille.'
Now wol I stynten of the goddes aboue,
Of Mars, and of Venus, goddesse of loue,
And telle yow as pleynly as I kan
The grete effect for which that I bygan.

**Explicit tertia pars.**

## PART IV

**Sequitur pars quarta.**

Greet was the feeste in Atthenes that day;
And eek the lusty seson of that May
Made euery wight to been in such plesaunce,
That al that Monday Iusten they and daunce,
And spenden it in Venus heigh seruyse.
But by the cause that they sholde ryse
Eerly for to seen the grete fight,
Vnto hir reste wenten they at nyght.
And on the morwe whan that day gan sprynge,
Of hors and harneys noyse and claterynge
Ther was in hostelryes al aboute;
And to the paleys rood ther many a route
Of lordes, vpon steedes and palfreys.
Ther maystow seen deuisynge of harneys
So vnkouth and so riche, and wrought so weel
Of goldsmythrye, of browdynge, and of steel,
The sheeldes brighte, testeres, and trappures;

2478. $H_4$ þou *for* now. 2484. $H_4$ ϵ þat lusty. 2487. El spenten; Co Ln heigh venus ser. 2489. Hn grete sight; $H_4$ erly a morwe for to see þat fight. 2491. IIn Ln $H_4$ þe *for* þat. 2493. El in the h. 2496. El ϵ diuisynge.

Gold-hewen helmes, hauberkes, cote-armures;
Lordes in paramentz on hir courseres;
Knyghtes of retenue, and eek squieres
Nailynge the speres, and helmes bokelynge,
Giggynge of sheeldes with layneres lacynge;
There as nede is they were no thyng ydel.
The fomy steedes on the golden brydel
Gnawynge, and faste the armurers also
With fyle and hamer prikynge to and fro;
Yemen on foote, and communes many oon
With shorte staues, thikke as they may goon;
Pypes, trompes, nakers, clariounes,
That in the bataille blowen blody sounes;
The paleys ful of peples vp and doun,
Heer thre, ther ten, holdynge hir questioun,
Dyuynynge of thise Thebane knyghtes two.
Somme seyden thus, somme seyde it shal be so;
Somme helden with hym with the blake berd,
Somme with the balled, somme with the thikke herd,
Some seyde he looked grymme, and he wolde fighte,
He hath a sparth of twenty pound of wighte;
Thus was the halle ful of diuynynge
Longe after that the sonne gan to sprynge.
The grete Theseus, that of his sleep awaked
With mynstralcie and noyse that was maked,
Heeld yet the chambre of his paleys riche,
Til that the Thebane knyghtes, bothe y-liche
Honoured, weren into the paleys fet.
Duc Theseus was at a wyndow set,

---

2509. Co Ln yomen, Gg Thanne *for* Y.; Gg *omits* and. 2510. Gg $H_4$ as th. as. 2511. $H_4$ Pe na. and cl. 2512. Pe Ln $H_4$ blewe. 2513. Pe Ln $H_4$ peple. 2515. Hn Pe $H_4$ Thebans. 2517. Co Ln holden. 2525. Hn Co Ln chambres. 2527. El Honured.

Arrayed right as he were a god in trone.
The peple preeseth thiderward ful soone
Hym for to seen, and doon heigh reuerence,
And eek to herkne his heste and his sentence.
An heraud on a scaffold made an 'Oo!'
Til al the noyse of the peple was y-do;
And whan he saugh the peple of noyse al stille,
Tho shewed he the myghty dukes wille: —
'The lord hath of his heih discrecioun
Considered that it were destruccioun
To gentil blood to fighten in the gyse
Of mortal bataille now in this emprise;
Wherfore, to shapen that they shal nat dye,
He wole his firste purpos modifye.
'No man ther-fore, vp peyne of los of lyf,
No maner shot, ne polax, ne short knyf,
Into the lystes sende, or thider brynge;
Ne short swerd, for to stoke with poynt bitynge,
No man ne drawe, ne bere it by his syde.
Ne no man shal vnto his felawe ryde
But o cours with a sharp y-grounde spere;
Foyne, if hym list, on foote, hym self to were.
And he that is at meschief shal be take,
And noght slayn, but be broght vnto the stake
That shal ben ordeyned on either syde;
But thider he shal by force, and there abyde.
'And if so falle the cheuyntein be take

2530. Gg ϵ presed. 2531. Pe done him h. r.; $H_4$ doon him r. 2534. El of peple. 2535. El Gg noyse of peple. 2537. Hn Pe Ln heighe. 2539. $H_4$ ϵ þis *for* the; $H_4$ wise *for* gise. 2542. El wolde. 2543. Hn Co Ln vpon p.; Co Ln p. of (Ln on) his lyf. 2544. El Gg *omit 1st* ne; Gg schort p. *and* no *for 2d* ne. 2545. El Gg Ln ne *for* or. 2547. El $H_4$ *omit* it. 2555. a Ln chieftayn, Pe Chevetayn, $H_4$ cheuenten; $H_4$ a *for* the.

On outher syde, or elles sleen his make,
No lenger shal the turneiynge laste.
God spede you! gooth forth, and ley on faste!
With long-swerd and with maces fighteth youre fille.
Gooth now youre wey, this is the lordes wille.'
  The voys of peple touchede the heuene,
So loude cride they with murie steuene,
'God saue swich a lord, that is so good
He wilneth no destruccion of blood!'
  Vp goth the trompes and the melodye,
And to the lystes rit the compaignye
By ordinance, thurgh-out the citee large,
Hanged with clooth of gold, and nat with sarge.
  Ful lik a lord this noble duc gan ryde,
Thise two Thebans vpon either side;
And after rood the queene and Emelye,
And after that another compaignye
Of oon and oother, after hir degre;
And thus they passen thurgh out the citee,
And to the lystes come they by tyme.
It nas not of the day yet fully pryme
Whan set was Theseus ful riche and hye,
Ypolita the queene, and Emelye,
And othere ladyes in degrees aboute.
Vnto the seettes preesseth al the route;
And westward, thurgh the gates vnder Marte,
Arcite, and eek the hondred of his parte,
With baner reed is entred right anon.
And in that selue moment Palamon

---

2556. Pe Ln sclayn. 2558, 2560. IIn ϵ go *for* gooth. 2559. Co Ln with longe swerdes, Pe wiþ swerdes; Co ȝour, Pe longe, *for* with; Hn $H_4$ mace. 2561. Co Ln $H_4$ þe p.; α touched; ϵ $H_4$ *omit* 2*d* the. 2562. Gg longe *for* loude. 2565. α goon. 2570. Gg ϵ thebenys. 2575. Hn coome. 2581. vnder Marte *is glossed* sub Marte *in* α.

Is vnder Venus, Estward in the place,
With baner whyt, and hardy chiere and face.
In al the world to seken vp and doun,
So euene withouten variacioun
Ther nere swiche compaignyes tweye;
For ther was noon so wys that koude seye
That any hadde of oother auauntage
Of worthynesse, ne of estaat, ne age,
So euene were they chosen, for to gesse.
And in two renges faire they hem dresse.
Whan that hir names rad were euerichon,
That in hir nombre gyle were ther noon,
Tho were the gates shet, and cried was loude,
'Do now youre deuoir, yonge knyghtes proude!'
The heraudes lefte hir prikyng vp and doun;
Now ryngen trompes loude and clarioun;
Ther is namoore to seyn, but west and est
In goon the speres ful sadly in arrest;
In gooth the sharpe spore into the syde.
Ther seen men who kan Iuste and who kan ryde;
Ther shyueren shaftes vpon sheeldes thikke;
He feeleth thurgh the hertespoon the prikke.
Vp spryngen speres twenty foot on highte;
Out goon the swerdes as the siluer brighte;
The helmes they tohewen and toshrede,
Out brest the blood with stierne stremes rede;
With myghty maces the bones they tobreste.
He thurgh the thikkeste of the throng gan threste;
Ther stomblen steedes stronge, and doun gooth al;

2594. Gg *omits* in; ε in to *for* in two; Gg ε rynges. 2602. $H_4$ Co Ln goth. 2603. Gg Pe Ln $H_4$ spere *for* spore. 2607. Hn Co Ln spryngeth. 2608. El goth. 2612. Co Ln on *for* of. 2613. El Gg semblen *for* stomblen.

He rolleth vnder foot as dooth a bal;
He foyneth on his feet with his tronchoun,
And he hym hurtleth with his hors adoun;
He thurgh the body is hurt and sithen y-take,
Maugree his heed, and broght vnto the stake;
As forward was, right ther he moste abyde.
Another lad is on that oother syde.

And som tyme dooth hem Theseus to reste,
Hem to refresshe and drynken if hem leste.
Ful ofte a-day han thise Thebanes two
Togydre y-met, and wroght his felawe wo;
Vnhorsed hath ech oother of hem tweye.
Ther nas no tygre in the vale of Galgopheye,
Whan that hir whelp is stole whan it is lite,
So crueel on the hunte as is Arcite
For Ielous herte vpon this Palamoun.
Nę in Belmarye ther nys so fel leoun
That hunted is, or for his hunger wood,
Ne of his praye desireth so the blood,
As Palamoun to sleen his foo Arcite.
The Ielous strokes on hir helmes byte;
Out renneth blood on bothe hir sydes rede.

Som tyme an ende ther is of euery dede;
For er the sonne vnto the reste wente,
The stronge kyng Emetreus gan hente
This Palamon, as he faught with Arcite,
And made his swerd depe in his flessh to byte;
And by the force of twenty is he take
Vnyolden, and y-drawen to the stake.
And in the rescus of this Palamoun

---

2615. ϵ foot. 2616. Hn ϵ hurteth. 2622. El fresshen, Gg frossche, *for* refresshe. 2624. Gg felawys. 2626. Co Pe *omit* the. 2636. Pe $H_4$ on *for* of. 2642. El ydrawe vnto; ϵ drawen *for* ydrawen.

The stronge kyng Lygurge is born adoun,
And kyng Emetreus, for al his strengthe,
Is born out of his sadel a swerdes lengthe,
So hitte him Palamoun, er he were take;
But al for noght, he was broght to the stake.
His hardy herte myghte hym helpe naught;
He moste abyde, whan that he was caught,
By force and eek by composicioun.

Who sorweth now but woful Palamoun,
That moot namoore goon agayn to fighte?
And whan that Theseus hadde seyn this sighte
Vnto the folk that foghten thus echon
He cryde, 'Hoo! Namoore, for it is doon!
I wol be trewe Iuge, and nat partie:
Arcite of Thebes shall haue Emelie
That by his fortune hath hir faire ywonne.'

Anon ther is a noyse of peple bigonne
For Ioye of this, so loude and heighe with alle,
It semed that the lystes sholde falle.

What kan now faire Venus doon aboue?
What seith she now? What dooth this Queene of Loue,
But wepeth so for wantynge of hir wille,
Til that hir teeres in the lystes fille?
She seyde, 'I am ashamed doutelees.'
Saturnus seyde, 'Doghter, hoold thy pees,
Mars hath his wille, his knyght hath al his boone,
And, by myn heed, thow shalt been esed soone.'

The trompes, with the loude mynstralcie,
The heraudes, that ful loude yelle and crie,
Been in hir wele for Ioye of daun Arcite.

---

2654. Hn ϵ $H_4$ seen; Gg Pe $H_4$ that s. 2655. $H_4$ ϵ *omit and insert* Ne noon schal lenger vnto his felaw goon *after* 2656. 2657. El Gg no *for* nat. 2671. Hn ϵ trompours. 2672. El $H_4$ yolle.

But herkneth me, and stynteth now a lite,
Which a myracle ther bifel anon.
This fierse Arcite hath of his helm y-don,
And on a courser for to shewe his face
He priketh endelong the large place,
Lokynge vpward vp-on this Emelye,
And she agayn hym caste a freendlich ye
And was al his in chiere, as in his herte.
Out of the ground a furie infernal sterte,
From Pluto sent at requeste of Saturne,
For which his hors for fere gan to turne,
And leep aside and foundred as he leep.
And er that Arcite may taken keep,
He pighte hym on the pomel of his heed,
That in the place he lay as he were deed,
His brest to-brosten with his sadel-bowe.
As blak he lay as any cole or crowe,
So was the blood y-ronnen in his face.
Anon he was y-born out of the place
With herte soor to Theseus paleys.
Tho was he koruen out of his harneys,
And in a bed y-brought ful faire and blyue;
For he was yet in memorie and alyue,
And alwey criynge after Emelye.
Duc Theseus with al his compaignye
Is comen hoom to Atthenes his citee,
With alle blisse and greet solempnitee;

---

2674. Hn ϵ noyse, $H_4$ but *for* now. 2680. α Ln eye; *after this line* $H_4$ ϵ *add*

For wommen as ($H_4$ as for) to speken in comune,
Thei folwen all the fauour of fortune.

(*The next verse is here marked 2683 so as not to disturb the usual line-numbering.*) 2683. Hn she was; *1st* in *not found in Mss* 2684. $H_4$ ϵ fir *for* furie. 2685. $H_4$ ϵ at þe (Co atte) r.

Al be it that this auenture was falle,
He nolde noght disconforten hem alle.
Men seyde eek that Arcite shal nat dye,
He shal been heeled of his maladye.
And of another thyng they weren as fayn,
That of hem alle was ther noon y-slayn,
Al were they soore y-hurt, and namely oon,
That with a spere was thirled his brest boon.
To othere woundes and to broken armes,
Somme hadden salues and somme hadden charmes;
Fermacies of Herbes, and eek saue
They dronken, for they wolde hir lymes haue.
For which this noble duc, as he wel kan,
Conforteth and honoureth euery man,
And made reuel al the longe nyght
Vnto the straunge lordes, as was right.
Ne ther was holden no disconfitynge
But as a Iustes, or a tourneiynge;
For soothly ther was no disconfiture.
For fallyng nys nat but an auenture,
Ne to be lad by force vnto the stake
Vnyolden, and with twenty knyghtes take,
A persone allone withouten mo,
And haryed forth by arme, foot and too,
And eke his steede dryuen forth with staues,
With footmen, bothe yemen and eek knaues,—
It nas aretted hym no vileynye;
Ther may no man clepen it cowardye.
For which anon duc Theseus leet crye,
To stynten alle rancour and enuye,

---

2710. Hn Pe the *for* his. 2718. $H_4$ ϵ as it was r. 2719. Hn to *for* no. 2722. $H_4$ ϵ *omit* nat; Pe is by an; Ln *omits* an. 2725. El O, Gg on *for* A. 2726. α Gg arm; Gg *omits* forth. 2730. Hn Gg clepe.

The gree as wel of o syde as of oother,
And eyther syde y-lik as ootheres brother,
And yaf hem yiftes after hir degree,
And fully heeld a feeste dayes three;
And conueyed the kynges worthily
Out of his toun a Iournee largely.
And hoom wente euery man the righte way,
Ther was namoore, but 'Fare wel! Haue good day!'
Of this bataille I wol namoore endite,
But speke of Palamoun and of Arcyte.
Swelleth the brest of Arcite, and the soore
Encreeseth at his herte moore and moore.
The clothered blood, for any lechecraft,
Corrupteth, and is in his bouk y-laft,
That neither veyne-blood ne ventusynge,
Ne drynke of herbes may ben his helpynge;
The vertu expulsif, or animal,
Fro thilke vertu cleped natural
Ne may the venym voyden ne expelle.
The pipes of his longes gonne to swelle,
And euery lacerte in his brest adoun
Is shent with venym and corrupcioun.
Hym gayneth neither, for to gete his lif,
Vomyt vpward ne dounward laxatif;
Al is to-brosten thilke regioun,
Nature hath now no dominacioun;
And certeinly ther Nature wol nat wirche
Farewel, Phisik! go ber the man to chirche!
This al and som, that Arcita moot dye.
For which he sendeth after Emelye,

2733. Gg on *for 1st* of. 2737. El conuoyed. 2740. Gg ϵ and haue. 2744. Hn encreese that. 2752. HIn $H_4$ ϵ gan to. 2758. Gg Hn ϵ *omit* now.

And Palamon, that was his cosyn deere.
Thanne seyde he thus as ye shal after heere:
'Naught may the woful spirit in myn herte
Declare a point of alle my sorwes smerte
To yow, my lady, that I loue moost;
But I biquethe the seruyce of my goost
To yow abouen euery creature,
Syn that my lyf may no lenger dure.
Allas the wo! allas, the peynes stronge,
That I for yow haue suffred, and so longe!
Allas, the deeth! Allas, myn Emelye!
Allas, departynge of our compaignye!
Allas, myn hertes queene! allas, my wyf!
Myn hertes lady, endere of my lyf!
What is this world? what asketh men to haue?
Now with his loue, now in his colde graue
Allone, withouten any compaignye.
Fareẅel, my swete foo, myn Emelye!
And softe taak me in youre armes tweye
For loue of God, and herkneth what I seye.
'I haue heer with my cosyn Palamon
Had strif and rancour many a day agon
For loue of yow, and for my Ialousye;
And Iuppiter so wys my soule gye
To speken of a seruaunt proprely,
With alle circumstances trewely,
That is to seyn, trouthe, honour, knyghthede,
Wysdom, humblesse, estaat and heigh kynrede,
Fredom, and al that longeth to that art!

---

2766. El O, Gg on *for* a. 2766. Pe $H_4$ *omit* alle. 2770. *Cf. Introd.*, § 260 b; *but perhaps we should read* now no l. *as in v. 2758.* 2777. Gg askyn; $H_4$ Pe asken; Co Ln axed. 2779–2782. Hn *omits.* 2782. Gg Ln herkene. 2788. Hn ϵ cir. alle. 2789. Co Pe $H_4$ tr. h. and kn.

So Iuppiter haue of my soule part,
As in this world right now ne knowe I non
So worthy to ben loued as Palamon,
That serueth yow and wol doon al his lyf.
And if that euere ye shul ben a wyf,
Foryet nat Palamon, the gentil man,'—
And with that word his speche faille gan.
For from his feet vp to his brest was come
The coold of deeth that hadde him ouercome,
And yet mooreouer, for in his armes two
The vital strengthe is lost and al ago.
Oonly the intellect withouten moore,
That dwelled in his herte syk and soore,
Gan faillen when the herte felte deeth.
Dusked hise eyen two, and failled breeth,
But on his lady yet caste he his ye;
His laste word was, 'Mercy, Emelye!'
His spirit chaunged hous, and wente ther
As I cam neuer, I kan nat tellen wher.
Therfore I stynte, I nam no diuinistre;
'Of soules' fynde I nat in this registre,
Ne me ne list thilke opinions to telle
Of hem, though that they writen wher they dwelle;
Arcite is coold, ther Mars his soule gye.
Now wol I speken forth of Emelye.
Shrighte Emelye, and howleth Palamon,
And Theseus his suster took anon
Swownynge, and baar hir fro the corps away.
What helpeth it to tarien forth the day

2796. $H_4$ Pe shul euer be. 2799. El Gg $H_4$ herte *for* feet; ϵ vnto *for* vp to; Pe þe herte *for* his br. 2801. $H_4$ *omits* for. 2806. Co Ln Busked; Pe dusken; $H_4$ duskyng. 2807. α Gg Ln eye. 2811. ϵ am. 2813. $H_4$ list nat thopynyouns. 2815. Co Pe þat, Ln lat *for* ther.

To tellen how she weep, bothe eue and morwe?
For in swich cas wommen haue swich sorwe
Whan that hir housbondes ben from hem ago,
That for the moore part they sorwen so,
Or ellis fallen in swich maladye
That at the laste certeinly they dye.
Infinite been the sorwes and the teeres
Of olde folk, and folk of tendre yeeres,
In al the toun for deeth of this Theban.
For hym ther wepeth bothe child and man;
So greet a wepyng was ther noon, certayn,
Whan Ector was y-broght al fressh y-slayn
To Troye. Allas! the pitee that was ther,
Cracchynge of chekes, rentynge eek of heer.
'Why woldestow be deed?' thise wommen crye,
'And haddest gold ynough, and Emelye.'
No man myghte gladen Theseus,
Sauynge his olde fader Egeus,
That knew this worldes transmutacioun
As he hadde seyn it vp and doun,
Ioye after wo and wo after gladnesse,
And shewed hem ensamples and liknesse.
'Right as ther dyed neuere man,' quod he,
'That he ne lyuede in erthe in som degree,
Right so ther lyuede neuere man,' he seyde,
'In all this world that som tyme he ne deyde.
This world nys but a thurghfare ful of wo,
And we been pilgrymes passynge to and fro;
Deeth is an ende of euery worldly soore.'

---

2823. El housbond is. 2828. El and eke, $H_4$ þat ben *for* and folk. 2832. Hn ϵ Gg broght. 2840. Hn seyn it chaungen bothe vp, etc.; $H_4$ seen it torne (*see note*). 2842. ϵ scheweth; Hn $H_4$ ϵ ensaumple.

And ouer al this yet seyde he muchel moore
To this effect, ful wisely to enhorte
The peple that they sholde hem reconforte.
Duc Theseus with all his bisy cure
Casteth now wher that the sepulture
Of goode Arcite may best y-maked be,
And eek moost honurable in his degree.
And at the laste he took conclusioun
That ther as first Arcite and Palamoun
Hadden for loue the bataille hem bitwene,
That in the selue groue swoote and grene
Ther as he hadde his amorouse desires,
His compleynte, and for loue his hoote fires,
He wolde make a fyr in which the office
Funeral he myghte al accomplice.
And leet comande anon to hakke and hewe
The okes olde, and leye hem on a rewe,
In colpons wel arrayed for to brenne.
Hise officers with swifte feet they renne,
And ryde anon at his comandement.
And after this Theseus hath y-sent
After a beere, and it al ouer spradde
With clooth of gold, the richeste that he hadde.
And of the same suyte he clad Arcite;
Vpon his hondes hise gloues white,
Eek on his heed a coroune of laurer grene,
And in his hond a swerd ful bright and kene.
He leyde hym, bare the visage, on the beere.
Ther-with he weep that pitee was to heere.

---

2854. El Gg $H_4$ Co Ln cast, Hn Caste, Pe Tasteþ (see § 177); $H_4$ busily *for* now. 2864. ϵ hem all complice. 2865. Hn $H_4$ ϵ anon comande. 2868. $H_4$ ϵ foot *for* feet. 2874. HIn ϵ his, Gg hese, *for* hise; $H_4$ were his gl.; El hadde he gl. 2876. Co Ln *omit* ful.

And for the peple sholde seen hym alle,
Whan it was day he broghte hym to the halle,
That roreth of the criyng and the soun.
Tho cam this woful Theban Palamoun,
With flotery berd and ruggy asshy heeres,
In clothes blake, y-dropped al with teeres;
And, passynge othere of wepynge, Emelye,
The rewefulleste of al the compaignye.
In as muche as the seruyce sholde be
The moore noble and riche in his degree,
Duc Theseus leet forth thre steedes brynge,
That trapped were in steele al gliterynge,
And couered with the armes of daun Arcite.
Vpon thise steedes grete and white,
Ther seten folk, of whiche oon baar his sheeld,
Another his spere vp on his hondes heeld,
The thridde baar with hym his bowe Turkeys
(Of brend gold was the caas, and eek the harneys).
And riden forth a paas with sorweful cheere,
Toward the groue, as ye shul after heere.
The nobleste of the Grekes that ther were
Vpon hir shuldres caryeden the beere,
With slake paas, and eyen rede and wete,
Thurgh-out the citee by the maister strete,
That sprad was al with blak, and wonder hye
Right of the same is the strete y-wrye.
Vpon the right hond wente olde Egeus,
And on that oother syde duc Theseus,
With vessels in hir hand of gold ful fyn

---

2880. Co Ln in to the h. 2881. $H_4$ e cry. 2883. El rugged *for* ruggy; Gg flatery herys. 2892. $H_4$ þe st. that weren g., etc. 2893. El Ln sitten; Pe stoden. 2894. El $H_4$ vp in. 2901. α Gg $H_4$ Co Pe slak (paas *mistaken for singular*, cf. § 101). 2904. $H_4$ is al the s.

Al ful of hony, milk, and blood, and wyn:
Eek Palamon, with ful greet compaignye.
And after that cam woful Emelye,
With fyr in honde, as was that tymẹ the gyse
To do thẹ office of funeral seruyse.
Heigh labour and ful greet apparaillynge
Was at the seruice and the fyr makynge,
That with his grene top the heuen raughte;
And twenty fadme of brede thẹ armes straughte,
This is to seyn, the bowes weren so brode.
Of stree first ther was leyed many a lode;
But how the fyr was maked vp on highte,
And eek the names how the trees highte, —
As ook, firre, birch, asp, alder, holm, popler,
Wylwe, elm, plane, assh, box, chasteyn, lynde, laurer,
Mapul, thorn, bech, hasel, ew, whippeltre, —
How they weren feld shal nat be toold for me;
Ne how the goddes ronnen vp and doun
Disherited of hir habitacioun,
In which they woneden in reste and pees,
Nymphes, Fawnes, and Amadrides;
Ne how the beestes and the briddes alle
Fledden for fere, whan the wodẹ was falle;
Ne how the ground agast was of the light,
That was nat wont to seen the sonne bright;
Ne how the fyr was couched first with stree,
And thannẹ with drye stikkes clouen a thre,
And thannẹ with grene wode and spicerye,

---

2914. $H_4$ Pe Ln and at the f. 2918. *Mss.* leyd (Pe Ln leyde); El $H_4$ ful many. 2920. El that, Gg what *for* how. 2922. El Wylugh; Hn ϵ wylow; Gg $H_4$ wylw; Pe Ln bynd *for* lynde. 2924. El fild. 2926. $H_4$ Disheryt. 2927. El whiche. 2928. Gg $H_4$ ϵ amadries. 2934. El Co stokkes.

And thanne with clooth of gold, and with perrye,
And gerlandes, hangynge with ful many a flour;
The mirre, thencens, with al so greet odour;
Ne how Arcite lay among al this,
Ne what richesse aboute his body is,
Ne how that Emelye, as was the gyse,
Putte in the fyr of funeral seruyse,
Ne how she swowned whan men made the fyr,
Ne what she spak, ne what was hir desyr,
Ne what Ieweles men in the fyr caste
Whan that the fyr was greet and brente faste;
Ne how somme caste hir sheeld and somme hir spere,
And of hir vestimentz whiche that they were,
And coppes full of wyn, and milk, and blood,
Into the fyr, that brente as it were wood;
Ne how the Grekes with an huge route
Thries riden al the fyr aboute
Vpon the left hand with a loud shoutynge,
And thries with hir speres claterynge;
And thries how the ladyes gonne crye,
And how that lad was homward Emelye;
Ne how Arcite is brent to asshen colde,
Ne how that lychewake was y-holde
Al thilke nyght; ne how the Grekes pleye
The wake-pleyes; ne kepe I nat to seye
Who wrastleth best naked with oille enoynt,
Ne who that baar hym best in no disioynt.
I wol nat tellen eek how that they goon

2936. Pe *omits 2d* with; Ln of p. 2937. Hn ful of m.; Gg Pe *omit* ful. 2940. Hn the b. 2943. El *omit* the; $H_4$ wh. she made; ϵ wh. made was the f. 2945. $H_4$ tho c. 2949. Hn ϵ of m. and (Ln. *omits*) w. and b. 2952. El place *for* fyr. 2953. Co Ln bowe shotynge. 2958. $H_4$ *omits;* α lych wake. 2963. Hn ϵ t. al how they; $H_4$ they ben g.

Hoom til Atthenes, whan the pleye is doon;
But shortly to the point thanne wol I wende,
And maken of my longe tale an ende.
By processe and by lengthe of certeyn yeres
Al styntyd is the moornynge and the teres.
Of Grekes by oon general assent,
Thanne semed me, ther was a parlement
At Atthenes, vpon certein poyntz and caas;
Among the whiche poyntz y-spoken was,
To haue with certein contrees alliaunce,
And haue fully of Thebans obeissaunce
For which this noble Theseus anon
Leet senden after gentil Palamon,
Vnwist of hym what was the cause and why;
But in his blake clothes sorwefully
He cam at his comandement in hye.
Tho sente Theseus for Emelye.
Whan they were set, and hust was al the place,
And Theseus abiden hadde a space
Er any word cam from his wise brest,
His eyen sette he ther as was his lest,
And with a sad visage he siked stille;
And after that right thus he seyde his wille:
'The Firste Moeuere of the cause aboue,
Whan he first made the faire cheyne of loue,
Greet was theffect and heigh was his entente.
Wel wiste he why and what therof he mente,
For with that faire cheyne of loue he bond
The fyr, the eyr, the water and the lond,
In certeyn boundes that they may nat flee.

---

2964. Co Ln was d. 2968. Hn ϵ stynt. 2971. Gg poyntys; Hn $H_4$ ϵ vpon a c. poynt. 2972. Gg spokyn *omitting* whiche, Pe *omits* the whiche. 2981. ϵ huyst; $H_4$ hussht.

That same Prince, and that same Moeuere,' quod he,
'Hath stablissed in this wrecched world adoun
Certeyne dayes and duracioun
To al that is engendrid in this place,
Ouer the whiche day they may nat pace,
Al mowe they yet tho dayes wel abregge;
Ther nedeth noon auctoritee to allegge,
For it is preeued by experience,
But that me list declaren my sentence.
Thanne may men by this ordre wel discerne
That thilke Moeuere stable is and eterne.
Wel may men knowe, but it be a fool,
That euery part dirryueth from his hool;
For nature hath taken his bigynnyng
Of no partie or cantel of a thyng,
But of a thyng that parfit is and stable,
Descendynge so til it be corrumpable.
And therfore for his wise purueiaunce
He hath so wel biset his ordinaunce,
That speces of thynges and progressiouns
Shullen enduren by successiouns,
And nat eterne — withouten any lye
This maystow understonde and seen at ye.
'Loo the ook, that hath so long a norisshynge
From tyme that it first bigynneth sprynge,

---

2994. Hn Ln *omit 2d* same; $H_4$ and m. eek. 2998. α which. 2999. Hn ϵ *omit* wel; $H_4$ ȝit wel hered. 3000. El Co needeth nought; El to *omits* to; Gg ϵ to legge (Ln lugge). 3003. Hn $H_4$ ϵ wel *after* men (Pe *omits it*). 3004. Gg stylle and sterne *for* stable etc. 3006. Hn is diryued, Co Ln darreyned, *for* dirryueth. 3007. Hn $H_4$ ϵ hath nat. 3008. α ϵ of c.; Gg of a c.; $H_4$ ne c. 3011. El Gg Pe $H_4$ of *for* for. 3013. Gg Pe specyfie, Co Ln specie *for* speces. 3015. $H_4$ eterne be wiþoute lye. 3016. El Gg Ln eye. 3018. Hn $H_4$ gynneth; Pe $H_4$ first *before* to sp.; $H_4$ ϵ to spr.

And hath so long a lif, as we may see,
Yet at the laste wasted is the tree.
'Considereth eek how that the harde stoon
Vnder oure feet, on which we trede and goon,
Yit wasteth it as it lyth by the weye;
The brode ryuer somtyme wexeth dreye;
The grete townes se we wane and wende;
Thanne may ye se that al this thyng hath ende.
'Of man and womman seen we wel also,
That nedeth in oon of thise termes two,
This is to seyn, in youthe or elles age,
He moot be deed — the kyng as shal a page;
Som in his bed, som in the depe see,
Som in the large feeld, as men may se;
Ther helpeth noght, al goth that ilke weye:
Thanne may I seyn that al this thyng moot deye.
'What maketh this but Iuppiter, the kyng,
The which is prince and cause of alle thyng,
Conuertynge al vnto his propre welle
From which it is dirryued, sooth to telle?
And here-agayns no creature on lyue
Of no degree auailleth for to stryue.
'Thanne is it wysdom, as it thynketh me,
To maken vertu of necessitee,
And take it weel that we may not eschue,
And namely that to vs alle is due.
And whoso gruccheth ought, he dooth folye,
And rebel is to hym that al may gye.
And certeinly a man hath moost honour

---

3019. Hn ϵ ye *for* we. 3022. Hn $H_4$ ϵ foot *for* feet. 3024. Hn It wasteth as, etc. 3025. El toures *for* townes. 3026. Gg may I say, $H_4$ may I see, Hn se ye, ϵ ye se *for* may ye see. 3028. ϵ the termes. 3032. Hn ϵ ye *for* men. 3038. Hn he *for* it.

To dyen in his excellence and flour,
Whan he is siker of his goode name.
Thanne hath he doon his freend ne hym no shame.
And gladder oghte his freend been of his deeth,
Whan with honour is yolden vp his breeth,
Than whan his name apalled is for age,
For al forgeten is his vassellage.
Thanne is it best, as for a worthy fame,
To dyen whan that he is best of name.
'The contrarie of al this is wilfulnesse.
Why grucchen we, why haue we heuynesse,
That goode Arcite, of chiualrie flour,
Departed is with deutee and honour
Out of this foule prisoun of this lyf?
Why grucchen heere his cosyn and his wyf
Of his welfare that loued hem so weel?
Kan he hem thank — Nay, God woot, neuer a deel —
That bothe his soule and eek hem-self offende?
And yet they mowe hir lustes nat amende.
'What may I conclude of this longe serye,
But after wo I rede vs to be merye,
And thanken Iuppiter of al his grace?
And er that we departen from this place
I rede we makë of sorwes two,
O parfit Ioye lastynge euermo.
And looketh now wher moost sorwe is her-inne,
Ther wol we first amenden and bigynne.
'Suster,' quod he, 'this is my fulle assent,

---

3051. Co Ln freendes. 3052. El vpyolden is; Hn ϵ yolden is vp (*exc.* Ln); $H_4$ ϵ þe br. 3054. Gg wasseylage; Co Ln vesselage. 3059. $H_4$ ϵ þe flour. 3060. Hn ϵ with d. and with h.; Gg deynte; $H_4$ worschip. 3062. Hn $H_4$ ϵ (*exc.* Pe) gruccheth. 3071. $H_1$ *inserts* that *before* we. 3073. *Imperfect in* Gg. 3074. Gg *imperfect to 3088.*

With al thauys heere of my parlement,
That gentil Palamon, youre owene knyght,
That serueth yow with wille, herte, and myght,
And euere hath doon syn ye first hym knewe,
That ye shul of your grace vpon hym rewe,
And taken hym for housbonde and for lord;
Lene me youre hond for this is oure accord.
Lat se now of youre wommanly pitee;
He is a kynges brother sone, *pardee*,
And though he were a poure bacheler,
Syn he hath serued yow so many a yeer
And had for yow so greet aduersitee,
It moste been considered, leeueth me,
For gentil mercy oghte to passen right.'
Thanne seyde he thus to Palamon ful right:
'I trowe ther nedeth litel sermonyng
To make yow assente to this thyng;
Com neer, and taak youre lady by the hond.'
Bitwixen hem was maad anon the bond
That highte matrimoigne, or mariage,
By al the conseil and the baronage.
And thus with alle blisse and melodye
Hath Palamon y-wedded Emelye.
And God, that al this wyde world hath wroght,
Sende hym his loue that hath it deere aboght,
For now is Palamon in alle wele,
Lyuynge in blisse, in richesse, and in heele;
And Emelye hym loueth so tendrely,

---

3077. El thyn *for* youre. 3078. Hn w. and harte might; Co Ln w. and h. and m; $H_4$ herte w. and m; $H_4$ Hn *e omit* that. 3079. El syn þat ye; $H_4$ fyrst tyme ye. 3089. Gg *begins again*. 3090. Hn *e* the knyght *for* ful ryght. 3096. Gg cuntre *for* conseil. 3099. Hn *e omit* wide. 3100. El *omits* hath.

And he hir serueth al-so gentilly,
That neuere was ther no word hem bitwene
Of Ialousie, or any oother tene.

Thus endeth *Palamon and Emelye;*
And God saue al this faire compaignye.
*Amen.*

**Heere is ended the Knyghtes Tale.**

---

3104. *Mss. exc.* $H_4$ *omit* al (*probably correction in* $H_4$). 3105. Hn Co Ln *omit* neuere; Pe *omits* was ther; Ln that ther no w. was, etc. 3108. Amen *found only in* a.

# THE NONNES PREESTES TALE

## THIS IS THE PROLOGE OF THE NONNES PRESTES TALE.

(B 3957–4636)

'Hoo!' quod the Knyght, 'Good Sire, namoore of this!
That ye han seyd is right ynough, y-wis,
And muchel moore; for litel heuynesse
Is right ynough to muche folk, I gesse.
I seye for me, it is a greet disese,
Where as men han been in greet welthe and ese,
To heeren of hir sodeyn fal allas!
And the contrarie is ioye and greet solas,
As whan a man hath ben in poure estaat,
And clymbeth vp, and wexeth fortunat,
And there abideth in prosperitee.
Swich thyng is gladsom, as it thynketh me,
And of swich thyng were goodly for to telle.'
'Ye,' quod oure Hoost, 'by Seinte Poules belle,
Ye seye right sooth! This Monk he clappeth lowde;
He spak how "Fortune couered with a clowde" —
I noot neuer what, and also of a "Tragedie"
Right now ye herde. And, *pardee*, no remedie
It is for to biwaille, ne compleyne
That that is doon; and als it is a peyne,

---

*This prologue is not found in* Gg, *which begins with v.* 4049 *on folio* 365; *folios* 363, 364 *are missing from this Ms.* Sloane 1685 (Sl) *supplies its place in Six-Text.* 3960 Sl Co Ln as I gesse (Ln gest). 3961–3980. *Omitted in* Hn Co Pe: El Ln *and some Mss. of* $Tc_1$ *group given in Six-Text contain the passage.*

As ye han seyd, to heere of heuynesse.
Sire Monk! Namoore of this, so God yow blesse!
Youre tale anoyeth all this compaignye.
Swich talkyng is nat worth a boterflye,
For ther inne is ther no desport ne game.
Wherfore, Sir Monk, Daun Piers by youre name,
I pray yow hertely telle vs somwhat elles.
For sikerly, nere clynkyng of youre belles
That on youre bridel hange on euery syde,
By heuene kyng, that for vs alle dyde,
I sholde er this han fallen doun for sleep,
Althogh the slough had neuer been so deep:
Thanne hadde youre tale al be toold in veyn.
For certeinly, as that thise clerkes seyn,
Where as a man may haue noon audience,
Noght helpeth it to tellen his sentence.
And wel I woot the substance is in me,
If any thyng shal wel reported be.
Sir, sey somwhat of huntyng, I yow preye.'
'Nay!' quod this Monk, 'I haue no lust to pleye.
Now lat another telle, as I haue toold.'
Thanne spak oure Hoost with rude speche and boold,
And seyde vnto the Nonnes Preest anon:
'Com neer, thou preest, com hyder, thou "Sir Iohn!"
Telle vs swich thyng as may oure hertes glade.
Be blithe, though thou ryde vpon a iade —
What thogh thyn hors be bothe foule and lene?
If he wol serue thee rekke nat a bene,
Looke that thyn herte be murie eueremo.'

---

3981. Hn Co Pe Youre tales don vs *for* For ther inne is ther; Ln *omits second* ther. 3982. Hn O daun, Pe or daun. 3987. Co Ln Sl schal *for* sholde. 4000. ϵ *omits second* thou. 4004. Co Ln Sl rekke þe.

'Yis, sir,' quod he, 'yis Hoost, so moot I go,
But I be myrie, y-wis I wol be blamed.'
And right anon his tale he hath attamed,
And thus he seyde vn to vs euerichon,
This sweete preest, this goodly man, Sir Iohn: —

**Heere Bigynneth the Nonnes Preestes Tale of the Cok and Hen, — Chauntecleer and Pertelote.**

A poure wydwe, somdel stape in age,
Was whilom dwellyng in a narwe cotage
Beside a groue stondynge in a dale.
This wydwe, of which I telle yow my tale,
Syn thilke day that she was last a wyf,
In pacience ladde a ful symple lyf,
For litel was hir catel and hir rente.
By housbondrie of swich as God hir sente
She foond hirself, and eek hire doghtren two.
Thre large sowes hadde she, and namo,
Three kyn and eek a sheep that highte Malle.
Ful sooty was hir bour and eek hir halle,
In which she eet ful many a sklendre meel;
Of poynaunt sauce hir neded neuer a deel,
No deyntee morsel passed thurgh hir throte.
Hir diete was accordant to hir cote;
Repleccion ne made hir neuere sik,

---

4006. Co Ln Sl ȝis, hoste quod he so mote I ryde or go. 4010. Co Ln Sl goode *for* goodly. Pe My tale I wil bygynne anon *for* 4010. 4011. Hn poore; Co pouere; Ln pouer; $H_4$ ϵ wydow (Co wydewe); $H_4$ ϵ stope (*cp.* E 1514 *where* α stapen, Gg schapyn). 4013. ϵ Besydes. 4015. ϵ Sybens (Ln Seþþen). 4021. El keen. 4023. Pe Ln *omit* Ful. 4025. ϵ *omits* thurgh.

Attempree dietę was al hir phisik,
And exercise, and hertes suffisaunce.
The goute lette hir no-thyng for to daunce,
Napoplexie shente nat hir heed;
No wyn ne drank she, neither whit ne reed.
Hir bord was serued moost with whit and blak,
Milk and broun breed, in which she foond no lak;
Seynd bacoun and somtyme an ey or tweye,
For she was as it were a maner deye.
A yeerd she hadde, enclosed al aboute
With stikkes and a drye dych withoute,
In which she hadde a cok heet Chauntecleer.
In al the land of crowyng nas his peer,
His voys was murier than the murie orgon
On messedayes that in the chirche gon.
Wel sikerer was his crowyng in his logge
Than is a clokke, or an abbey orlogge;
By nature he knew eche ascencioun
Of equynoxial in thilke toun,
For whan degrees fiftene weren ascended,
Thanne crew he that it myghte nat been amended.
His coomb was redder than the fyn coral
And batailled as it were a castel wal;
His bylę was blak, and as the Ieet it shoon;
Lyk asure were hisę legges and his toon;
His nayles whitter than the lylye flour,
And lyk the burned gold was his colour.

---

4030. ϵ to *for* for to. 4031. $H_4$ ϵ Ne Poplexie. 4037. ϵ gardyn *for* yeerd. 4039. $H_4$ ϵ þat highte *for* heet. 4040. Pe Ln was, $H_4$ was noon *for* nas. 4043. Co Pe þe *for 1st* his. 4044. Hn Co Ln any *for* an. 4045. El Pe crew *for* knew; $H_4$ knew he. 4046. El Ln of the equ.; ϵ of *for* in. 4047. ϵ discendid. 4048. ϵ knew *for* crew. 4049. Gg *begins*. 4053. El whiter. 4054. ϵ ylike *for* lyk the; Hn ϵ burnisht.

This gentil cok hadde in his gouernaunce
Seuene hennes for to doon al his plesaunce,
Whiche were hise sustres and his paramours,
And wonder lyk to hym, as of colours;
Of whiche the faireste hewed on hir throte
Was cleped faire damoyselę Pertelote.
Curteys she was, discreet and debonaire,
And compaignable, and bar hyr-self so faire,
Syn thilke day that she was seuen nyght oold,
That trewely she hath the herte in hoold
Of Chauntecleer, loken in euery lith;
He loued hir so that wel was hym therwith.
But swiche a ioye was it to here hem synge,
Whan that the brighte sonne bigan to sprynge,
In sweete accord, 'My lief is faren in londe'—
(For thilke tyme, as I haue understonde,
Beestes and briddes koude speke and synge!)
And so bifel that in a dawenynge,
As Chauntecleer among hise wyues alle
Sat on his perche that was in the halle,
And next hym sat this faire Pertelote,
This Chauntecleer gan gronen in his throte,
As man that in his dreem is drecched soore.
And whan that Pertelote thus herde hym roore,
She was agast, and seyde, 'Herte deere!
What eyleth yow, to grone in this manere?
Ye been a verray sleper; fy, for shame!'
And he answerde and seyde thus: 'Madame,
I pray yow that ye take it nat agrief;

4063. Gg $H_4$ ȝeer *for* nyght. 4066. Gg hym *for* hir. 4067. Gg Ln it was, Co Pe as it was *for* was it. 4068. Hn $H_4$ Co Pe gan *for* bigan. 4072. El the *for* a; Pe in þe dawynge. 4074. Gg an, $H_4$ his *for* the. 4075. Gg Dame P. *for* this f. P. 4077. Co Pe man þat is in his dr. dr. 4079. El o herte d.

By God, me mette I was in swich meschief
Right now, that yet myn herte is soore afright.
Now God,' quod he, 'my sweuene recche aright,
And kepe my body out of foul prisoun!
Me mette how that I romed vp and doun
Withinne our yeerd, wheer as I saugh a beest
Was lyk an hound, and wolde han maad areest
Vpon my body, and han had me deed.
His colour was bitwixe yelow and reed,
And tipped was his tayl, and bothe his eeris,
With blak, vnlyk the remenant of his heeris.
His snowte smal, with glowynge eyen tweye;
Yet of his look for feere almoost I deye;
This caused me my gronyng doutelees.'
'Avoy!' quod she, 'fy on yow, hertelees!
Allas!' quod she, 'for by that God aboue!
Now han ye lost myn herte and al my loue.
I kan nat loue a coward, by my feith!
For certes, what so any womman seith,
We alle desiren, if it myghte bee,
To han housbondes hardy, wise, and free,
And secree, and no nygard, ne no fool,
Ne hym that is agast of euery tool,
Ne noon auauntour. By that God aboue!
How dorste ye seyn, for shame, vnto youre loue
That any thyng myghte make yow aferd?
Haue ye no mannes herte, and han a berd?
Allas! and konne ye been agast of sweuenys?
No thyng, God woot, but vanitee in sweuene is.

---

4084. El me thoughte *for* me mette; ϵ þat I was. 4086. $H_4$ ϵ rede *for* recche. 4091. $H_4$ ϵ wold han had, Gg anhad *for* han had. 4092. ϵ whit *for* yelow. 4105. ϵ ne *for 2d* and. 4112-4414. *omitted in* Co Ln.

Sweuenes engendren of repleccioũns,
And ofte of fume and of complecciouns,
Whan humours been to habundant in a wight.
Certes this dreem, which ye han met to-nyght,
Cometh of the greete superfluytee
Of youre rede Colera, *pardee*,
Which causeth folk to dreden in hir dremes
Of arwes, and of fyr with rede lemes,
Of rede beestes, that they wol hem byte,
Of contek and of whelpes, grete and lyte;
Right as the humour of malencolie
Causeth ful many a man in sleep to crie
For feere of blake beres, or boles blake,
Of elles blake deueles wole hem take.
Of othere humours koude I telle also
That werken many a man in sleep ful wo;
But I wol passe as lightly as I kan.
Lo Catoun, which that was so wys a man,
Seyde he nat thus; "Ne do no fors of dremes"?
'Now, sire,' quod she, 'whan we flee fro the bemes,
For Goddes loue, as taak som laxatyf.
Vp peril of my soule and of my lyf,
I conseille yow the beste, I wol nat lye,
That bothe of colere and of malencolye
Ye purge yow. And for ye shal nat tarie,
Though in this toun is noon apothecarie,
I shal myself to herbes techen yow
That shul been for your hele, and for your prow;

4116. Co Ln herd, Pe had *for* met. 4117. El of greet. 4119. $H_4$ ϵ dremen *for* dreden. 4120. El fyre. 4121. ϵ *omits* they. 4123. Co Ln *omit* of. 4124. ϵ *omits* ful. 4125. Gg $H_4$ or of, Co and of, Pe Ln and *for* or. 4132. El ye *for* we; Hn $H_4$ thise bemes. 4133. Gg *omits* as. 4136, 4137 *are omitted in* $H_4$. 4138. ϵ þough þat in. 4140. ϵ *omits 1st* for.

And in oure yeerd tho herbes shal I fynde
The whiche han of hir propretee by kynde
To purge yow, bynethe and eek aboue.
Forget nat this for Goddes owene loue!
Ye been ful colęryk of complecciouṇ;
Ware the sonne in his ascencioun
Ne fynde yow nat repleet of humours hoote.
And if it do, I dar wel leye a grote
That ye shul haue a feuere terciane,
Or an agu, that may be youre bane.
A day or two ye shul haue digestyues
Of wormes, er ye take youre laxatyues
Of lawriol, centaure and fumetere,
Or elles of ellebor that groweth there.
Of katapuce or of gaitrys beryis,
Of herbe-yue growyng in oure yeerd ther mery is;
Pekke hem vp right as they growe and ete hem yn.
Be myrie, housbonde! For youre fader kyn,
Dredeth no dreem — I kan sey yow namoore!'
'Madame,' quod he, '*graunt mercy* of youre loore.
But natheless, as touchyng daun Catoun,
That hath of wysdom swich a greet renoun,
Though that he bad no dremes for to drede,
By God, men may in olde bookes rede
Of many a man moore of auctorite
Than euer Caton was, so moot I thee,
That al the reuers seyn of his sentence,
And han wel founden by experience

---

4141. ϵ þe gardyn *for* oure yeerd; Gg Pe two *for* tho. 4147. ϵ *omits* nat; ϵ of (Co and) ȝoure h.; $H_4$ in h. 4153. ϵ and of fum. 4155. Gg gattris; Pe gatys; $H_4$ gaytre. 4156. Gg Pe or *for* Of (*see note*); Hn Gg that growith; $H_4$ groweþ; Hn they *for* ther *and* ther *for* they *in next verse*. 4160. ϵ gramercy (Ln gremercy). ϵ *omits* 4163 *and inserts* Oon of þe grettest auctor out of drede *after* 4164.

That dremes been significaciouns
As wel of Ioye as of tribulaciouns,
That folk enduren in this lif present.
Ther nedeth make of this noon argument,
The verray preeue sheweth it in dede.
Oon of the gretteste auctour that men rede
Seith thus: 'That whilom two felawes wente
On pilgrimage, in a ful good entente.
And happed so they coomen in a toun,
Wher as ther was swich congregacioun
Of peple, and eek so streit of herbergage,
That they ne founde as muche as o cotage
In which they bothe myghte y-logged bee.
Wherfore they mosten of necessitee
As for that nyght departen compaignye;
And ech of hem gooth to his hostelrye,
And took his loggyng as it wolde falle.
That oon of hem was logged in a stalle,
Fer in a yeerd, with oxen of the plough;
That oother man was logged wel ynough,
As was his auenture or his fortune,
That vs gouerneth alle as in commune.
And so bifel that longe er it were day,
This man mette in his bed, ther as he lay,
How that his felawe gan vpon hym calle,
And seyde, "Allas! for in an oxes stalle
This nyght I shal be mordred ther I lye.
Now helpe me, deere brother, or I dye;

4170. Hn Pe *omit 2d* of. 4172. ϵ needeþ nouȝt to m. 4174. Gg autorys, $H_4$ auctorite *for* auctour. 4177. $H_4$ com into; Ln cam into; Co camen into: Pe commen into. 4179. ϵ of streight *for* so str. of. 4180. Gg ϵ a, $H_4$ oon *for* o. 4181. Gg $H_4$ myght (Gg myghe) bothe. 4183. $H_4$ depart her; ϵ depart of. 4193. ϵ on *for* vpon.

In alle haste com to me!" he seyde.
This man out of his sleep for feere abrayde;
But whan that he was wakened of his sleep,
He turned hym and took of this no keep;
Hym thoughte his dreem nas but a vanitee.
Thus twies in his slepyng dremed hee,
And atte thridde tyme yet his felawe
Cam, as hym thoughte, and seide, "I am now slawe!
Bihoold my bloody woundes depe and wyde;
Arys vp erly in the morwe tyde,
And at the westgate of the toun," quod he,
"A carte ful of donge ther shaltow se,
In which my body is hid ful priuely;
Do thilke carte arresten boldely.
My gold caused my mordre, sooth to sayn."
And tolde hym euery point how he was slayn,
With a ful pitous face, pale of hewe.
And truste wel, his dreem he foond ful trewe;
For on the morwe as soone as it was day
To his felawes In he took the way,
And whan that he cam to this oxes stalle,
After his felawe he bigan to calle.
The hostiler answerede hym anon
And seyde, "Sire, your felawe is agon;
As soone as day he wente out of the toun."
This man gan fallen in suspecioun,
Remembrynge on hise dremes that he mette,
And forth he gooth, no lenger wolde he lette,
Vnto the westgate of the toun, and fond

4200 4205 4210 4215 4220 4225

4201. ϵ was nought but (Pe Ln a v.) v. 4202. $H_4$ Ln sleepe *for* slepyng. 4204. ϵ *omits* and seide; ϵ yslawe. 4207. Hn atte westgate. 4219. α answerde. 4222. ϵ in grete s., $H_4$ Hn in a s. 4223. Gg Pe rem. hym on; Gg the *for* hise.

A dong carte went as it were to donge lond,
That was arrayed in that same wise
As ye han herd the dede man deuyse.
And with an hardy herte he gan to crye
Vengeance and Iustice of this felonye.
"My felawe mordred is this same nyght,
And in this carte heere he lith gapyng vpright.
I crye out on the ministres," quod he,
"That sholden kepe and reulen this citee!
Harrow! allas! heere lith my felawe slayn!"'
What sholde I moore vnto this tale sayn?
The peple out sterte and caste the cart to grounde,
And in the myddel of the dong they founde
The dede man that mordred was al newe.
O blisful God, that art so Iust and trewe!
Lo, how that thou biwreyest mordre alway!
Mordre wol out, that se we day by day;
Mordre is so wlatsom and abhomynable
To God, that is so Iust and resonable,
That he ne wol nat suffre it heled be,
Though it abyde a yeer, or two, or thre.
Mordre wol out, this my conclusioun.
And right anon, ministres of that toun

---

4226. El *omits* went; ϵ a d. c. as he wente to d. þe londe. 4227. $H_4$ ϵ þe *for 2d* that. 4232. ϵ *omits* heere; $H_4$ And in þis carte he lith heer vpright. 4233. Hn *omits* out. 4233–4238. ϵ *omits*. (*According to Six-Text* $Sl_1$ $Sl_2$ $Ro_2$ $Har_2$, *other Mss. of* Co *and* Pe *groups, also omit them; but not* $Har_3$, *known to have a second source outside* Co *group, nor* $Ro_1$ *known to have a second source in* Dd *group. It would be interesting to know whether the verses are found in the* Se *and* $Tc_1$ *groups, but as far as our knowledge goes, it supports the theory that the relationship of Mss. worked out by Zupitza for the "Pardoner's Tale" holds for the "Nonnes Preestes Tale."*) 4237. Hn $H_4$ $Ro_1$ vp *for* out. 4247. $H_4$ ϵ þisis *for* this. 4248. ϵ þe (Ln þe same) *for* that.

Han hent the carter, and so soore hym pyned,
And eek the hostiler so soore engyned,
That they biknewe hir wikkednesse anon,
And were an-hanged by the nekke bon.'
Heere may men seen that dremes been to drede.
And certes in the same book I rede,
Right in the nexte chapitre after this, —
I gabbe nat, so haue I joye or blis, —
Two men that wolde han passed ouer see
For certeyn cause into a fer contree,
If that the wynd ne hadde been contrarie,
That made hem in a citee for to tarie
That stood ful myrie vpon an hauen syde; —
But on a day agayn the euen-tyde
The wynd gan chaunge, and blew right as hem leste.
Iolif and glad they wenten vnto reste,
And casten hem ful erly for to saille.
But herkneth! to that o man fil a greet meruaille:
That oon of hem in slepyng as he lay,
Hym mette a wonder dreem agayn the day.
Him thoughte a man stood by his beddes syde
And hym comanded that he sholde abyde,
And seyde hym thus: "If thou tomorwe wende,
Thou shalt be dreynt, my tale is at an ende."
He wook, and tolde his felawe what he mette,
And preyde hym his viage to lette
As for that day, he preyede hym to byde.
His felawe that lay by his beddes syde

---

4249. ϵ *omits* so. 4250. ϵ ferre *for* soore. 4252. ϵ weren h. *for* were an-h. 4255. ϵ I rede of *for* after. 4256. Co Ln & *for* or. 4257. ϵ þe *for* ouer. 4263. $H_4$ *omits* blew; ϵ blowen (Ln blew) as. 4264. El wente vnto hir r.; Gg wente to here. 4266. Co Ln herkne þat oo man fell in gret pereyle; Pe herken how oo m. f. in gr. perile. 4274. Gg ϵ for to *for* to. 4275. α preyde; Gg forto *for* to.

Gan for to laughe, and scorned him ful faste.
"No dreem," quod he, "may so myn herte agaste,
That I wol lette for to do my thynges.
I sette nat a straw by thy dremynges,
For sweuenes been but vanytees and Iapes.
Men dreme al day of owles and of apes,
And of many a maze therwithal;
Men dreme of thyng that neuer was ne shal.
But sith I see that thou wolt heere abyde,
And thus forslewthen wilfully thy tyde,
God woot it reweth me; and haue good day!"
And thus he took his leue, and wente his way.
But er that he hadde half his cours y-seyled,
Noot I nat why ne what myschaunce it eyled,
But casuelly the shippes botme rente,
And ship and man vnder the water wente
In sighte of othere shippes it bisyde,
That with hem seyled at the same tyde!
And therefore, faire Pertelote so deere,
By swiche ensamples olde yet maistow leere
That no man sholde been to recchelees
Of dremes; for I seye thee doutelees,
That many a dreem ful soore is for to drede.
Lo, in the lyf of Seint Kenelm I rede,
That was Kenulphus sone, the noble kyng
Of Mercenrike, how Kenelm mette a thyng.
A lite er he was mordred, on a day
His mordre in his auysioun he say.
His norice hym expowned euery deel

4278. ϵ *omits* so. 4282. α or *for* and. 4293. Gg *omits* it; $H_1$ þer, Co Pe him, Ln hem *for* it. 4294. $H_4$ ϵ him *for* hem. 4295. ϵ he seyde *for* faire. 4302. α, ϵ (Ln Mercenrike) Mertenrike; $H_4$ mertinrike; Gg Merturyke. 4303. $H_4$ lutel he; Co Pe *omit* he.

His sweuene, and bad hym for to kepe hym weel
For traisoun. But he nas but seuen yeer oold,
And therfore litel tale hath he toold
Of any dreem, so hooly was his herte.
By God, I hadde leuerę than my sherte
That ye hadde rad his legende as haue I.
Dame Pertelote, I sey yow trewely,
Macrobeus, that writ the auisioun
In Affrike of the worthy Cipioun,
Affermeth dremes, and seith that they been
Warnynge of thynges that men after seen;
And forther-moore, I pray yow looketh wel
In the Olde Testament of Daniel,
If he heeld dremes any vanitee.
Reed eek of Ioseph, and ther shul ye see
Wher dremes be somtyme, — I sey nat alle, —
Warnynge of thynges that shul after falle.
Looke of Egiptę the kyng, daun Pharao,
His baker and his butiller also,
Wher they ne felte noon effect in dremes.
Whoso wol seken actes of sondry remes
May rede of dremes many a wonder thyng.
Lo, Cresus, which that was of Lyde kyng,
Mette he nat that he sat vpon a tree,
Which signified he sholde anhanged bee?
Lo heere Andromacha, Ectores wyf,
That day that Ector sholde lese his lyf,
She dremed on the same nyght biforn,
How that the lyf of Ector sholde be lorne,

---

4307. Gg from tr.; Gg ϵ was *for* nas; ϵ *omits 2d* but; $H_4$ for *for 1st* but. 4309. El is *for* was. 4311. ϵ herde (l.n *omits*) *for* rad. 4314. Gg ϵ Ciprioun. 4318. ϵ *omits* In. 4319. ϵ of any v. 4321. $H_4$ ϵ whebir *for* wher.

If thilke day he wente into bataille.
She warned hym, but it myghte nat auaille;
He wente for to fighte natheles,
But he was slayn anon of Achilles.
But thilke tale is al to longe to telle,
And eek it is ny day, I may nat dwelle.
Shortly I seye, as for conclusioun,
That I shal han of this auisioun
Adversitee; and I seye forthermoor,
That I ne telle of laxatyues no stoor,
For they been venymes, I woot it weel;
I hem diffye, I loue hem neuer a deel!
Now let us speke of myrthe, and stynte al this.
Madame Pertelote, so haue I blis,
Of o thyng God hath sent me large grace;
For whan I se the beautee of youre face,
Ye been so scarlet reed aboute your yen,
It maketh al my drede for to dyen,
For also sikẹr as *In principio*,
*Mulier est hominis confusio,*—
Madame, the sentence of this Latyn is,
"Womman is mannes joye, and al his blis";
For whan I feele a-nyght your softe syde,
. . . . . .
. . . . . .
I am so ful of joye and of solas,
That I diffye bothe sweuene and dreem.'
And with that word he fly doun fro the beem,

---

4338. Hn And *for* But; ϵ *omits* anon (Co of oon A.). 4339. El forto telle. 4343. ϵ Of aduersitees. 4344. Co nel, Pe ne wil, Ln will *for* ne. 4345. ϵ right *for* it. 4349. $H_4$ Ln hath me sent; Co me haþ sent. 4351. *Mss.* eyen. 4352. Hn Gg $H_4$ Co Ln deyen. 4360. $H_4$ ϵ *omits 2d* of. 4362. Hn Gg fley; $H_4$ Co fleigh; Pe fleegh; Ln flieþ.

For it was day, and eke hise hennes alle.
And with a chuk he gan hem for to calle,
For he hadde founde a corn lay in the yerd.
Real he was, he was namoore aferd,

. . . . . .

. . . . . .

He looketh as it were a grym leoun,
And on hise toos he rometh vp and doun;
Hym deigned nat to sette his foot to grounde.
He chukketh whan he hath a corn y-founde,
And to hym rennen thanne hise wyues alle.
Thus roial as a prince is in an halle,
Leue I this Chauntecleer in his pasture,
And after wol I telle his auenture.

Whan that the monthe in which the world bigan,
That highte March, whan God first maked man,
Was compleet, and passed were also,
Syn March bigan, thritty dayes and two,
Bifel that Chauntecleer in al his pryde,
Hise seuene wyues walkynge him bisyde,
Caste vp hise eyen to the brighte sonne
That in the signe of Taurus hadde y-ronne
Twenty degrees and oon, and som-what moore,
And knew by kynde, and by noon oother loore,
That it was pryme, and crew with blisful steuene.
'The sonne,' he seyde, 'is clomben vp on heuene
Fourty degrees and oon, and moore y-wis.
Madame Pertelote, my worldes blis,

---

4366. ε *omits 2d* he was. 4370. ε romed. 4371. $H_4$ Gg deyneth. 4372. Hn $H_4$ And, ε Ay *for* He. 4373. ε ranne. 4374. Hn $H_4$ ε his *for* an. 4376. ε of his au. 4380. $H_4$ tway monþes and dayes tuo. 4382. El by his syde *for* him bisyde. 4384. ε was *for* hadde. 4386. ε He knew. 4389. Gg 90, $H_4$ Twenty *for* Fourty.

Herkneth thise blisful briddes how they synge,
And se the fresshe floures how they sprynge;
Ful is myn herte of reuel and solas!'
But sodeynly hym fil a sorweful cas;
For 'euer the latter ende of ioye is wo.'
God woot that worldly ioye is soone ago,
And if a rethor koude faire endite,
He in a cronycle saufly myghte it write,
As for a souereyn notabilitee.
Now euery wys man, lat him herkne me;
This storie is al so trewe, I vndertake,
As is the book of Launcelot de Lake,
That wommen holde in ful greet reuerence.
Now wol I torne agayn to my sentence.
A colfox ful of sly iniquitee
That in the groue hadde wonned yeres three,
By heigh ymaginacioun forn-cast,
The same nyght thurgh-out the hegges brast
Into the yerd ther Chauntecleer the faire
Was wont, and eek his wyues, to repaire.
And in a bed of wortes stille he lay,
Til it was passed undren of the day,
Waitynge his tyme on Chauntecleer to falle;
As gladly doon thise homycides alle
That in await liggen to mordre men.
O false mordrour lurkynge in thy den!
O newe Scariot, newe Genyloun!

---

4391. ϵ Herkne how þese blisful briddes synge. 4395. ϵ sone ago *for* wo. 4396. ϵ And comunly often tyme it falleþ so. 4398. ϵ in a (Pe *omits* a) cr. (Co. Cronique) mighte saufly write; $H_4$ hem a cronique s. m. he wr. 4400. Gg now *for* lat h.; ϵ *omits* lat h. 4403. $H_4$ huld; Gg Co Ln heelde. 4404. El come *for* torne. 4405. ϵ ful (Pe *omits*) of sleighte and i.; Hn sley; $H_4$ ful sleigh of. 4416. ϵ roukyng *for* lurkynge.

False dissymulour, O Greek Synoun,
That broghtest Troye al outrely to sorwe!
O Chauntecleer, acursed be that morwe,
That thou into that yerd flaugh fro the bemes!
Thou were ful wel y-warned by thy dremes
That thilke day was perilous to thee.
But what that God forwoot moot nedes bee
After the opinioun of certein clerkis.
Witnesse on hym that any parfit clerk is,
That in scole is greet altercacioun
In this mateere, and greet disputisoun,
And hath been of an hundred thousand men.
But I ne kan nat bulte it to the bren,
As kan the hooly doctour Augustyn,
Or Boece, or the bisshop Bradwardyn,
Wheither that Goddes worthy forwityng
Streyneth me nedely to doon a thyng,—
'Nedely' clepe I symple necessitee,—
Or elles if free choys be graunted me
To do that same thyng, or do it noght,
Though God forwoot it er that it was wroght;
Or if his wityng streyneth neuer a deel,
But by necessitee condicioneel.
I wil nat han to do of swich mateere,
My tale is of a cok, as ye may heere,
That took his conseil of his wyf with sorwe,
To walken in the yerd vpon that morwe
That he hadde met that dreem that I yow tolde.

4421. Hn $H_4$ ϵ (Pe *omits*) þe *for* that. 4422. El dreme. 4424. ϵ þat þat (Co Ln þat at) god afore wot. 4426. $H_4$ ϵ *omit* parfit. 4428. Gg Pe Ln disputacioun. 4430. Pe Ln *omit* nat. 4433. $H_4$ Gg Co Whethir; Pe Whedere; Ln Wehere; ϵ wille afore w. *for* worthy forw. 4434. El nedefully to d. 4436. ϵ if þe free. 4437. $H_4$ Co L nor to do. 4439. $H_4$ ϵ of *for* if. 4444. $H_4$ ϵ þe *for* that. 4445. El of *for* yow.

'Wommennes conseils been ful ofte colde';
Wommannes conseil broghte us first to wo
And made Adam fro Paradys to go,
Ther as he was ful myrie and wel at ese.
But for I noot to whom it myght displese
If I conseil of wommen wolde blame,
Passe ouer, for I seyde it in my game.
Rede auctours where they trete of swich mateere,
And what they seyn of wommen ye may heere;
Thise been the cokkes wordes and nat myne,
I kan noon harm of no womman diuyne!
Faire in the soond to bathe hir myrily
Lith Pertelote, and alle hire sustres by,
Agayn the sonne, and Chauntecleer so free
Soong murier than the mermayde in the see—
(For *Phisiologus* seith sikerly,
How that they syngen wel and myrily).
And so bifel that as he cast his ye
Among the wortes, on a boterflye,
He was war of this fox that lay ful lowe.
Nothyng ne liste hym thanne for to crowe,
But cride anon, 'Cok, cok!' and vp he sterte
As man that was affrayed in his herte.
For naturelly a beest desireth flee
Fro his contrarie, if he may it see,
Though he neuer erst hadde seyn it with his ye.
This Chauntecleer whan he gan hym espye,
He wolde han fled, but that the fox anon
Seyde, 'Gentil sire, allas! wher wol ye gon?

4448. El out of *for* fro. 4450. Gg Pe Ln I *for* it. 4452. El seye. 4454. Hn Pe Ln *omit* ye may. 4461. ϵ witterly *for* sikerly. 4463. α eye; Gg yen. 4469. ϵ to fle. 4471. α eye; ϵ hadde seye it erst. 4474. Gg whidyr, $H_4$ why *for* wher; Co Ln what wol ȝe doon; Pe what hast þou don.

Be ye affrayed of me that am youre freend? 4475
Now, certes, I were worse than a feend,
If I to yow wolde harm or vileynye.
I am nat come your conseil for tespye,
But trewely the cause of my comynge
Was oonly for to herkne how that ye synge. 4480
For trewely, ye haue as myrie a steuene
As any aungel hath that is in heuene.
Therwith ye han in musyk moore feelynge
Than hadde Boece, or any that kan synge.
My lord youre fader, — God his soule blesse! 4485
And eek youre mooder, of hire gentillesse,
Han in myn hous y-been to my greet ese,
And certes, sire, ful fayn wolde I yow plese.
But for men speke of syngyng, I wol seye, —
So moote I brouke wel myne eyen tweye, — 4490
Saue yow, I herde neuer man so synge
As dide youre fader in the morwenynge.
Certes, it was of herte al that he song;
And for to make his voys the moore strong,
He wolde so peyne hym that with bothe his yen 4495
He moste wynke, so loude he wolde cryen,
And stonden on his tiptoon therwithal,
And strecche forth his nekke, long and smal.
And eek he was of swich discrecioun
That ther nas no man in no regioun 4500
That hym in song or wisdom myghte passe.
I haue wel rad in "Daun Burnel the Asse"

---

4476. $H_4$ *omits* Now; $H_4$ any *for* a; ϵ certes sire þen (Ln þat) be ȝe vnheende. 4482. El *omits* hath. 4483. Co Ln Physik *for* musyk. 4489. El wol yow seye. 4490. ϵ *omits* wel. 4491. El herde I; ϵ ne herde; El yet *for* so. 4495. α Gg Co eyen. 4496. Gg muste; ϵ dide *for* wolde. 4501. El wisedom. 4502. ϵ *omits* in.

Among his vers, how that ther was a cok,
For that a preestes sone yaf hym a knok
Vpon his leg whil he was yong and nyce,
He made hym for to lese his benefice.
But certeyn, ther nys no comparisoun
Bitwixe the wisedom and discrecioun
Of youre fader and of his subtiltee.
Now syngeth, sire, for seinte charitee;
Lat se konne ye youre fader countrefete.'
This Chauntecleer his wynges gan to bete,
As man that koude his traysoun nat espie,
So was he rauysshed with his flaterie.
Allas, ye lordes, many a fals flatour
Is in youre courtes, and many a losengeour,
That plesen yow wel moore, by my feith,
Than he that soothfastnesse vnto yow seith —
Redeth Ecclesiaste "Of Flaterye," —
Beth war, ye lordes, of hir trecherye.
This Chauntecleer stood hye vp on his toos
Strecchynge his nekke, and heeld his eyen cloos,
And gan to crowe loude for the nones.
And daun Russell, the fox, stirte vp atones,
And by the gargat hente Chauntecleer,
And on his bak toward the wode hym beer;
For yet ne was ther no man that hym sewed.
O destinee, that mayst nat been eschewed!
Alas, that Chauntecleer fleigh fro the bemes!
Allas his wyf ne roghte nat of dremes! —
And on a Friday fil al this meschaunce!

---

4503. ϵ *omits* how that. 4510. Pe Ln seint. 4515. Gg Ln flaterour. 4524. Gg at at anys; ϵ al at oones. 4525. ϵ gargage (Ln gorge). 4527. Gg theere ne was, ϵ was þer *for* ne w. th. 4529. Hn fly, ϵ fel *for* fleigh. 4531. ϵ fell.

O Venus, that art goddesse of plesaunce,
Syn that thy seruant was this Chauntecleer,
And in thy seruyce dide al his poweer
Moore for delit than world to multiplye,
Why woldestow suffre hym on thy day to dye?
O Gaufred, deere maister souerayn,
That, whan thy worthy kyng Richard was slayn
With shot, compleynedest his deeth so soore!
Why nę hadde I now thy sentence and thy loore
The Friday for to chide, as diden ye? —
For on a Friday, soothly, slayn was he.
Thanne wolde I shewe yow how that I koude pleyne
For Chauntecleres drede, and for his peyne.
Certes, swich cry, ne lamentacioun,
Was neuer of ladyes maad whan Ylioun
Was wonne and Pirrus with his streite swerd,
Whan he hadde hent kyng Priam by the berd,
And slayn hym, as seith vs *Eneydos*,
As maden alle thę hennes in the clos,
When they had seyn of Chauntecleer the sighte.
But souereynly dame Pertelote shrighte,
Ful louder than didę Hasdrubales wyf,
Whan that hir housbonde hadde lost his lyf,
And that the Romayns hadde brend Cartage.
She was so ful of torment and of rage
That wilfully in to the fyr she sterte,
And brende hirseluen with a stedęfast herte.
O woful hennes, right so criden ye,

---

4534. Gg Co dede. 4535. ϵ þe world. 4536. El woltest. 4541. $H_4$ Gg Co Ln dedyn. 4542. ϵ schortly *for* soothly. 4544. ϵ *omits* drede. 4548. $H_4$ ϵ *omit* hadde. 4549. ϵ seyde *for* s. vs. 4552. El sodeynly. 4553. ϵ Hasdrubaldes (Ln Esdr.). 4554. Hn Gg ylost. 4557. Hn vnto.

As whan that Nero brende the citee
Of Rome, cryden the senatoures wyues
For that hir husbondes losten alle hir lyues;
Withouten gilt this Nero hath hem slayn.
Now wol I torne to my tale agayn.
The sely wydwe and eek hir doghtres two
Herden thise hennes crie and maken wo,
And out at dores stirten they anon,
And seyen the fox toward the groue gon,
And bar vpon his bak the cok away,
And cryden, 'Out!' 'Harrow!' and 'Weylaway!'
'Ha!' 'Ha!' 'The fox!' and after hym they ran,
And eek with staues many another man.
Ran Colle, oure dogge, and Talbot, and Gerland
And Malkyn with a dystaf in hir hand;
Ran cow and calf, and eek the verray hogges,
For-fered for berkynge of the dogges
And shoutyng of the men and wommen eek;
They ronne so hem thoughte hir herte breek.
They yelleden as feendes doon in helle;
The dokes cryden as men wolde hem quelle;
The gees for feere flowen ouer the trees;
Out of the hyue cam the swarm of bees.
So hydous was the noys, *a benedicitee!*
Certes, he Jakke Straw, and his meynee,

---

4561. El Gg *omit* the. 4562. ϵ schulde leese *for* losten alle. 4563. ϵ *omits* this. 4565. El ϵ This *for* The; ϵ *omits* eek. 4566. ϵ þe h. 4567. Gg ϵ out at the; ϵ dore. 4568. El syen; $H_4$ sayden; Co Ln sawe; Pe segh. 4571. ϵ A Ha. 4572. Gg stonys *for* staues. 4573. ϵ *omits 1st* and. 4574. ϵ hire d. 4575. El *omits* eek. 4576. α So fered; $H_4$ So were þey fered for b. of d.; ϵ sore aferde. 4577. ϵ *omits* the. 4578. $H_4$ Gg so ($H_4$ þat *for* so) þay þ. her h. breke; ϵ her h. þey þ. to breke *for* hem thoughte *etc.*; $H_4$ ϵ breke (: eke 4577). 4580 *to end.* *Leaf out in* Gg. 4581, 4582. ϵ *reverses order of these two verses.*

Ne made neuer shoutes half so shrille,
Whan that they wolden any Flemyng kille,
As thilke day was maad vp on the fox.
Of bras they broghten bemes, and of box,
Of horn, of boon, in whiche they blewe and powped,
And therwithal they skriked and they howped.
It semed as that heuene sholde falle.
Now, goode men, I pray yow herkneth alle;
Lo, how Fortune turneth sodeynly
The hope and pryde eek of hir enemy!
This cok that lay vpon the foxes bak
In al his drede vnto the fox he spak,
And seyde, 'Sire, if that I were as ye,
Yet sholde I seyn, as wys God helpe me,
"Turneth agayn, ye proude cherles alle!
A verray pestilence vpon yow falle;
Now am I come vnto the wodes syde;
Maugree youre heed the cok shal heere abyde,
I wol hym ete in feith, and that anon!"'
The fox answerde, 'In feith, it shal be don.'
And as he spak that word, al sodeynly
This cok brak from his mouth delyuerly,
And heighe upon a tree he fleigh anon.
And whan the fox saugh that he was gon,
'Allas!' quod he, 'O Chauntecleer, allas!
I haue to yow,' quod he, 'y-doon trespas,
In as muche as I maked yow aferd,
Whan I yow hente and broght out of the yerd.

4589. ϵ and boon; ϵ *omits* blewe and. 4590. ϵ and (Co and þey) schoutid. 4594. El *omits* eek; $H_4$ enuy *for* enemy; ϵ and eek þe (Pe *omits*) pruyde of here enuye. 4598. El wolde I. 4605. Hn ϵ *omit* as; $H_4$ And whil he sp. 4608. $H_4$ I-gon. 4610. ϵ I haue, quod he, don to yow tr. (Co Ln a tr.). 4612. a into this y.

But, sire, I dide it in no wikke entente.
Com doun, and I shal telle yow what I mente;
I shal seye sooth to yow, God help me so!'
'Nay thanne,' quod he, 'I shrewe vs bothe two,
And first I shrewe myself, bothe blood and bones,
If thou bigyle me ofter than ones.
Thou shalt na moore thurgh thy flaterye
Do me to synge and wynke with myn ye,
For he that wynketh whan he sholde see
Al wilfully, God lat him neuer thee!'
'Nay,' quod the fox, 'but God yeue hym meschaunce,
That is so vndiscreet of gouernaunce
That iangleth whan he sholde holde his pees.'
Lo, swich it is for to be recchlees
And necligent, and truste on flaterye.

But ye that holden this tale a folye,—
As of a fox, or of a cok and hen,—
Takeþ the moralitee, goode men.
For Seint[e] Paul seith al that writen is,
To oure doctrine it is y-write y-wis;
Taketh the fruyt and let the chaf be stille.
Now, goode God, if that it be thy wille,
As seith my lord, so make vs alle goode men,
And brynge vs alle to his heighe blisse! *Amen.*

**Heere is ended the Nonnes Preestes Tale.**

---

4613. El of *for* in. 4615. Co I schal ȝou seye soþ; Pe Ln *omit* to yow. 4618. α $H_4$ any ofter. 4619. ϵ wiþ *for* thurgh. 4620. α Ln eye. 4622. ϵ As wisly. 4625. ϵ haue p. *for* holde his pees. 4627. ϵ trusteth. 4629. ϵ and of (Co *omits*) an hen. 4631. $H_4$ α seith þat. 4633. ϵ leteþ. 4636. α *omits* alle; $H_4$ Pe *omit* heighe.

# NOTES

# NOTES

1. *Whan that* is the usual stress arrangement in M.E; see § 258 (a). For *soote*, see §§ 64, 81 (b). *shoures:* the *au*-sound in the corresponding N.E. word shows that the apparent diphthong here is *ū*, see §§ 20, 77 (2); so in the case of *droghte* 2 (for spelling, see § 6), *flour* 4, *fowles* 9, *Southwerk* 20, *deuout* 22, *oure* 34, etc.

3. *swich licour of which vertu*, see § 210. *licour:* the *qu* in the corresponding N.E. word is due to an imitation of the spelling of Lat. *liquor;* the *ou* is *ū* as in *seson* 19 (for spelling, see § 6), *resoun* 37, *condicioun* 38, *honour* 36. Similarly, wherever the corresponding N.E. word has the sound *ə* in place of the M.E. *ou*, the M.E. *ou* represents *ū*.

4. *vertu*. Here *u*=*ǖ*, see §§ 21, 39; so in *nature* 11, *auenture* 25.

5. The west wind is frequently thus associated with the spring in English poetry. *breeth*, which should historically have *ē̆* (O.E. *brǣð*, O.H.G. *prādam*), see § 66, Note 4, here rhymes with *heeth*, which has *ē̆* (O.E. *hǣð*, cp. Ger. *heide*); cp. § 274 (1).

7. *yonge:* because just beginning to run through the Zodiac, whose first course was Aries, covering the last half of March and the first half of April. *yonge sonne:* the corresponding N.E. words have the sound *ə* in their accented syllables (see § 19, and compare *longen* 12), and therefore these are cases where N.E. *u* is written *o* before *m* or *n*, or after *w* or *v*. So in the case of *yronne* 8, *sondry* 14, *come* 23, *worthy* 43, *loued* 45.

8. *cours:* here *ou* = *ū*; N.E. *course* is from another M.E. form of the word, viz. *cors*.

13. *palmeres* were a sort of professional pilgrim in Chaucer's day.

14. *To ferne halwes*, etc., is usually taken with *goon*. But a prepositional clause frequently precedes its verb in Chaucer: cf. 82, 83, 110, 158; cf., too, F. 738,

> *But atte laste she for his worthynesse,*
> *And namely for his meke obeysaunce,*
> *Hath swich a pitee caught of his penaunce, etc.*

14. *kowthe : ow = ū*; N.E. *uncouth* anomalously preserves the *ū* sound. So with *trouthe* 46, and *yow* 38.

17. The 'blessed martyr' was Thomas à Becket, whose shrine was at Canterbury.

For rhyme *seke : seeke*, see § 278.

*Seke* in M.E. is frequently associated with worship; cf. *Romaunt of the Rose*, 6241.

*Hooly wymmen*
*That men in cherchis herie and seke.*

1–18. These introductory verses have in them the very breath of the springtime. Note the associations: the pleasant showers, the soft west wind, the budding shoots, the singing birds, with a hint of spring love longing, the desire to travel through the green fields (German *wander-lust*), the grateful feeling of recovery from winter sicknesses. Note, too, the dancing, sinuous rhythm. In reading the passage special care should be taken to catch the secondary stresses:—

1. Whan that Aprille with his shoures soote
5. Whan Zephirus eek with his sweete breeth
8. Hath in the Ram his halue cours yronne
13. And Palmeres for to seken straunge strondes
16. Of Engelond to Caunterbury they wende
18. That hem hath holpen whan that they were seke

19. *Bifil*, see §§ 163, 188. *on a day*, 'one day,' see § 117.

21. *Redy to wenden*, etc., see § 258 (a).

22. *with ful deuout corage*, 'with a very devout heart,' gives a personal interest to Chaucer's narrative. It may be that he himself had suffered from an illness, and was making his pilgrimage in consequence of a vow.

24. *Wel nyne*, etc., see § 228.

27. *wolden*, 'intended,' a frequent meaning of the M.E. auxiliary.

29. *atte beste*, see §§ 87, 115 (e); 'in the best manner possible.'

30. *was to reste*, 'had set.' The ellipsis of *gon* in such expressions is common; cf. 2637, where the full form of the phrase occurs.

31. *spoken.* Evidences of Chaucer's winning powers of conversation appear all through the Prologue. Note how, in his descriptions of the various members of the company, he represents the peculiar point of view and phraseology of each; cf., e.g., 183.

33. *made,* see § 188.

34. *ther* = thither. *deuyse* has a shade of future meaning; hence Chaucer considers 35 ff. as a digression.

37. *Me thynketh,* etc., cf. similar expression in 2207.

40. *whiche,* 'what sort of persons,' see § 211.

43. *and that,* see § 203.

44. *That . . . he,* see § 206.

45. *To riden out,* 'to travel.' *Out* in the sense of 'abroad,' 'in foreign lands,' is still used in Shakspere's time; cf. *Lear,* I. 1. 25, 'He hath been out nine years.' Such words as *chiualrie: curteisie,* which had *-ie* in O.Fr. (Lat. *-ia*), preserved the dissyllabic ending in e.M.E., and in Chaucer rhyme only with such English words as have *-ie* historically. They therefore do not rhyme with words in *-y,* like *worthy* in 43. There are a few intentional exceptions in the *Rime of Sir Topas:* e.g. *Gy: chivalry,* B 2092, where the poet is seeking to give the "Romance" flavor to his verse. This rhyme habit is a convenient criterion for distinguishing Chaucer's poetry from contemporary Northern verse, where it is not observed, and from the poetry of the immediate imitators of Chaucer, e.g. Hoccleve and Lydgate, who are careless about it, though some of his later fifteenth century imitators follow his practice.

46. Note the double reversal of rhythm; see § 258 (a), (b).

48. *therto,* i.e. in addition to his service for his sovereign. *riden* is a general expression for travelling. It is often associated with *go,* 'to walk,' in the phrase *ride or go* as a sort of generic expression; literally "travelling a-horseback or travelling a-foot." For *ferre,* see § 125.

49. *as in hethenesse,* see § 259 (c).

50. *And euere honoured,* etc., 'and had always been held in high esteem for his bravery.' For omitted verb, see § 214; for rhythm, see § 268.

52. i.e. this English knight had sat at the head of the table (cf. N.E.D. *begin,* 5) at the state banquets of the Knights of the Teutonic Order ('in Pruce'), taking precedence of all the other foreign knights. In the fourteenth century *Natio* was used to denote the various divisions of foreign students at Paris and Vienna, according to the coun-

tries from which they came. The O.Fr. word was similarly used to refer to foreign residents (Godefroy, *Dictionnaire*, Complement, *nacion*). Possibly *nacioun* (for the Ellesmere spelling, see § 6) had some such use among the Knights of the Teutonic Order.

54. *Lettow* (Lithuania), *Pruce* (Prussia), and *Ruce* (Russia) were the countries of '*hethenesse*,' which were the usual scene of the campaigns of the Teutonic Knights.

60. *armee*, an expedition by sea; cf. N.E.D. *army*, 1. The *arriue*, 'disembarkation,' which Skeat and many editors take from $H_4$, is not found in English in this sense.

62. Such combats with Saracen knights were not uncommon in Chaucer's time.

66. i.e. here, as at Tramyssene, the adversary of the Sire de la Palice and our knight was a Saracen.

67. 'And ever after had enjoyed a high renown.' In M.E. *souereyn prys* has a peculiar use in reference to chivalry, expressing the highest honor and glory of knighthood; e.g. "*and tell of me no prys*," Fierumbras, 173.

69. *as is a mayde*. Chaucer uses this expression to describe the shyness of the Oxford student in E 2.

72. *gentil*, 'noble'; not N.E. 'gentle'; cf. N.E.D., s.v. 1.

73. *for to tellen*, see § 216.

74. *His hors*, etc. *hors* is plural; see § 100. *gay* means 'gayly dressed'; see N.E.D., *gay*, A. 4. The knight is not contrasted with his horses, though that is the meaning often given to the passage, and the reading of Hn, $H_4$, is therefore sometimes selected so as to bring stress upon *he*; '*but*' is almost equivalent to 'though.'

76. For scansion see § 260 (*habergeoun* is so stressed). The knight's dress still showed the marks of the coat of mail he had lately worn. In the stress of battle he had made a vow to go on a pilgrimage to Canterbury if he got safely out of it, and he was now fulfilling the vow at his first opportunity without waiting to go home and change his raiment.

81. *as they were leyd in presse*, 'as if they had been put in a press' seems to be the meaning. In *Troilus*, I. 559 (Gl. Ch., p. 446) we have

> "*God saue hem that biseged han our toun,*
> *That so can leye our Iolite on presse*
> *And bring our lusty folk to holinesse.*"

82. *Of twenty yeer*, etc. In N.E. the *of* is omitted with numerals; in M.E. it is the common idiom; cf. '*He hath a sparth of twenty pound of weight*,' 2520. *Yeer* is plural; see § 100.

83. *of euene lengthe*, 'of proper height,' not 'of medium height.' Translate: 'his figure was well proportioned.'

84. *of greet strengthe*. Most editors patch the text here with the reading from $H_4$, *greet of strength*. But *of greet strengthe* makes good sense, and is paralleled just below in 137.

86. i.e. in the Low Countries between the Schelde and the Somme. But *space* refers to time rather than to place, the squire being only twenty.

88. *lady grace*, cf. § 97 (a).

89. *as it were*, 'as if he had been,' 'like.'

100. Carving was one of the regular duties of a well-bred young gentleman in Chaucer's time.

101. There were four grades of knightly service, as we learn from *Sir Amadas*: —

> "Knyght, Sqwyar, Yomon, or Knaue,
> Non with hym he broght."
>
> — WEBER, *Metr. Rom.*, III., p. 270.

> "Knyȝte, squiere, ȝoman, and knaue,
> Iche mon in thayre degre."
>
> — ROBSON, *Three Metr. Rom.*, p. 47.

So the first *he* must refer to the knight, not the squire.

104. *Pecok arwes* were arrows feathered with peacock feathers. That they were of fine workmanship we learn from v. 107. Ascham's *Toxophilus* (Arber's Reprint, p. 129) explains what Chaucer means by the adjective *lowe*: —

"Now to looke on the fedders of all maner of birdes, you shal se some so lowe" (i.e. lying close to the rib) "weke, and shorte, some so course, stoore, and hard, and the rib so crickle thin and narrow that it can nether be drawen, pared, nor yet well set on."

And on p. 132 we get the meaning of *droupe*: —

"But in a weake fether you must leave a thicker ribbe or els yf the ryb . . . be taken to nere the fether, it must nedes folowe that the fether shall faule and 'droupe' downe."

115. For omission of predicate, see § 214.

120. *By seinte Loy.* The reference is to St. Eligius, the patron saint of goldsmiths and farriers. Professor Hale's explanation that Chaucer here refers to the story of St. Eligius' refusal to take an oath, and means to say that the Prioress did not swear at all, is probably the correct one.

121. *Madame Eglentyne*, i.e. 'My Lady Sweet-Briar.'

123. *Entuned*, i.e. chanted, 'hummed.' It was one of the duties of the chauntress "by kallyng ouer from oo syde to another as nede is, to entune to the abbes softly alle the antems that she is to begyn in double festes or other. Euery other wyke the quyer shal vary, so that it be on the abbesse syde oo wyke, and on the prioress another wyke." *Mirrour of Our Lady*, E.E.T.S., p. xxxvii.

125. In this verse Chaucer merely intends to say that the Prioress spoke the Anglo-French of the Benedictine nunnery at Stratford le Bow, and not the Parisian French, which he as a diplomat was familiar with.

134. *sēne* is the O.E. adj. *gesēne* (here without the *y-*), which eventually took the place of the regular participle of *sēon*, viz. *gesegen*, M.E. *yseyn*. Chaucer still distinguishes the two, using the adjective only after the verb substantive; in other cases he uses *yseyn* (there is no M.E. perfect participle *seen*). The rhyme *clęne* (O.E. *clǣne*) : *sēne* (O.E. *gesēne*) is that of open *ę̄* with close *ē*.

137. *of greet desport*, i.e. full of fun.

139. *peyned hire*, 'she took pains (subject omitted) to imitate court manners.' The merchant also affects a stately demeanor, v. 281.

140. *estatlich* probably represents *statlich*; cf. 281, B 3902, *T. and C.* V. 823, *Leg.* 1372, where it is written *staately*.

146. *Of smale houndes*, see § 192.

147. i.e. fine white bread from the table, not the coarse bread usually given to dogs.

148. The Mss. reading *wepte* (wk. pret. subj.) is here retained because the weak form of the verb was undoubtedly in use by Chaucer, and *weep* does not remove the difficulty; for we must have the subjunctive here (cf. § 221), and its strong form is *wepe*. If the line is to be amended, it would be better to omit the subject *she*. Read *wepte*, and scan according to § 259 (a).

150. *And al was*, etc., 'and she was all,' etc. For the omission of the subject see § 188.

152. *tretys*, 'well shaped.' Cf. *Rom. of Rose*, English version, v. 1216 (Gl. Ch., p. 672), which Chaucer probably had in mind.

164. *and Preestes thre*. If the Prioress had three priests with her, the Canterbury pilgrims numbered thirty, not twenty-nine, as stated in v. 14. Moreover, the title of the tale assigned to the Nonnes Preest, and the prefixed prologue, point to but one priest in this capacity. Dr. Furnivall has shown that a Prioress might have several attendant priests, so this latter difficulty is removed. Of the various expedients resorted to in order to escape these difficulties none is quite satisfactory. The easiest supposition is that Chaucer was here guilty of slight inadvertency, and wrote the words as we have them in all the Mss.

167. *manly*, 'handsome,' not 'manly.'

170. For rhythm see § 260 (a). The reference is to the bells worn on the bridle-rein.

175. The usual pointing supposes a violent anacoluthon after 174, taking *leet pace* together as meaning 'let go.' *lat* is here taken absolutely, 'fail to take,' 'neglect,' a usual M.E. meaning of the word, and *olde thinges pace* a parenthetical justification of Chaucer's by a sly allusion to 2 Cor. v. 17. The cæsuras in both El and Hn follow *Monk*, but these scribes may have misunderstood the verse as the scribe of $H_4$ did. The secondary stress on *leet* is not unusual, cf. e.g. v. 274.

178 ff. The first of Chaucer's 'texts' has not yet been found, though allusions to the impiety and wickedness of hunting abbots are common in mediæval literature. The second is very old, and is found in patristic literature as early as the fifth century. *recchelees* seems to have a peculiar meaning here, 'careless of regulations,' so that Chaucer has to explain what he means in vv. 181, 182. Various emendations have been suggested, '*rewlelees*,' '*cloysterless*' of $H_4$, '*recetless*,' i.e. refugeless, but no emendation is necessary in view of vv. 181, 182.

183. "And I told him his view of the matter was entitled to serious consideration. Why should he study or drive himself mad by continually poring over a book in his cloister [a sly hint at the monk's stupidity], or work and toil at manual tasks [a thrust at his laziness]? The world has need of all kinds of men; St. Austin can work all he has a mind to [manual labor being an important item in the Benedictine and Augustinian rules]. And so he was a keen sportsman [serving the world in that capacity] etc." This passage is an excellent illustration of Chaucer's humor, which usually contains an element of veiled irony slyly interjected by the turn of a phrase or the use of a suggestive word —

here in the stress: *And I* [you might not have been so liberal, gentle reader] *seyde his opinioun* [as well as the '*sentence*' or '*iuggement*' of the fathers — notice the subtle difference between *opinioun*, 'view of a case' and such a word as '*sentence*'] *was good* [i.e. worthy of serious consideration].

193. *I seigh*, 'I noticed.'

194. *the fyneste of a lond*, 'the best that could be had.'

210. *the ordres foure* were (1) the Dominicans, named from Dominic de Guzman, their founder, called also the Black Friars from their dress, and Jacobites from the church of St. James in Paris, where they were first established, and Preaching Friars (*Fratres Predicatores*) from their occupation; (2) the Franciscans, or Gray Friars, or Minorite Friars, followers of St. Francis of Assisi; (3) The Carmelite or White Friars, an order founded on Mount Carmel in 1156; (4) the Augustinian order, which Chaucer alludes to above. The fact that the initials of the *ordres foure* (Carmelite, Austin, Iacobite, Minorite) made out the word CAIM (the mediæval form of Cain) was a common mediæval jest.

> "Nou se the so the whedre it be swa
> That frer Carmes come of a K,
> That frer Austynes come of A,
> Frer Iacobynes of I;
> Of M comen the frer Menours:
> Thus grounded Caym thes four ordours."
>
> WRIGHT, *Political Poems*, I. 266.

This may help the student to remember their names.

212. i.e. had made good matches for women who had been his concubines.

225–232. Humorously reflects the friar's own reasoning, as 183 ff. reflects the monk's.

227. *For if he yaf*, 'for if a man gave something, . . . he knew that he,' etc.; cf. § 200.

247. See §§ 233, 260 (a).

254. *In principio* (*erat verbum*, John i. 1) was a text constantly on the lips of the begging friars, cf.

> "For ye win more by yeare with *In principio* than with all the rules that ever your patrons made."
>
> JACK UPLAND, Wright's *Political Songs*, II., p. 23.

256. That is, what he acquired by begging (*purchas*) amounted to more than his income (*rente*). This expression is found also in D 1451, and in *Rom. of Rose*, 6837. It was probably proverbial.

276. Professor Hales in the *Athenæum* for April 8, 1893, has called attention to the fact that the wool staple was changed from time to time during the fourteenth century, and was at Middleburg only during the period 1384–1388, so that Chaucer must have been writing this passage at that time. Middleburg is in the Netherlands, nearly opposite Harwich, whose port was known in Chaucer's time as Orewelle. *kept* means 'protected,' 'guarded,' 'kept open.'

281. The efficacy of dignity as a means of concealing one's financial condition was evidently not unfamiliar to Chaucer.

286. Four years of logic was requisite for the B.A. degree, so that Chaucer's student was well advanced in his studies.

288. *he*, 'he himself.'

292. *Ne was*, etc., 'and he was not worldly-minded enough to secure secular employment.'

297. *philosophre*, besides having its modern sense in M.E., also meant 'alchemist,' which meaning Chaucer alludes to here.

301, 302. The reference is to the practice of mediæval students, who undertook to say masses for the souls of their patrons or their patrons' relatives in return for money given.

303. The awkward sentence stress, *moost cure and moost hede*, can be avoided by assuming a hiatus, *cure and*, with extra syllable before the cæsura, § 259 (a): thus *Of studie took he moost cure and moost hede*. (The cæsural pause is not marked for this line in El, and comes after *studye* in Hn.)

305. *in forme*, etc., 'with precision and dignity.'

306. *ful of hy sentence*, 'pregnant,' 'full of deep meaning.'

307. *moral* in M.E. refers rather to the civil and social, than to the religious duties, of man, so that *moral vertu* is nearly equivalent to N.E. practical wisdom. The application which the Merchant and Harry Baily make of the student's tale about the 'patient Griselda' illustrates this aspect of his character.

314. *was*, 'had been,' cf. § 225.

*Iustice in Assise*, a circuit judge sent down with royal commission to hold court in the country.

319. English estates are held *in fee simple*—that is, in absolute possession; or, *in fee tail*—that is, subject to various limitations and charges of entail. The law governing the latter is, of course, extremely complex and difficult.

320. Read *His purchasyng myghte nat been infect* with reversal after pause.

323. *caas* is plural, cf. § 101.

324. *were falle*, 'had been handed down.'

325. *thyng* has its primitive sense of 'agreement' here.

329. *with barres smale.* The "barres" were metal ornaments through which the tongue of the buckle ran.

330. Chaucer's humorous way of saying that he could not remember the other details of his dress.

331. A *Frankeleyn* was a man of property and importance, ranking below the knight—a sort of country squire.

336. *Epicurus owene sone*, a more or less proverbial expression for a high liver. Chaucer's philosophy comes from his *Boece*, 641 (Gl. Ch., p. 381), '*The whiche delit oonly considered Epicurus, and iugged and establissyde that delyt is the soverayn good*' ('verray felicitee parfit').

340. St. Julian was the saint who protected travellers, and therefore the patron of hospitality. The writer of his legend in the Scottish Legendary (Barbour's *Schottische Legendsammlung*, ed. Hortsmann, p. 218) refers to a custom familiar to his boyhood. He tells us that the weary traveller, when he came in sight of his lodging, would take off his hat, remove the right foot from the stirrup, and say a paternoster to St. Julian.

351. *Wo was his cook*, 'there was trouble in store for his cook.' This, and such phrases as '*wo is me*,' show the original dative construction. But all feeling for it was lost in M.E., and in Chaucer we have *wo* used as an adjective, as in *Tro.* V. 529 (Gl. Ch., p. 539):—

"*But, Lord, this sely Troilus was wo.*"

353. *table dormant*, a table fixed in the floor in contradistinction to the usual form of table which was placed on trestles so as to be readily removable. The Squire kept open house.

355. *At sessiouns*, at the meeting of the Justices of the Peace. *Lord and Sire*, the presiding officer. The *ther*, like the *ther* in v. 258,

repeats the adverbial notion. It is redundant in the corresponding N.E. construction.

356. *knyght of the shire*, his county's representative in Parliament.

359. *shirreue*, the king's administrative representative in his county; *countour*, the king's legal representative (*advocatus regius*) (Herzberg). But the word in its M.E. usage also seems to denote the functions of comptroller and auditor.

360. *vauasour*, in the sixteenth century a sub-vassal holding a small fief of a duke, marquis, or earl, and in degree inferior to a baron (see the dictionaries of Cotgrave and Cowel). The word had probably this meaning in Chaucer's time, as shown by the quotations in Du Fresne's *Glossarium* (s. v. *vassor*), and in Godefroy's *Dictionnaire de l'Ancienne langue Française* (s. v. *vavassor*).

361 ff. The text does not stand in need of mending, though Chaucer editors often adopt the $H_4$ var. in 363. Chaucer continues the enumeration of the party, and omits the verb, as is usual also in N.E.; cf. § 214.

363. *in o lyuęree*. The guilds were distinguished by livery; e.g. 'King Harry the V.' granted that the Guild of St. George, Norwich (established 1385), 'be cladde in o sute of clothynge.' *English Guilds*, Smith, E.E.T.S., p. 445.

367, 368. See § 214.

371. *kan*, see § 224.

377. *al bifore*, 'right in front' (*gon* means 'walk'). The '*vigilies*' were ceremonies held on the eve of the guild festival. In the ordinances of the Guild of Worcester such a vigil is described. The wardens of the craft and all its members were to wait upon the Bailie of the city 'in ther best arraye harneysed,' having provided a cresset for the procession. *English Guilds*, p. 408.

379. *for the nones*, see § 135.

386. The *mormal*, called in medical books *malum mortuum*, was some sort of a running sore, as appears from remedies for it in the M.E. pharmacopœia; cf. e.g. Heinrich, *M.E. Medicinbuch*, p. 141. There seems to be a delicate connection between the depth of Chaucer's sympathy for the cook's affliction and the quality of his *blankmanger*.

388. *by weste*, 'to the westward.' Chaucer thinks it was Dartmouth, one of the most important ports of his time. An interesting paper on Chaucer's Sailor will be found in the Chaucer Society's *Essays*, V., p. 455 ff.

390. *as he kouthe*, 'as well as he could,' being a sailor.

396. i.e. on the way home from Bordeaux he had been in the habit of surreptitiously helping himself to the wine while the supercargo was asleep. (The rascal had been telling Chaucer about it.)

398. *Of nyce conscience* goes with what follows, and does not mean 'conscientious scruples,' but 'fine feelings.' The methods of trading in Chaucer's time were not over nice, as the records which have come down to us show. Legitimate trade and piracy were not sharply distinguished, and our sailor, when his ship got the better of another, was not too squeamish to send his victims (*hem* is the general indefinite pronoun) 'home by water' by making them walk the plank. Chaucer seems to be quoting the fellow's grim jest.

401. Note the contrast in the particle: 'But in his trade (not these piratical avocations), in carefully calculating tides, currents, risks (and they must have been always about him in those days of uncharted seas), his port, phases of the moon, pilotage, there was none like him between Hull and Carthage.'

405. *wys to vndertake*, 'prudent in running risks.'

410. Mr. W. D. Selby has found in the records of the Port of Dartmouth entries of a ship called the *Maudelyne*, once in 1379 and twice in 1386 (cf. Chaucer Society's *Essays*, V., p. 384), evidence of the reality of Chaucer's representative interests in the Prologue.

414. Astrology was closely associated with mediæval medicine, the successful operations of medicines being thought to depend upon fortunate astrological conditions. Natural magic, as we learn from the *Hous of Fame*, III. 175–180 (Gl. Ch., p. 573), was practised by 'clerkes': they made images in certain ascendents through which they were able to 'make a man ben hool or syk.' Chaucer says that the doctor was able to ward off evil influences by this means, but does not indicate very clearly just how it was done. He intended to write a treatise on the subject as a part of the *Astrolabe*, but did not carry out his plan.

420. Diseases in mediæval medicine were supposed to be caused by an excess of one of the four 'humours' (heat, cold, moisture, dryness) over some other.

427. We see that the league between the druggist and the doctor is an ancient joke.

428. *newe to bigynne*, 'late in beginning,' 'of recent date.'

429–434. These were the chief medical authorities of the Middle Ages.

439, 440. Dressed rather elaborately; it was part of the trade.

441. A thrifty fellow whose philanthropy did not prevent his taking fees during pestilence. Chaucer's sly irony sounds like the doctor's own justification of the rich harvest he had made during the plague-time, 'Gold is a good medicine' being an allusion to *aurum potabile*, a remedy which figured in the materia medica of the time.

445. *Good wif* has nothing to do with housewifely excellences, but is a compound noun, as the stress shows, like *Good-man*, and, like the term mistress, designates a 'worthy' woman, with an independent income.

449. The form *parshe preestes* in *Piers Plowman*, B, X. 264 gives good grounds for supposing that the unstressed middle syllable of *parisshe* sometimes suffered syncope, but I doubt if Chaucer intended it here and in 491. The verses scan very well as they stand; cf. § 259.

450. Referring to the precedence observed when the parishioners went up with their offerings. Chaucer's parson particularly mentions it as a form of pride, I. 408 (Gl. Ch., p. 279).

452. *out of alle charitee*. For *alle* see § 143. It passed the bounds of her Christian forbearance. Chaucer ironically draws her bad temper somewhat mildly.

454. Heavy and elaborate head-dresses were common in Chaucer's time. The '*I dorste swere*' shows the joking exaggeration; cf. the similar spirit in 471.

456. *Hir hosen*. The illustration in the Ellesmere Ms. shows her riding man-fashion, her skirts covered with riding leggings reaching to the hips. Perhaps these were the *hosen*.

459. *she was*, etc., 'she had been a woman of property all her life.' Chaucer seems to hint at a connection between vv. 459 and 460.

460. *At chirche dore*. The mediæval marriage service was often conducted in the church porch.

463. The M.E. syncopated form of *Ierusalem* is *Iersalem* (not *Jrusalem* (Skeat) nor *Ierwsalem* (ten Brink), as is shown by Orm's spelling of the word; cf. also the M.E. version of *Palladius de Re Rustica*, I. 1180, ed. Liddell, Berlin, 1896 (the passage is not in the E.E.T.S. edition): —

> "Laude, ymne, honour, empire & songe vnto
> The fiour of Iesse spronge in Bethlëem,
> Whom Symeon seid of, and Anne, and moo
> In oon bisought Osanne at Iersalem."

465. The shrines she had visited were popular in the Middle Ages.

467. *wandrynge by the weye*, 'travelling.'

468. *soothly for to seye;* a humorous touch of human sympathy like that in 446. Professor Skeat cites *Notes and Queries*, 1st Ser., vi., p. 601, where a young lady records a popular superstition that one whose teeth are set far apart will be lucky and travel. But this very slight evidence seems to be the only trace of such a belief.

472. *foot mantel.* It is doubtful what this word means. This is the only passage quoted in the N.E.D. in which it does not mean a sort of saddle-cloth. In the picture of the *Wyf of Bath* it seems to be a blue outer skirt of some sort.

476. *the olde daunce*, 'the rules of the game'; see N.E.D., s. v. *dance*.

478. *Persoun of a Toun*, 'a country parson.'

486. *to cursen for hise tithes.* Excommunication was an extreme penalty for non-payment of tithes.

489. *offryng*, 'voluntary contributions'; *substaunce*, 'private property' or 'income.'

497. *wroghte*, 'worked.' The picture of the parson trudging through the storm to comfort a distant parishioner regardless of the wretch's social position is one of those happy human interests so common in Chaucer.

498. *gospel*, Matt. v. 19: "Forsothe this that doth and techith shall be clepid grete in the kyngdame of heuenes." The 'figure' (parable) he added was a common one in the patristic literature of the time; see Kittredge, *Modern Language Notes*, xii. 113 ff. *That* in M.E. is frequently used, as here, to introduce a direct quotation.

502. For syntax, see § 218.

507–514. Chaucer's reference is to a contemporary abuse among country priests, viz., that of farming out their benefices and going up to London to earn money by singing masses, or to be supported by a religious brotherhood. St. Paul's was a favorite resort for these chantry-seekers; Tyrwhitt cites Dugdale, who gives the number there as thirty-five.

518. *discreet*, the stress is on the prefix.

521. *But*, 'unless'; see § 220.

523. *for the nonys*, 'on account of that very thing'; i.e. his pride and haughtiness.

526. *A spiced conscience* was one that depended on formal distinctions, *spiced* being identical in meaning with N.E. *specious*.

529. For omitted relative, see § 188.

531. 'An honest toiler and a brave was he.'

534. *gamed* is impersonal. The expression was a stereotyped one in M.E., 'in joy or woe.'

545. *For the nones*, which usually means 'for that very thing,' seems here to be used as a mere expletive to carry on the narrative. But possibly *stout* is used in the M.E. sense of 'bold,' as in v. 2154, in which case there should be no comma after v. 545: "The miller was a bold fellow only because he was big of brawn and bone; and his boldness was justifiable, for," etc. He surely lives up to this character in A 3120 ff. (Gl. Ch., p. 43).

548. Rams were the usual prizes of country wrestling bouts.

554. *hāde;* see § 84 (b).

561. *And that;* see § 203.

563. To have *a thombe of gold* was a common expression to describe the value of a miller's skill in testing flour between the thumb and finger. Chaucer gives the proverbial expression a humorous twist, taking *gold* as representing moral purity.

565. In Chaucer's day the bagpipe was a musical instrument in great favor among the common people, see N.E.D., s.v.

567. *Maunciple . . . of a temple*, the steward of one of the Inns of Court. For the rhythm, see § 269.

573. Note Chaucer's sly humor: "Here was a fellow without a university education whose native wit surpassed the wisdom of a heap of learned men (the very benchers of the Inns of Court), thirty of them skilled in the devious ways of the law, and a dozen of them fit to be trustees of any estate in England and make its owner live honorably on his income (unless he was a fool), or as economically as he wished to — men able to help a whole county out of a panic — and yet this Maunciple swindled them all. Truly a divine gift!"

587 ff. The *Reue* was the bailiff of an English estate. He kept account of grain (v. 593), seed (vv. 595, 596), and stock (vv. 597, 598), subject to the occasional supervision of an auditor (594); saw that the respective stores of implements, etc., belonging to his lord and the laborers were not confused (vv. 602–605), and superintended the laborers' work (v. 605). Chaucer's reeve seems to have managed his lord's business affairs too, and like the 'unjust steward' to have turned his trust to his own advantage.

589. For the rhythm of this verse see § 259.

595. *by the droghte*, etc., 'in a dry season or in a wet one.'

603. *baillif*, either the steward or reeve of another estate, or the *præpositus* or foreman of the laborers appointed annually from one of their number, though this officer is usually designated '*reeve*' in M.E.

606. Had he been telling Chaucer about his home?

611. *To yeue and lene*, etc., see § 217.

614. *wel good*, cf. § 228.

616. In v. 622 we see why it was Chaucer noted the horse's name; the Reeve being a 'coleric' man must have ill endured the slow gait of his horse. Bell, in his edition of Chaucer, says that the horse-name 'Scot' is still common in Norfolk.

621. 'His surcoat tucked under his legs like a friar's gown.'

623. The Summoner was an officer who cited persons before ecclesiastical courts. These courts tried matrimonial causes and such offences as fornication and adultery, as is evident from what follows.

624. *cherubynnes* were a common feature of mediæval church adornment, and were painted *fyr reed*, so that 'cherubin-faced' became a proverbial expression.

625. *sawcefleem* (Lat. *salsum phlegma*), i.e. his face was covered with pimples, boils, and eruptions. The disease was thought to be caused by too much salt humor in the blood. A remedy for it, compounded of lily-root, 'swynes-grece,' powdered ginger, powdered gilly-flower, and quicksilver, is given in a M.E. pharmacopœia (Heinrich, *Mittelenglisches Medicinbuch*, p. 211). Another is found in Boorde's *Introduction and Dietary* (E.E.T.S.), p. 102, where its causes are said to be 'bad food,' 'late drinking,' and 'overeating.'

628 contains a delicate touch of human interest. Had Chaucer noticed the village youngsters pointing out the awful visage as the pilgrims rode along their route?

644. 'But if one should try him on another subject.'

646. *Questio, quid juris?* 'Question, what is the law?' i.e. 'I appeal to the authorities,' a phrase frequently on the lips of ecclesiastical lawyers.

651. *atte fulle*, cf. § 87.

652. 'To pull a finch' was a M.E. figurative expression corresponding to 'pluck a pigeon,' still current in England, according to the N.E.D., and equivalent to 'catch a sucker.'

655. The Archdeacon presided over the lowest ecclesiastical court, and his extreme weapon was excommunication. Chaucer humorously

makes his Somonour explain "when the archdeacon talks about 'opening the horrible gates of hell' (—'*horribiles inferi portas pandimus*' was part of the formula of excommunication), his 'hell' that he is going to open is your purse." A characteristically sly allusion to the corruptibility of archdeacons, with the ironical parenthesis, "I'm sure the fellow lied, for we all know that as absolution saves the soul, so excommunication slays it." In the *Apocalypsis Goliæ* (*Poems ascribed to Walter Mapes*, publications of the Camden Society, p. 9) we get a picture of the sort of corruptible archdeacon Chaucer had in mind. The Elizabethan translation of it (p. 275) runs:—

"I read the chapter next, and there did understand
Th' Archdeacon's trade and life, whose course was next of all,
If anie thing by chaunce did scape the Bisshopes hand,
With toothe and naile to scratch, and tear in pieces small.

And when he heares the pleas of persons at debate
In forme of canon lawe he workethe subtilie;
For he the canon lawe can turne, even in like sorte
To Symon's court, which ['so that the canon law'] is th' Archdeacon's Mercurie."

662. *Significavit;* Tyrwhitt notes that "The writ *de excommunicato capiendo* (for imprisoning an excommunicated person) was commonly called *significavit* from the beginning of the writ, which was as follows: '*Rex vicecomiti L. salutem. Significavit nobis venerabilis pater H.L. episcopus,*' etc." (Compare a similar N.E. practice of naming writs from the opening words, e.g. a writ of *scire facias*.) Coles (1713) defines *significavit* as "a writ for the imprisoning him that stands obstinately excommunicate forty days." The word was probably clipped in pronunciation to *sin'-fi-ca-vit*, and a Latin final *-t* often rhymes with an English *-th* in M.E.

663. 'He kept the young people (*girles* means young people of both sexes in M.E.) of his diocese in his power according to methods of his own.'

666–668. He seems to have made his pilgrimage a festival occasion. The cake-buckler is a conspicuous feature of his dress in the Ellesmere portrait of him.

670. Tyrwhitt's suggestion that the "Pardoner was not from Roncesvalles, but was the member of some fraternity like that of the 'Blessed Mary of Roncevalle' at Charing, London," is probably correct.

672 refers to the burden of a popular song, *Come hider, loue, to me.* Mr. Gollancz thinks that two verses in the *Pearl*,

> " Cum hyder to me, my lemman swete,
> For mote ne spot is non in the,"

are a reference to the same song; see his note, *Pearl*, p. 124. But the rhythm is too dissimilar to make this likely.

689. *ne neuer sholde haue.* Chaucer evidently did not like the fellow, though he shows the same humorous respect for his skill in his trade that he showed for the Shipman's.

692. *fro Berwyk* (in the north of England) *into Ware* (in the south) was a proverbial expression for all England, like 'from John a Groats' to Land's End.'

693. Jusserand's *Wayfaring Life in the Middle Ages* contains an interesting chapter on Pardoners. The student will find the Pardoner's own account of his methods in C 329 ff. (Gl. Ch., p. 145).

702. *vpon lond*, 'back in the country.'

708. *noble ecclesiaste* is ironically spoken like '*noble post*' in 214.

710. *alderbest*, cf. § 113.

714. The 'therefore' has a tinge of Chaucer's merry irony in it. For the form, *murierly*, cf. § 127.

718. *gentil hostelrye* gives a touch of human interest to the narrative, 'this excellent inn.'

720. *is tyme;* see § 188.

725–742. These lines contain Chaucer's justification for some of his stories which follow. The fact that he felt such an apology necessary, as well as the so-called retraction at the end of the *Canterbury Tales* (which there is good reason for supposing was written by another apologist than Chaucer), shows clearly that even the rather loose morality of mediæval England was somewhat shocked by the freedom and vulgarity of some of his tales. Chaucer himself admits that they are *rudelich*, *large*, and *brod;* but he gives only an explanation, not a justification. His argument from Plato (though he probably did not feel it to be so) is a piece of bare sophistry, and the 'broadness' of the Bible is the frank recognition of the fundamental facts of human life, which is the finest purity. Even Chaucer's humor and humanity are but a partial excuse, and cannot make some of his tales fit reading for *virginibus puerisque* or for any one else. Some of his writing is not really offensive any more than *Henry IV.* is offensive, the objectionable

features being but part of the every-day life they describe — the words are 'cousin kin,' at least, to the subject matter. But unfortunately we cannot justify all of Chaucer's writing, or all of Shakspere's either, on the same grounds.

728. *To telle*, 'in telling,' cf. § 217.

729. *proprely*, 'in their own way.'

731. *shal*, 'is going to,' almost 'undertakes to.'

733. *euerich*, see § 117, note 1.

734. *rudeliche*, see § 121.

736. *Or feyne thyng*, 'or invent subject matter.'

737. *althogh he were his brother;* the *he* is the indefinite personal pronoun, 'the man he is talking about.'

741. Chaucer probably quotes Plato from Boethius, cf. *Boece*, 1118 (Gl. Ch., p. 402), "*thow hast leryned by the sentence of Plato that nedes the wordis moot be cosynes to the thynges of whiche thei speken.*"

743. For the sake of dramatic interest, the poet does not make his pilgrims tell their stories in the order of their precedence, and humorously excuses his offence against propriety on the ground that his mind was not equal to the task — '*ye may wel vnderstonde.*'

751 ff. From here on to the end of the *Prologue*, and in the brief prologues and epilogues of the several tales, Chaucer shows a dramatic power in representing the words and actions of men and women that is not surpassed even by Shakspere. Not that dramatic representative interest is wanting in the rest of his work, but that here and in the 'links' there is that abundance of life and humanity which characterizes Shakspere. The flux, so to speak, is his delicate humor searching out the hearts of men and women beneath all the many envelopes of time and custom, and in it human life yields up its true values, the very essence of dramatic representation. The versification of this passage should receive the student's careful attention; he should notice especially the reversals of the rhythm, giving vividness and variety to the narrative; the lines which have no introductory unstressed syllable, e.g. 752, 764, 778, introducing abruptness here and there; the strong stresses, e.g.

" ' × ' × "
"*Now lordynges trewely*
' " × ' " ' × ' × "
*Ye been to me right welcome hertely*," etc.,

giving a personal flavor to the verse.

751. Chaucer, in his description of Harry Baily, and in all the words which he puts into the big man's mouth, betrays that love of soundness and health which is the very keynote of English character.

752. *For to been a marchal*, etc., not only because he was so fine-looking, but because he showed such tact in setting us down to supper.

754. *Chepe*, Cheapside in London, where prosperous merchants were to be found in abundance.

756. *manhod*, cf. '*manly man*' in Chaucer's description of the monk.

760. The sly Chaucer again! The landlord's good humor is intimately associated with the prompt payment of the pilgrims' scot. Cf. *it shal coste noght*, 768, "it shan't cost you a penny"; the shrewdness of 799; the humor in 804, *right at myn owene cost*, "I'll not put it in your reckonings"; the practical forfeit he imposes in 805, 806; and the fixing of the price of the supper they were to have on their return, 815 — undoubtedly a suggestion of mine host's, though Chaucer leaves that to inference.

763. *if that I shal nat lye;* this and such expressions as *by my fader soule*, 781, *to spoken short and pleyn*, 790, *I mene it so*, 793, *as euere mote I drynke wyn or ale*, 832, were stereotyped phrases which made up the small change of M.E. conversation.

766. *doon yow myrthe*, 'make you enjoy yourselves'; cf. *myrthe*, 767, 'means of amusement.'

767. A happy inspiration solves his difficulty.

769, 770. A touch of reverence and seriousness, and sympathy withal.

777. *yow*, dative, 'if it please you.' *by oon assent* goes with *stonden*.

779. *werken*, 'do.'

782. *yeue* has been marked as a monosyllable in order to prevent an Alexandrine. But to scan it as such makes better stress (at least in N.E.).

783. *Hoold vp*, etc., i.e. in sign of assent.

784. *longe for to seche*, see § 218.

785. *Vs thoughte*, etc., 'it seemed to us that it was not worth while to be on our guard,' with *wys* in the common M.E. sense of 'prudent,' rather than of 'wise,' as it is generally taken. The host has asked their assent to a proposition as to the real nature of which they are still in the dark.

791. *to shorte with oure weye*, 'to shorten our journey with'; the significance of the pronoun 'oure' lies in its giving his auditors the first inkling of his purpose to go with them, and the *I mene it so* following, 'I am serious in the matter,' gives the reader a hint of the surprise that the intending pilgrims betrayed when Harry Baily told them of his purpose. Not appreciating this, modern editors have substituted *youre* for *oure*, one of the botchings of the scribe of $H_4$.

792 ff. This passage shows that the *Canterbury Tales*, like Chaucer's own tract on the *Astrolabe* and Spenser's *Faery Queene*, was conceived on a far larger plan than could be carried out by the author.

800. *sittynge by this post*, another instance of Chaucer's dramatic power. One can almost hear Harry Baily slapping the post affectionately to give point to what he is saying.

803. *goodly* (and not *gladly*, the lifeless emendation of $H_4$ adopted by modern editors) means 'courteously,' 'as a favor to you.'

811. *preyden*, omitted subject, 'we begged him.'

817. *In heigh and lough*, 'in matters important and unimportant.'

823. The host was up before any of the rest of them, 'shaping him for the journey.' Note Chaucer's humorous touch in '*and was oure aller cok*' and in '*gadrede vs togidre alle in a flok*.'

825. *a litel moore than paas*, 'a little faster than a foot pace.'

826. The *wateryng of Seint Thomas* was, according to Nares (Glossary, s.v. *wateryng*), a brook at the second milestone on the Kent road. A small volume dealing with the route of the Canterbury pilgrims in Chaucer's time is one of the books promised by the Chaucer Society. A tracing of the route from the ordnance maps with some explanatory matter has already been printed in 100 copies for private distribution (— my copy bears no date, but I think it was given me in 1893). Dr. Furnivall's *Temporary Preface to the Six Text Chaucer* contains much interesting material on the relation between the route and the grouping of the Tales. There is also a copy of Saxton's map from London to Maidstone and Rochester, 1573–79, in the *Tale of Beryn*, Chaucer Society, *Supplementary Tales*, 2.

829. *and it yow recorde*, 'I will recall it to your minds'; see § 188.

830. A proverbial expression, 'if you will stand by last night's agreement.'

833. *Whoso be*, etc., 'if any one is,' see § 220.

837. Note the skill with which Harry Baily makes the knight, who

might not like the vulgarity of the drawing, the Prioress, who might think it unlady-like, and the clerk, who hesitated from natural timidity, take the first drawings; then the bluff '*lay hond to, euery man*' for the rest of the company.

844. *auenture*, 'fortune'; *sort*, 'fate'; *cas*, 'accident.'

850. *goode-man* here seems to be, from the stress and the suppression of the definite ending of the adjective, a compound noun.

851. *obedient* is almost equivalent to 'punctilious.'

853. *shal*, 'am to,' see note on v. 731.

## The Knightes Tale

859. The *olde stories* were the mediæval romances, based upon Statius' *Thebaiad*. Chaucer found his material in Boccaccio's *Teseide*, though he quotes Statius directly in the *Compleynte of Faire Anelida and False Arcite* (Gl. Ch., p. 336). He does not follow the Italian version very closely, only about one-sixth of his Tale bearing anything like a close resemblance to Boccaccio's, and he quite changes its spirit, infusing Germanic elements of romance into the classic story. The material early attracted him, and before it received its final form in the *Knightes Tale* it had been used by him, partially at least, in the *Compleynt* already referred to, in three stanzas of *Troilus and Criseyde*, V. 1807–1827 (Gl. Ch., p. 557), and in the *Parliament of Foules*, 183–294 (Gl. Ch., p. 344). From the *Legend of Good Women*, v. 420, we get the name of an independent work of Chaucer's called *Palamon and Arcite*, — 'a story little known,' Chaucer adds. This is supposed to have been originally written in seven-line stanzas, and afterwards remodelled for the *Knightes Tale*. The student who is interested in comparing Chaucer's version with Boccaccio's will find material for doing so in Mr. Henry Ward's margin notes, brief but clear, to the *Six Text Chaucer*, in the Chaucer Society's *Essays*, Pt. IV., p. 357 ff., and in Kissner's *Chaucer in seinen Beziehungen zur italienischen Litteratur*, Bonn, 1867, pp. 60 ff. The *Teseide* will be found in the edition of Moutier, *Boccaccio, Opere volgari* (17 vols.), Florence, 1827–34. The most accessible edition of Statius is in the *Teubner* series, edited by Bährens and Kohlmann; the best translation of it is that which was made by W. L. Lewis, Oxford, in 1767, but it is not very accessible. The part that relates to Chaucer's story is found in the XII Book of Statius.

876. The readings of El and $H_4$ seem to be attempts at emendation; but see § 260 (b).

884. Neither Statius nor Boccaccio speak of a storm at Hyppolyte's homecoming.

895. *his mooste pride: moost* is used as an attributive adjective in M.E.

896. Read *He was war. as he caste his eye aside;* cf. §§ 260, 259 (c).

908. i.e. 'that ye thus,' not 'ye that thus,' cf. § 188.

925. '*Fortune and hir false wheel*' was a favorite picture of mediæval philosophy. The immediate source of it in Chaucer's case was Boethius, II., pr. ii; see Chaucer's translation of the passage, *Boece*, 307 ff. (Gl. Ch., p. 366).

957, 958. *hente* (pret.), *and . . . conforteth* (pres.); see § 226.

960. 'He would put forth his might with such vigor as to wreak vengeance,' etc.

968. *go ne ride*, cf. note on v. 48.

969. *fully*, i.e. 'even for.'

970. *onward*, 'having gone some distance.'

975. See § 271.

977. *feeldes glyteren*, i.e. 'all the country round about shines with the reflection,' a poetic exaggeration. To take 'field' as referring to the various 'charges' of his banner makes the sense awkward.

978. The *penoun* was triangular, the banner square, and borne only by a knight-banneret. There is a picture of the two in Planche, *British Costume*, p. 118.

979. *Of gold ful riche*, etc., 'rich with gold, having the Minotaur embossed on it.'

988. *in pleyn bataille*, 'in open battle.'

994. *deuyse*, 'give the details of.'

996, 997. See § 260.

1016–1019. i.e. their bearings showed that they were of royal blood and cousins-german.

1026. Note the variant in El. The scribe did not like or understand the coupling of the two tenses (see § 226), nor do modern editors who follow the 'improvement' he made.

1029. *Terme of his lyf*, 'during the period of his life.' It is a common M.E. phrase, and contains an old accusative expressing duration, cf. § 194.

1031. This verse makes good M.E. sense (the predicate 'are' being omitted, cf. § 214), and has more authority than the reading commonly adopted; see var. The fact that $H_4$ has not the *dwellen . . . eek* reading is especially significant.

1057. In *dongeoun*, as in *habergeoun*, the *e* is merely the sign that *g* has its "soft" sound.

1061. *hadde hir pleyynge*, 'took her pleasure.'

1078. *bleynte* is pret. of *blenche*, cf. § 175 (6).

1082. *That art so pale*, etc., see note on v. 908.

1087. *Som wikke aspect*, etc. In the *Astrolabe*, 160 (Gl. Ch., p. 646), Chaucer tells us what this unlucky aspect of Saturn was: "*A 'fortunate ascendent' clepen they whan that no wicked planete, as Saturne or Mars or elles the Tayle of the Dragoun, is in the house of the ascendent, ne that no wicked planete have noon aspect of enemyte upon the ascendent.*" See note to v. 2456.

1089. *although we hadde it sworn*, 'even though we should swear it was not so.'

1091. For rhythm, see § 273; for syntax, § 196.

1105. *Yow*, 'yourself,' see § 201.

1117. The Mss. show that Chaucer wrote here *syk* and not *sigh*. The form also occurs in *T. and C.* IV. 1527 (Gl. Ch., p. 529).

1127. For the infinitive, see § 215.

1132. In a few rare instances in M.E., *and* does not introduce the connected phrase or clause, but follows with the meaning of N.E. 'also'; e.g. *Palladius*, I. 6: —

> "So sende he me sense and science
> Of my balade away to rade errour,
> Pallade and do to glade his excellence."

We may have such an idiom in this verse. If not, some word like 'pledged' is to be understood after '*ech*.'

*til* is the northern M.E. form of the prep. *to*.

1133. *for to dyen in the peyne*, 'though we should die in agony for it,' is originally an O.Fr. phrase, 'mourrir en la peine.' It occurs in *Troil.* I. 674, and *Rom. of the Rose*, 3326. Compacts like this are common in mediæval literature. 'Sworn brothers,' 'wedded brethren,' 'fratres jurati,' were bound to aid and comfort one another, as Palamon says. See *fratres conjurati* in Du Cange and *sworn brothers* in Nares' *Glossary*.

1137, 1138. These verses evidently go with what follows, not with what precedes, as the usual punctuation assumes.

1147. *conseil* seems to have the meaning of 'confidant.' But no other use of the word in this sense is recorded in the N.E.D. (*counsel*, 7 b) before 1647, nor has the corresponding O.Fr. word this meaning. It may be a mistake for *cosyn*, cp. vv. 1131, 1161.

1156–1159. An ironical allusion to v. 1102 and Palamon's exclamation in v. 1104.

1164. The philosophers' saying was: —

> " *Quis legem dat amantibus ?*
> *Maior lex amor est sibi.*"
> — BOETHIUS, *de Cons. Phil.* III., metrum xii.

Chaucer's translation of it is in the *Boece*, 1135, 1136 (Gl. Ch., p. 402). In vv. 1167, 1168 he adds a gloss found in the Aquinas Commentary on Boethius, " *nam ex incenso amore homo sepius transgreditur legem.*"

1167. *positif lawe and swich decree*, i.e. arbitrary and promulgated law as opposed to natural law, a distinction of mediæval jurisprudence.

1171. *she* (the indefinite pronoun), 'the woman he loves,' cf. note on v. 400.

1172. Here begins Arcite's third argument. For syntax, see § 218.

1177 ff. Æsop's fable of *The Lion, the Bear, and the Fox* slightly altered.

1201. Chaucer in using the word *write* forgets dramatic propriety. The story of Pirithous (Chaucer's spelling is an illustration of the confusion which attended the transfer of classic proper names into M.E.) and Theseus is found in Plutarch's *Lives*. But Chaucer took it from *Le Roman de la Rose* (8186 ff.), as Professor Skeat points out.

1209. *pleynly for tendite*, 'to record it in full.'

1251. Chaucer again takes his philosophy from Boethius and quotes directly from the *de Cons. Phil.* III., prosa ii., see *Boece*, 643 (Gl. Ch., p. 381).

1262, 1263. The edition of Boethius which Chaucer used contained the commentary traditionally assigned to St. Thomas Aquinas. These verses are a translation of one of the Aquinas glosses, '*ebrius scit se habere domum, sed . . . nescit quomodo ad eam redeat.*' 'Drunk as a mouse,' 'drunk as rats,' were common comparisons up to Queen Elizabeth's time.

1293. See § 196.

1303–1312 is a reminiscence of a similar apostrophe in Boethius, I. metr. 5, where Boethius says (see *Boece*, 193, Gl. Ch., p. 360): "*O thou what so euere thou be, that knyttest all boondes of thynges, loke on thise wrecchide erthes. We men that ben noght a foul partie but a fair partie of so greet a work we ben turmented in this see of fortune.*" And above, 189, "*O governour governynge alle thynges why refusestow oonly to governe the werkes of men, why suffrestow . . . that anoyous peyne that sholde duweliche punysche felons punysscheth innocentes?*"

1333. *hym Arcite*, cf. § 190.

1336. *forth I wol yow telle*, 'I will go on with my story.'

1344. *vpon* in the sense of 'on penalty of' is common in M.E.

1347. The knight jestingly says that this question is one for the Courts of Love to decide. A discussion of these courts will be found in *Harvard Studies and Notes in Philology and Literature*, Vol. VI., by W. A. Neilson.

1355. The division of the *Knightes Tale* into two parts at this point seems to be the work of the Ellesmere scribe, as it is not found in any of the other Mss. The Hengwrt scribe divided the story at 1880, where the Ellesmere copyist introduces his second division. The Ellesmere division is only followed here for purposes of convenience.

1373. The 'disease of Eros' is, of course, a humorous expression for 'Love.' Mediæval psychology divided the brain into three 'cells,' the foremost being the residence of the imagination or fantasy, the middle that of reason, the hindermost that of memory. Chaucer describes *Mania* as being induced by a melancholy humor in the front cell. Shakspere makes use of the same psychology in *Macbeth*, I. vii. 65, where he speaks of memory as being the 'warder of the brain.'

1376. As to the text of this verse, we have assumed an error in the original Ms. caused by passing from the *n* in *Biforen* to the *h* in *his*. According to N.E.D., 'before' has never had the meaning 'in the front part of.'

1387. Mercury's *slepy yerde* was his caduceus. *Somnifera virga* is a frequent designation of it in Ovid.

1389. The reference is to the story told in Ovid's *Metamorphoses*, i. 714.

1394. *hou soore*, etc., 'however bitterly I may suffer for it.'

1401. For rhythm, see § 259 (c).

1421. *here*, 'her'; see § 131.

1423. *myghty for the nones*, 'strong for that sort of work.' Notice the addition Chaucer has to make on account of the rhyme.

1428. 'In the *Teseide* (IV. 3) Arcite takes the name of Pentheo. The name of Philostrate might be suggested to Chaucer . . . by Boccaccio's poem entitled *Philostrato* (the original of Chaucer's *Troilus and Criseyde*). In the *Midsummer Night's Dream* . . . a Philostrate (see *Dramatis Personæ*) is introduced as a . . . servant of Theseus.' — TYRWHITT. This is one of the evidences that Shakspere was familiar with Chaucer's story.

1448. *derre* is in the comparative degree, cf. § 125.

1453. *what for wo*, etc.; the syntax in which 'what' has the sense of 'partly' is still in N.E. use, though the 'what' in N.E. is usually repeated before the second phrase.

1460. *it am nat I;* in M.E. in such clauses the verb agrees in person with the predicate-pronoun. Chaucer is continually apologizing (he does it again in 1464) for the length of his story; here the apology turns on a humorous exaggeration of Palamon's love-pains.

1466. Merely a distinction between accident and fate. Chaucer was thinking of the relation between Destiny and Providence as described in Boethius, *de Cons. Phil.* IV., prosa vi.

1491. The student should make a careful study of these beautiful lines, paying especial attention to the rhythm.

1498, 1499. It is possible that the reading of Hn and ϵ for 1498 is the correct one, and that in 1499 *is* or *is his* has been corrupted into *his*.

1500. Descriptions of May-day customs will be found in such books as Brand's *Popular Antiquities*, Dyer's *British Popular Customs*, Strutt's *Sports and Pastimes of the British People*, Chambers's *Book of Days*, *Century Dictionary*, s.v. *May-day*.

1502. Chaucer uses the same verse in the *Legend of Good Women*, 1204,

"*Vpon a coursere startlyng as the fire*,"

which shows that *startlyng* (skittish) and not *stertyng*, the supposed correction of $H_4$, is the word.

1504. *were it a myle or tweye*, see § 221.

1521. *go sithen many yeres*, 'these many years ago'; *go* is here the p. part. Cf. "*But sooth is seyd, goon sithen many a day*," F 535; "*gon ys a grete while*," *Leg. of G. W.*, 427.

1522, 1524 are two common M.E. proverbs. The first is found in Ray's *Proverbs* in the form, "Fields have eyes and woods have ears," 3d ed. p. 112, where a French form is also cited, "*Bois ont oreilles et champs oeillets*" (the German form is "*Das Feld hat Augen der Wald hat Ohren*"). In the latter proverb, *at vnset steuene*, means 'at an unappointed hour.'

1532. If *crop* is not an error for *croppes*, we have here an instance of a half verse without introductory unstressed syllable, cf. § 260 (b).

1537. *hir day*, i.e. dies Veneris. The changeableness of Friday weather seems to have been a matter of popular belief in Chaucer's time.

1558. *noght worth a myte;* Chaucer is possibly alluding to Boccaccio's 'etymology' of *Philostrate*, 'prostrated by love.'

1566. *shapen was my deeth erst than my sherte:* i.e. 'before my birth I was destined to die of love.' It seems to have been a common expression. Chaucer uses it in the *Legend of Good Women*, 2629. It occurs, also, in Lydgate's *Complaint of the Black Knight*, 489 (Anglia, XIX., p. 269): —

> "Er I was borne my destanye was sponne
> By Parcas sustren to sle me if they conne,
> For they my dethe shopen or (= 'ere') my shert"

(the words of a woebegone lover). Similar phraseology occurs in *Troilus and Criseyde*, III. 733.

1575. The stress is unusual here: *coold swerd;* for in M.E., as in N.E., in such a combination more stress falls on the noun than on its adjective. But there are several instances of the reverse in Chaucer, and occasional instances in Shakspere.

1616. For rhythm, see § 103.

1622. *leyd his feith to borwe*, 'pledged his honor for surety.'

1625. *sooth is seyd*, etc. Professor Skeat has cited Chaucer's quotation in the *Roman de la Rose*, 8487, and this in turn from Ovid, *Metamorphoses*, II. 846: —

> "*Non bene conveniunt, nec in una sede morantur*
> *Maiestas et Amor.*"

In the Ms. edition of Chaucer prepared by Franciscus Junius, Ovid, *Ars Am.* 564, is cited: —

> "*Non bene cum sociis regna Venusque manent,*"

which is still more apposite.

1638. The simile is from the *Teseide*, VII. 106. *hunters* is gen. sing., not nom. plu. For syntax in 1641 ff., see § 188.

1649. They waive formalities in this grim duel. Compare Shakspere's expression in *Macbeth*, I. ii. 21 ff.: —

> 'Which (= and he) neer shook hands nor bade farewell to him
> Till he unseam'd him from the nave to th' chops.'

1661. In leaving them fighting ankle-deep in gore, Chaucer does not show much consideration for the gentle reader.

1663–1672. This notion of the subordination of Fate to Providence Chaucer gets from Boethius. He uses it again in *Troilus*, III. 617–619, where Fortune is the servant of God because she is the '*executrice of wierdes*' (destiny). The passages he draws on are found in *de Cons. Phil.* IV. prosa vi. (*Boece*, 1467, Gl. Ch., p. 416): —

"*God disponith in his purueaunce . . . the thinges that been to doone; but he amynistreth . . . by destyne thilke same thinges that he hath disponyd.* Cp. also *Boece*, 1486: *And this ilke ordre* (i.e. '*of destyne*') *constreyneth the fortunes and the dedes of men by a bond of causes not able to ben unbounde.*"

1697. *Vnder the sonne* is usually taken with *looketh* to mean he 'looked out into the sunlight,' but it can easily go with *launde*, 'the glade lying in the sunlight.' The pause marks in *a* support the former construction. Compare the M.E. phrases *agayn the sonne*, 'in the sunshine,' *agayn the mone* (*Tro.* II. 920), 'in the moonlight.'

1710. *what myster men*, 'what sort of men.'

1743. *This is;* see § 273.

1755. *And saugh*, etc., 'And they looked at their bloody wounds,' etc.

1761. This seems to have been a proverbial expression. Chaucer makes frequent use of it; cf. *Leg.* 503, E 1986, F 579. *gentil*, of course, here means 'well-born,' 'noble.'

1763. *in a clause; a* has here its meaning of 'one,' 'the same.'

1785. *benedicite* is here clipped to *ben'diste*. In *Troilus* I. 780 (Gl. Ch., p. 449) it is spelled *bendiste*.

1794. *And witen*, 'and they know.'

1799. i.e. 'Your lover is your only complete fool,' one of Publius Syrus' *Sententiæ* (15): "*Amare et sapere vix Deo conceditur.*" Junius (Ms. edition of Chaucer) cites another, "*Amans quid cupiat scit, quid sapiat non videt,*" adding a quotation from Plautus, *Pseud.*, Act I., sc. 3, "*Non jucundum est nisi amans facit stulta.*"

1806. Almost 'But this is the best joke of all.' Theseus' humor is really Chaucer's; see v. 1813.

1811, 1812. Seems to be proverbial philosophy. Cf. the N.E. proverb, "There's no fool like an old fool."

1814. *seruant* in M.E. is a common term for 'lover.' Cf. the colloquial expression in N.E. 'to wait upon' for 'to pay court to.' *oon* in this M.E. phrase denotes conspicuousness.

1832. *tyme is* is an instance of hiatus; cf. § 262.

1838. *go pipen in an yuy leef* was a M.E. popular expression for making the best of a bad bargain; cf. N.E. 'go whistle.'

1840. Note the humor in this verse.

1841. *degree* here seems to have the unusual meaning 'relation to me,' and to refer to vv. 1848, 1849.

1850. *fer ne ner*. Both adjectives are in the comparative degree, and the phrase seems to mean 'exactly,' though it is not found with this meaning in the N.E.D.

1856. *That wheither;* cf. § 134.

1901. Read: *The theatre for to maken* etc.; see § 259 (c).

1906. Is an interesting line for text criticism. The original scribe passed over the bracketed letters in '*in* [*mynde and in*] *memorie*,' his eye catching the second *in* instead of the first, a common source of error in Mss. The scribe of $H_4$, knowing the frequency of such mistakes, saw what the missing words were. But the verse thus written did not seem smooth to his ear (—he is forever tinkering lines that have the extra syllable before the cæsura), and so he put in a *the* before *mynde*, and took out the *on the* before *westward*.

1914. *hadde I foryeten*, is subjunctive, 'I came near forgetting.'

1925 ff. A catalogue of abstract qualities personified, as in the *Romaunt of the Rose*. Such allegorical descriptions were common in Chaucer's time. In v. 1940 Chaucer follows the *Romaunt* in making Idleness the portress of his garden.

1970–2022. Similar to *Teseide*, VII. 31–37.

1987. The northern light streaming in at the doors is an addition of Chaucer's. Boccaccio's temple is lighted by the altar fires kindled from the flames of plundered cities.

2004. *chirkyng*, 'creaking'. It is interesting to note how Chaucer, in order to exaggerate the horror of his description, appeals to the ear as well as to the eye.

2007. The picture of Sisera slain by Jael (Judges iv. 17–22) is used by Chaucer to bring up the idea of horrible murder. He uses it also in D 765. Added to the picture of the blood-stained suicide, with his cut throat and his hair bathed in blood, it is certainly horrible enough.

2017. *shippes hoppesteres; hoppystere* occurs once in O.E., with the meaning 'dancing-girl' (cf. N.E.D. s.v.). Boccaccio speaks of the *Le navi bellatrici* being taken as trophies: it has been suggested that Chaucer misread this *bellatrici* as *ballatrici* (but it might easily have been written *ballatrici* in his Ms., as *e* and *a* are very liable to confusion in certain fourteenth century hands), and hence his translation. To *ballare* in Florio's Dictionary is given the meaning *to dance, hop.*

2021. *infortune of Marte;* Mars, like Saturn, was one of the 'wikked' planets in astrology, cf. note to 2456. But Chaucer may be referring to an accident in a chariot race in the Campus Martius, and *cartere* may here mean 'charioteer' and *cart* 'chariot.'

2024. *of Martes diuisioun,* because the crafts were under his protection.

2028. Is a reference to the story of Damocles. Chaucer took it from Boethius, *de Cons. Phil.* III, prosa v., which explains why it is used in connection with *conqueste:* for Philosophy is there speaking of kings who extend the boundaries of their empires. The lives of such are full of danger. A ruler (*tyrannus*) who had experienced this danger pictured it '*pendentis supra vertice gladii terrore.*' The note to the passage in the Aquinas-commentary which Chaucer was familiar with describes the hanging of the sword in the words "*et sibi supra verticem iussit suspendere gladium acutum tenui fili.*"

2037. The mistake *sertres* in all the Mss. probably arose from the *t* having been accidentally dropped in the original copy, and then added above with the caret between the two *r*'s instead of between the *s* and the *e*: ser$^{t}$res. To following scribes this looked like a proper name: El and Hn both write it with a capital letter; see the variants.

2040. Chaucer may have intended to insert a story (that of Antony and Cleopatra ?) at this point; for the '*oon ensample*' is not given.

2041 ff. Chaucer copies the mediæval representation of Mars. *Rubeus* and *Puella* in geomantic 'scriptures' were the names of two 'figures': 'Puella', associated with Venus in astrology, and 'Rubeus,' associated with Mars (Prof. Skeat in the *Academy*, March 2, 1889).

2049. As the cæsura naturally falls after *pencel* (as in α), it is likely that Chaucer used the other form of the p. part., viz., *depeynt* and not the *depeynted* of the Mss.

2056. *Calistopee:* Callisto was changed into the constellation of Ursa Major; her son was changed into the constellation (*sterre*) Boötes. It is Ursa Minor, not Ursa Major, that contains the *lodesterre*. In Boethius, *de Cons. Phil.* IV. metr. vi., Ursa is mentioned as moving close to the pole of the universe: the gloss describes the constellation as made up of seven stars near the pole (i.e. Ursa Minor). Chaucer probably thought of this constellation as 'the Bear,' and hence his mistake. The story of Callisto is told in Ovid, *Fasti*, II. 153–192. (Chaucer's spelling is not yet explained — ? confused with 'Calliope.')

2062 ff. The story of Daphne and Apollo's love for her, and her metamorphosis into a laurel, is found in Ovid, *Metamorphoses*, I. 450; that of Acteon in *Met.* III. 138; that of Atalanta in *Met.* X. 698; that of Meleager in *Met.* VIII. 299.

2103. *of hir hond*, 'in respect to their skill' or 'prowess.'

2112. *that loueth paramours*, 'that loves madly'; *paramours* is an adverb.

2119 ff. *som* is singular, 'one.'

2122. A cæsura is marked after *sheeld* in El, Hn. This accounts for the extra syllable.

2125. 'There's no new fashion that has not been an old one,' i.e. these ancient knights had the same sort of equipment that we have— Chaucer's apology for the anachronism.

2141. This goes with the following, not with the preceding, verse.

2160. *clooth of Tars* was a sort of silk.

2192. *euerich at his degree*, 'each according to his rank.'

2202. Perhaps the reading of α is correct, and Chaucer refers to skill in dancing to song.

2217. *in hir houre;* the twelfth conclusion of the second part of the *Astrolabe* (Gl. Ch., 648) explains Chaucer's meaning here. Each day begins with the hour of the planet which it is named for. Subsequent hours follow according to this series repeated through the twenty-four: 1. Saturnus; 2. Iupiter; 3. Mars; 4. Sol; 5. Venus; 6. Mercurius; 7. Luna. (A gloss on fol. 33 a of Ms. Rawl. D. 913 of the *Astrolabe* gives this list with the mnemonic *SIM SVM, Luna Septima* [Ms. *Sb*, mistake for $S^a$] *est.*) Thus the first hour of Sunday morning would be

Sun's hour, the second hour, Venus's, and so on. Venus's hour at the time when Palamon arose would be the twenty-second hour of Sunday, or the second hour before sunrise on Monday (*dies lunæ*) morning. Emily arose and sought Diana's temple (v. 1274) in her propitious hour, that is, Luna's hour, the first of Monday (*dies lunæ*). Cf. note to v. 2367.

2271–2360. Palamon's prayer is a close imitation of *Teseide*, VII. 43–49.

2274. Stress *Dyane*.

2288. 'On the contrary, it is a good thing for a man to be unhampered in telling a story.'

2294. *In Stace of Thebes*, 'in Statius's *Thebaid*.' Chaucer seems anxious that the reader shall consider Statius as his authority rather than Boccaccio. It is a common trick of his thus to mislead the serious-minded student. He is really following the *Teseide*, VII. 76–90.

2299. Diana was the Proserpina of the under-world. The other "form" referred to in v. 2313 was Luna.

2333, 2334. For rhyme, see § 278.

2367. *The nexte houre of Mars folwynge this*. 'The nearest hour' of Mars would be the fourth after sunset. See note to v. 2217. This was the propitious time for Arcite's prayer to Mars. For rhythm, see § 260 (b).

2373. Arcite's prayer is found in the *Teseide*, VII. 23–28.

2396. *dooth me . . . endure*, 'makes me endure.'

2397. *synke or fleete*, like *ride or go*, is a stereotyped expression for to be saved or perish.

2433. *and seyde*, 'and the voice said.'

2443. Saturn's aspect in astrology was cold. Chaucer translates Boethius, IV. metr. i., *iter gelidi senis*, "*the weie of the olde colde Saturnus*" (*Boece*, 1169, Gl. Ch., p. 404). The gloss to this passage tells us that Saturn is *affectiuus gelu et frigoris*. Saturn's influence in astrology provoked strife, and hence the reference in 2451, 2456, etc.

2454. His course, according to mediæval astronomy "*complet pluri tempore quam sol vel luna*."

2456. Chaucer, as we learn from the *Astrolabe*, was interested in astrology, and intended to write a treatise on the subject. We have here the result of some of his astrological study. The evil influences of Saturn as he gives them are found in the fourth book of the "Paraphrase" of Ptolemæus' *Tetrabiblos* made by Proclus Diadochus (fifth century A.D.), Chapter IX. (I quote from a mediæval Latin translation):

"*Saturnus . . . in Argo navi insistens naufragio exitium minatur,*" v. 2456; "*si in horoscopo alteri luminum opponatur, in carceribus vitam finient,*" v. 2457; "*in quadrato aspectu aut opposito solem intuens . . . mortem adfert suffocatione aut populi tumultibus, aut suspendio, aut strangulatione,*" vv. 2458–2460; "*cum Mercurio configuratus ex venenatorum ictibus . . . mortem designat,*" v. 2460; "*in tropicis signis vel quadrupedibus*" (e.g. '*in the leoun*') . . . "*necem ex ruina significat,*" vv. 2462–2465 (the period after *leoun* in the usual punctuation of the text is therefore wrong); "*Saturni itaque stella dominium mortis habens, neces ac exitus adfert, morbis diuturnis tabe, . . . febribus frigidis, . . . et quotquot frigoris excessu nocumentum afferunt,*" vv. 2567–2569.

2457. *derke cote* means 'dark cottage' or 'outbuilding,' not 'dungeon.' Perhaps Chaucer is referring to some well-known instance of imprisonment in such a place.

2466. For rhythm, see § 260 (a); compare also § 183.

2491 ff. Chaucer here shows his peculiar power of vivid description. The life and movement in this scene are far superior to Boccaccio's version. Light, color, sound — even the gossip of the crowd — each has its place in the narrative. The bustle and confusion are carried out in the movement of the verse — notice the frequent reversals of the rhythm, the great number of primary and unstressed syllables, and the absence of secondarily stressed ones, the frequency of run-on lines.

2495. The *steedes* were the war-horses, the *palfreys*, ordinary saddle-horses or hacks.

2503. *Nailynge the speres* seems to mean studding them with nails. Shields and other parts of the armor were thus treated, but I cannot find an instance of spears having been so strengthened.

2504. *Giggynge* (O.Fr. *guige*), the fittings by which the shield was fastened on the arm.

2516 ff. The keen partisanship of the crowd, as they pick out their favorites, is admirably represented: "Blackbeard is my favorite;" "Baldhead is mine;" "The fellow that looks so grim will be a good fighter;" "Look at that man's battle-axe, it must weigh all of twenty pounds."

2519, 2520. The third person pronoun is here used indefinitely.

2545. The subjunctive is here used as imperative.

2552. The stress upon *noght* is significant. 'He shall be made prisoner, and not slain, as the custom is.'

' × "

2553. Stress *ordeyned*.

2554. *shal*, 'must go.'

2581. See vv. 1906 ff.

2602 ff. Notice how the reversals of the rhythm vividly carry out the rapidity of the movement: —

"*In goon the speres*," etc.
"*In gooth the sharpe spore*," etc.
"*Vp spryngen speres*."
"*Out goon the swerdes*."
"*Out brest the blood*."

2680–2683. Two lines are inserted here in editions of Chaucer that are evidently a scribe's addition. They are only found in δ and ε.

2683. i.e. he saw no one else just as he loved no one else. In E 241 we have a similar expression: —

'*Virtue . . . as wel in chere as dede*.'

2712. Charms or incantations were a part of the medical science of Chaucer's time; they are to be found side by side with drug prescriptions in M.E. pharmacopœias.

2725. 'One person captured by twenty knights,' cf. v. 2641.

2726. If the line is right as it stands in the Mss., the unstressed syllable beginning the second half of the line is omitted; but it is more likely that the scribes have neglected the *-e* of the dative ending preserved in *by arme;* see § 98.

2731. *leet crye . . . the gree*, 'issued a proclamation announcing that the contest was a tie.'

2749. Mediæval medicine again: 'vertue expulsative,' or 'animal,' corresponding roughly to power of recuperation.

2761. *This al and som*, 'this is the whole story.'

2762. *For which*, 'and for this reason.'

2765 ff. There are few passages in literature more tender and pathetic than these dying words of Arcite. If the student will compare them with the *Teseide*, X. 54–63, he will see how many human touches Chaucer has given to the scene. The pathos of that '*dwelled in his herte syk and soore*,' and the simple beauty of '*his spirit chaunged hous*'! Indeed, the passage is so affecting that Chaucer has need, like Shakspere, to resort to humor, in order to break the strain of it,

and so he gives the scene a sudden turn, 2810 ff.: 'I've never been there, and so I can't go any further; I'm neither a prophet nor the son of a prophet. Moreover, I cannot find any chapter "On souls" in this Table of Contents.'

2796. *shul ben a wyf*, 'have it in mind to marry.'

2801. *And yet mooreouer*, 'and it had advanced still further.' Compare the description of Socrates' death in the *Phædo*.

2805. Andrew Boorde in his *Breuyary* (Furnivall, *Boorde's Introduction and Dyetary*, p. 89) tells us 'the herte is the laste thynge that dothe dye in manne.'

2815. i.e. Arcite is dead; let Mars conduct his soul to the abode of spirits.

2827. From here to the end Chaucer follows Boccaccio pretty closely.

2840. The readings of Hn and $H_4$ seem to be attempts to supply the unstressed syllable missing at the beginning of the verse.

2854. The scribes probably wrote the syncopated form of the 3d sing. pres. instead of the fuller form *casteth*.

2889. It is still a military custom to lead the dead officer's horse in his funeral procession.

2895. A *bowe Turkeys* was of the shape that Cupid is always represented as carrying. Read *bowe* and *the*.

2902. *the maister strete*, 'the high street.'

2923. Note the two reversals in the verse.

2987–3013. This little sermon of Theseus' is taken from Boethius, *de Cons. Phil.* II., *metr.* viii., and IV., *prosa* vi., and III., *prosa* x.

2987. *Firste Moeuere of the cause aboue* seems to be a reminiscence of *Boece*, 1115 (Gl. Ch., p. 401), '*thilke deuyne substaunce tornith the world and the moevable circle of thinges*.' The apostrophe itself is imitated from the ninth metre of the third book (Gl. Ch., p. 392), '*O qui perpetua mundum ratione gubernas*.' The theology of this *Metrum* is elaborately explained in the commentary on it. The notions which Chaucer uses are (1) that God is the mover of the *primum mobile;* (2) that, while the first cause controls everything, God directs everything to its destined end — the supreme good. Hence the rather curious expression of v. 2987. The *Metrum* goes on to say (in Chaucer's translation) '*thow byndest the elements by nombres proporcionables, that the coolde thinges mowen accord with the hote thinges and the drye thinges with the moyste*' (i.e. the four elements). Chaucer substitutes *the cheyne of love* for '*nombres proporcionables*,' making use of Boethius' notion of the

immanence of love in the universe, as expressed in Book II., metre viii (Gl. Ch., p. 379), '*al this accordaunce of thinges is bounde with love.*' He then passes on to the notion of the relation between Providence and Destiny, Book IV., *prosa* vi., '*For purveaunce is thilke deuyne resoun that is establissed in the soueryn prince of thinges.*'

2995. *this wrecched world adoun*, 'this wretched world below.'

2996–3002. A general summary of the doctrine of the relation of Providence to Destiny, as unfolded in Boethius, IV., *prosa* vi.

3002. A statement from Boethius, V., *prosa* vi.: '*The commune iugement of alle creatures reasonables thanne is this: that god is eterne*' (*Boece*, 1859).

3007–3010. Boethius' argument for the existence of God in Book III., *prosa* x.: '*For the nature of thinges ne took nat hir begynnynge of thinges amenused* ('deficient') *and inparfit, but it procedith of thinges that been alle hole and absolut, and descendith so doun into vttereste thinges and into empty and withouten fruyt*' (*Boece*, 889).

3011 ff. Cf. *Boece*, 1863: '*For alle thing that lyueth in tyme . . . procedith from preterites into futures*,' perhaps with Aquinas' gloss: '*infinitam durationem temporis mobilis*, i.e. *successiui*.'

3016. *seen at ye*, 'see clearly.' But it must be confessed that Theseus' argument is somewhat confused.

3017–3026. These illustrations are not found in Boethius in this form, but the statement in 3029 is; cf. *Boece*, 1908: '*it byhouith by necessite that alle men ben mortal or dedly.*'

3036. God is called the '*prince of alle thinges*' in *Boece*, 891. All things return to him as to their source. He is frequently called *the welle of things, the welle of good*, in the *Boece*.

3084. *kynges brother sone*, see § 97 (b).

## The Prologue of the Nonnes Prestes Tale

3957. The Monk has been telling a series of stories about the misfortunes of great men, a sort of *De Casibus Virorum Illustrium*, of Lucifer, of Adam, of Holofernes, of Samson, of Alexander, of Cæsar, and the rest, 'enough and more besides' in this mournful strain. At length, when forbearance has ceased to be a virtue, the Knight interrupts the Monk's moralizing on the fickleness of fortune as illustrated by the 'tragedie' of Crœsus, with the opening words of our prologue.

3959. 'A little gloom is enough for most people. For my part I

like to hear of men who have risen from poverty, men who have climbed to good estate and stayed there.'

3972. The Monk had referred to a definition of *Tragedie* found in the commentary on Boethius in connection with the story of Crœsus: —

> "*Tragedie is to seyn a certeyn storie*
> *As olde bookes maken vs memorie,*
> *Of hym that stood in greet prosperitee*
> *And is yfallen out of heigh degree*
> *Into miserie, and endeth wrecchedly.*"
>
> — B 3163 ff.

(The commentator's *nota* was, "*Tragedia est carmen reprehensiuum viciorum, incipiens a prosperitate desinens in adversitate.*") His last words were about Fortune, covering 'hire brighte face with a cloude.' Harry Baily makes fun of this scholastic definition of 'tragedie' and such stuff about fortune, with the very practical wisdom, 'There is no use in crying over spilt milk.'

3989 ff. Note the humor in this remark about the Monk's preachment.

3995. i.e. 'tell us about something you are familiar with' — a reference to the Monk's fondness for hunting mentioned in the Prologue, with a sly hint at his not being a very good illustration of poverty and misfortune.

4000. "Sir John" was a popular M.E. designation of a priest.

4002. 'Look pleasant though you are riding such a poor horse. Never mind that, if he serves your purpose, what need you care?'

4005. 'A merry heart goes all the day.'

4010. Is there not a slightly ironical tone in *This sweete preest*, 'This nice little priest,' with a conciliatory addition, 'This courteous man, who I'm sure will tell us a good story'?

## The Nonnes Preestes Tale

The story put into the mouth of the *Nonnes Preest* is an ancient tale which appears in Latin, in English, in German, and in French. The earliest of the French versions is one by *Marie de France* (thirteenth century); it professes to be a translation from English, and in some Mss. of the tale *Li reis Alured* (King Alfred) is cited as the author of the story. Later it was expanded in a version which forms part of *Le*

*Roman du Renart.* Chaucer's story is more like this latter. (See Chaucer Society *Originals and Analogues*, p. 111 ff.)

4041. *orgon*, a plural noun in M.E. (Lat. *organa*).

4045-4048. Chaucer says that he not only was as sure as a clock in his crowing, but he also knew what he was about, and was as good as an astrolabe, knowing the hours for the latitude he lived in. Astrolabes had to be adapted to a given latitude, and were useless outside of it.

4049. *fyn coral*, from the dropping of the inflectional syllable, seems to be a compound noun.

4056. For rhythm, see § 259 (b).

4060. For the definite form of *fair*, see § 115 (d).

4069. In the *Athenæum* for October 24, 1896, p. 566, Professor Skeat communicates a stanza of this song from Ms. Trinity (Camb.?) R. 3. 19, folio 154:

"My lefe is faren in lond
Allas why ys she so,
And I am so sore bound
I may not come her to.
She hath my hert in hold
Where euer she ryde or go,
With trew[e] loue a thousand fold."

vv. 4064, 4065 contain an allusion to the fifth line.

4114. *fumes* were noxious vapors which rose from the stomach into the brain, cf. N.E.D. *fume*, 4.

*compleccioun*s, 'collections of humors.' Chaucer treats this subject more at length in the opening lines of the *Hous of Fame* (Gl. Ch., p. 558).

4118. The *rede Colera* was one of the four humors, the excess of any one of which caused disease. They were *sanguis*, *cholera*, *melancholia*, and *phlegma*, cf. A 587, A 335, A 625.

4121. *rede beestes*, like the fox.

4131. a quotation from Cato's *Distiches*. In the M.E. translation of *Liber Catonis*, edited by Goldberg (Anglia, Vol. VII.), vv. 401, 402 (p. 174), occurs:

"þing þat þe mette in sweuene
Telle hit not wakand,"

corresponding to the Cato, *de Moribus*, II. 31: *somnia ne cures.*

4151. Dame Pertelot's prescription is quite correct according to mediæval practice. *Catapuce* is the chief ingredient of a laxative in *Mitteleng. Medicinbuch*, p. 134. We have also the statement that "*Fumiter ageyn feuerys tercian is a souereyn medicin*," in Anglia, XVIII. p. 330.

4156. The rhythm, if we may read *herbyue*, is normal; if *herbyue*, see § 259 (b).

*ther mery is:* this phrase is usually rendered 'where pleasure is.' But *mery* as a substantive is unusual, to say the least, and makes but lame sense. The word *mery* (N.E. '*marrow*') frequently in M.E. refers to the interior part of berry-like fruits. In Palladius, IV. 177, the word describes the pulp of a lime. It also refers to the tender shoots at the end of branches. With either of these meanings the passage makes good sense. The *or* for *of* in Gg and Pe may be a trace of the original reading.

4157. The rhythm of the verse is:

*Pekke hem vp right as they growe and ete hem yn* (§ 259 (c)); or possibly,

*Pekke hem vp right as they growe*, etc. (§ 259 (b)).

4172. 'We need not argue the matter, it is self-evident.'

4174. *Oon of the gretteste auctour that men rede* is common M.E. syntax. The N.E. idiom demands the plural. Chaucer evidently refers to Valerius Maximus (*de Somniis*), who tells the stories that follow, and points the reference by an allusion to 'Maximus' in his '*gretteste*.' Cicero (*de Divinatione*, I. 27) also relates them. It is likely, however, that Valerius Maximus is either quoted at second hand, or is given as the source with the intention of misleading the reader. (See the monograph of Miss K. O. Petersen, *On the Sources of the Nonne Prestes Tale*, Boston, 1898.)

4226. Note how ϵ alters the verse to get rid of the two unstressed syllables at the beginning of the second half-verse.

4232. The line is an Alexandrine. Again ϵ tries to get rid of the irregularity. If there is any error in the original it is more likely that *he* has intruded than that *heere* has.

4254. *rede*, 'read about.'

4268. *agayn the day*, 'toward daybreak.'

4300. The Legend of St. Kenelm is told by Florence of Worcester

See Freeman, *Old English History*, p. 87. Chaucer probably refers to one of the later versions like those found in the fifteenth century legendaries, which add the incident of the dream.

4306. *to kepe hym weel*, etc., 'guard himself carefully against treason.'

4310. *I hadde leuere than my sherte*, 'I would give my boots.'

4314. Chaucer here, as in the *Parlement of Foules*, 96 ff., refers to Macrobius' Commentary on Cicero's *Somnium Scipionis* (*Africani*), a mediæval classic on the subject of dreams; this and the scriptural references which follow he probably quotes at second-hand. Miss Petersen (in the work cited above) has shown good reason to think that for these references, as well as for the Valerius story, Chaucer was indebted to a fourteenth-century commentary by Richard Holkot.

4318. See Daniel vii. 1–15.

4320. See Genesis xxxvii. 5–10.

4323. See Genesis xli. 1–7.

4324. See Genesis xl.

4328. The dream of Crœsus is told in the Commentary on Boethius, *de Cons. Phil.* II., *prosa* ii. "One night Crœsus dreamed that he was on a high tree, where he was made wet by Jupiter and dried by Phœbus. When he related this dream to his daughter, Fania, she said, 'You will be captured by Cyrus and hanged on a cross, where the rain will moisten you and the sun will dry you.'" Chaucer tells the story at length in B 3930–3948 (Gl. Ch., p. 131), having taken it from the Boethius Commentary.

4331. Andromache's dream forms a part of the mediæval version of the Troy legend.

4344. Chaunticleer evidently did not like bad-tasting medicines.

4366. 'Royally' brave with the coming of the daylight.

4377. It was a mediæval tradition that the world was created in March.

4380. A mock importance is given to the tragedy which follows by this circumstantial detail.

4384. Taking the 'degree of the sun,' as given in v. 4385, and the sun's altitude, given in 4389, and applying the 3d *Conclusio* of Pt. II. of Chaucer's *Astrolabe* (Gl. Ch., p. 644), we find the '*label sitting in the bordure vpon a capital letter that is clepid an X*,' i.e. it was about nine o'clock, and the day of the month must have been May 3. This makes it difficult to explain '*syn Marche began*,' a difficulty which the

scribe of $H_4$ noticed and attempted to remedy; see variant reading. We should expect *ended*. Could Chaucer have written *Syn Marche ys* (or ? *be*) *gon*? 'March having passed by.' Cf. note on v. 1521. This is one of the many instances in the *Canterbury Tales* which shows Chaucer's care in unimportant details. Cf. the similar notation of time in B 1–15.

4398. A sly hint at the chronicles the Monk has been telling illustrating this very point. *souereyn notabilitee*, i.e. an important *note bene* written on the margin of a chronicle.

4401 ff. is, of course, ironical, and a sly allusion to the popularity of romances among women.

4417. *Genyloun*. For the story of Genyloun's betrayal of Roland, see Caxton's *Lyf of Charles the Grete*, ed. Herrtage, for the E.E.T.S., Pt. II., p. 230 ff.

4431 ff. Chaucer refers to the question of foreordination and free will discussed in Boethius, *de Cons. Phil.* V., *prosa* 6. *Augustine* is St. Augustine (fourth century), who treats this subject in the fifth book of his *de Civitate Dei*. Thomas Bradwardyn was a Merton Professor of Divinity and Archbishop of Canterbury of the fourteenth century, who discussed the question of providence and free will in his *de Causa Dei*. He also, according to Pitseus, wrote a separate tract, *de Præsentia et Predestinatione*.

4440. This doctrine of *necessitie condicioneel* is found in Boethius; cf. the *Boece*, 1908, 1909 (Gl. Ch., p. 436): "*For certes ther ben two maneris of necessites: that oon necessite is symple, as thus; that it byhouith by necessite that alle men ben mortal or dedly; another necessite is condicionel as thus: yif thou wost that a man walketh it byhouith by necessite that he walke.*" In *Troilus and Creiseyde*, IV. 960 ff. (Gl. Ch., p. 522), Chaucer 'has to doon of swich matere' *in extenso*.

4441–4445. A gallant apology, surely, but has it not a touch of irony withal ?

4461. The '*Phisiologus*' was a Latin collection of allegorical fables, widely current in mediæval literature. It was translated into Old French, German, and Old English. Tyrwhitt quotes the few verses from the chapter *de Sirenis* which Chaucer refers to: —

> "*Sirenæ sunt monstra maris resonantia magnis*
> *Vocibus et modalis cantus formantia multis.*"

4484. Boethius was the author of a tract, *de Musica*.

4502. The story is told in the *Speculum Stultorum*, a satirical poem written by Nigellus Wireker (thirteenth century) under the pseudonym *Burnellus; burnellus* is mediæval Latin for 'donkey' (e.g. Ms. B. M. Royal, 17 C. xvii., has '*hic burnellus, a lytyl asse*'), hence Chaucer's allusion. The loss of the benefice was due to the cock's being late in his crowing on the morning that the priest was to be ordained, so that the candidate missed the ceremony.

4537. As Tyrwhitt pointed out, *Geoffrey de Vinsauf* published a poem not long after the death of Richard I., in which he apostrophized Friday (*dies Veneris*) as being the instrument of the king's death.

4585. Chaucer refers to 'Jack Straw's rebellion,' 1381, in which many of the Flemish merchants of London were dragged into the streets and slain.

4608. Seems to be another instance of omission of unstressed syllable in the cæsura.

4631. 2 Timothy iii. 16, is the text which Chaucer refers to.

4635. In the margin of α appears the note, *Dominus archiepiscopus Cantuariensis*, probably a reference to this form of benediction as being peculiar to the Archbishop of Canterbury.

# GLOSSARY

To put the whole vocabulary of Chaucer, with all its varying forms and varying meanings, into a glossary like this would require the allotment to it of a disproportionate space in the book. Only such words, therefore, as are quite different in form and meaning from the corresponding N.E. words will be found here. But the student must not infer that in cases where the text word does not appear in the glossary its meaning is therefore exactly the same as that of the N.E. word which corresponds to it. Various inflectional forms, especially those of the strong verbs, will be found in the index to the Grammar. O.E., O.N., and O.Fr. forms have been added for practise in phonology. Unmarked vowels in stressed syllables are short. **o͞u** represents **ū**: to distinguish between **ŏ** and **ŭ** written as **ŏ**, the student must trust to his knowledge of the grammar.

**a**, an unstressed form of *o͞n;* 2766, 2725; see § 117.

**a, a-**, an unstressed form of *on*, 1621, 2934.

**abīen** (Kent. *abeggen*, A 3938), to atone for, 2303; O.E. *abycgan*, § 173, note 1.

**āble**, fit, 167; O.Fr. *hable*.

**abo͞d**, delay, 965; O.E. **abād*.

**aboughte**, see **abīen**.

**abo͞ute**, in turn, 890.

**abouen**, above; O.E. *abufan*.

**abrayde**, to awake, B 4198; O.E. *a-bregdan*.

**abregge**, shorten (by making the time pass quickly), 2999; O.Fr. *abregier*.

**achaat**, buying, 571.

**achāto͞ur**, purveyor, 568; O.Fr. *achateur*.

**affīle his tonge**, polish his language, 712.

**after**, according to, 125; **after oon**, see **oon**.

**agǭn**, to pass by, 1276; pass away, 1782; O.E. *agān*.

**agrief = on grēf**; **take it not a-**, do not be displeased, B 4083.

**aiel**, a grandfather, 2477; O.Fr. *aiel*.

**al**, *adj.*, all, entire; *adv.*, quite, altogether, 76, 150, B 4167; *conj.*, although, 71, 297, 734; see § 143.

**al and some**, one and all.

**alaunt**, a wolf hound, 2148; pl. **alauntz**; see § 8.

**al be**, although, 297.

**alderbest**, best of all, see § 113.

**alderman**, the chief officer of a guild, 372; O.E. *ealdormon*, cf. § 51.

**āle-stāke**, the pole on which an ale-house sign was hung, 667; O.E. *ealu*, *staca*.

**algāte**, always, in every case, 571; cf. O.N. *alla götu*.

**alīghte**, to alight, 722, 983; O.E. *alihtan*.

**allegge**, adduce, 3000; O.Fr. *allegier*.

**aller**, see § 113.

**als = also**, B 3976.

**alsǭ**, as, 730; O.E. *eal(l)-swā*.

**amblēre**, 469, an ambling horse, a pacer; cf. O.Fr. *ambleur*.

**amonges**, amongst, 759; O.E. *on*, *ge-monge* with *-es* suffix, § 122.

**amorwe**, on the morrow, 822; O.E. *on*, *morgen;* see § 80 (d).

**amōunte**, signify, mean, 2362; O.Fr. *amounter*.

**amyddes**, amidst, in the middle, 2009; O.E. *on*, *midd*, *-es*.

**and**, if, 1214.

**an-honge**, to hang up, B 4252.

**anlaas**, a short, two-edged sword or dagger, usually worn at the girdle, 357; cf. Lat. *anelatius*.

**anǭn (an oon)**, forthwith, 32; O.E. *on*, *ān*.

**a paas**, at a walk, slowly, 2217, 2897.

**apalle**, to become feeble, 3053; O.Fr. *apallir*.

**apayd**, contented, satisfied, 1868; cf. O Fr. *apaier*.

**āpe**, fool, 706; O.E. *apa*.

**apparaillynge**, preparation, 2913; cf. O.Fr. *appareiller*.

**appetīt**, desire, 1680; O.Fr. *appetit*.

**apīked**, 365, (?) 'sharpened' with *geere* in the sense of 'weapons.'

**areste**, to stop, to check, 827; to take into custody, B 4210; O.Fr. *arester*.

**arette**, ascribe, impute, 2729; O.Fr. *aretter*.

**armee**, an expedition by sea, 60; O.Fr. *armee*.

**arm-greet**, the size of one's arm, 2145; O.E. *earm*, *grēat;* see § 194.

**armypotēnte**, mighty in arms, 1982; It. *armipotente*.

**array**, dress, equipage, 41, 934; O.Fr. *arrei*.

**arraye**, to set in order, dress, adorn, 2090; O.Fr. *arreier*.

**arreest**, custody, 1310; the stop for the spear when couched for the attack, 2602; O.Fr. *arest*.

**ars-metrike**, arithmetic, mensuration, 1898; O.Fr. *arismetique*, confused with Lat. *ars metrica*.

**arwe**, arrow, 104; O.E. *earh;* see § 80 (e).

**as**, as if, 81, 636; O.E. *eal-swā*, with stress on first syllable; **as nowthe** (O.E. *nūþū*), now, at present, 462, 2264; **as wel as**, in like manner, 2404.

**ascendent**, the part of the zodiac that is ascending above the horizon, 417.

**aslāke**, to moderate, to appease, 1760; O.E. *aslacian.*

**a-sonder**, asunder, 491; O.E. *on, sundor.*

**assaut**, assault, 989; O.Fr. *assaut.*

**assaye**, to try, 1811; O.Fr. *assaier.*

**assēge**, besiege, 881; O.Fr. *asegier.*

**assente**, agree to, 374.

**asshen**, ashes, 1302; O.E. *æsce*, § 105.

**assoillyng**, absolution, acquittal, 661; O.Fr. *assoiler.*

**assūren**, confirm, 1924; O.Fr. *asseurer.*

**asterte**, to escape, 1595.

**astǭne** (p.p., **astǭned**), astonish, 2361; O.Fr. *estoner.*

**astǭred**, stored, 609; O.Fr. *estorer.*

**astronomȳe**, astrology, 414.

**asūre**, azure, B 4052.

**at**, according to, 2192; for, 1675.

**at eye**, see **ye.**

**atrēde**, outwit, 2449; O.E. *æt-* (prefix denoting separation), *rǣdan.*

**atrenne**, outrun, 2449; O.E. *æt-*; O.N. *renna.*

**attāme**, to cut into, enter upon, B 4009.

**atte**, at the; O.E. *æt þē*; see § 87.

**attempree**, temperate, moderate, B 4028.

**atthamaunt**, adamant, 1305; O.Fr. *adamant.*

**auter**, alter, 1905; O.Fr. *auter.*

**avaunce**, to be profitable, 246; O.Fr. *avancer.*

**avaunt**, boast, 227; O.Fr. *avanter.*

**auauntāge**, advantage, 1293; O.Fr. *avantage.*

**auentūre**, luck, accident, 25, 795

**avōw̄**, vow, promise, 2237; cf. O.Fr. *avouer.*

**auȳs**, consideration, opinion, 786, 1868; O.Fr. *avis.*

**awe**, fear, dread, 654; O.N. *agi.*

**axe**, to ask, 1347; O.E. *acsian.*

**axyng**, asking, demanding, 1826.

**ay**, ever, aye, 63; O.N. *ei.*

**ayeyns**, against, 1787; O.E. *ongegn, ongægn, -es.*

## B

**bachelēr**, a candidate for knighthood, 80; O.Fr. *bacheler.*

**baillif**, bailiff, 603; see note; O.Fr. *baillif.*

**bāke-mę̄te**, pastry, 343.

**balled**, bald, 198.

**bāne**, destruction, death, 1097, 1681; O.E. *bana.*

**banēr**, the knight-banneret's standard; it was four-square as distinct from the pointed pennon, 978, 2410; O.Fr. *banere.*

**barbōur**, a barber, 2025; O.Fr. *barbeor.*

**bāre**, uncovered, 683, 2877; O.E. *bær.*

**bareyne**, devoid of, 1244, 1977; O.Fr. *baraigne.*

**baronāge**, an assembly of barons, 3096; O.Fr. *baronage.*

**barre**, bar of a door, 1075; O.Fr. *barre.*

**barres**, originally bars strengthening the buckle-holes, but later

any sort of ornament of a girdle, 329.

**batailled**, having battlements, B 4050.

**bawdryk**, a baldric or belt over the shoulder, 116.

**bē, bēn**, been, 60; O.E. *bēon;* cf. § 186.

**begynne**, to begin; O.E. *beginnan.*

**beer**, case for a pillow, 694.

**beere**, a bier, 2871; O.E. *bær* (fem.).

**beggestēre**, originally a female beggar, 242.

**bēme**, a trumpet, B 4588; O.E. *bēma.*

**bēnedicite**, clipped to **ben' distē**, a common exclamation like 'God bless us!' 1785; Lat. *benedicite.*

**bente**, declivity of a hill, a plain, open field, 1981.

**benȳgne**, kind, 518; O.Fr. *benin.*

**bēre**, to conduct one's self, behave, 796; O.E. *beran.*

**bēre**, a bear, 1640; O.E. *bera.*

**beste, atte**, in the best way possible; similarly, **for the beste**, 788.

**besy**, Kent form of **bisy, busy**, 321; O.E. *bisig, *bysig.*

**bet**, better, 242; O.E. *bet.*

**bēte**, to beat, 2162; **ybēte**, embossed, 979; O.E. *bēatan.*

**bēte**, to mend a fire, to kindle, 2253; O.E. *bētan.*

**bi-bledde**, covered over with blood, 2002; O.E. *be-, blēdan.*

**bidde**, to bid; see § 161.

**bifalle**, to happen, 19, 1009; befall, 795, 1805; O.E. *befeallan;* see § 163.

**bifōre, bifōren**, before, 377, 450, 1376; O.E. *beforan.*

**bihōlde**, to behold; O.E. *behealdan;* cf. § 47.

**bihōte**, to promise, 1854; O.E. *bihātan.*

**biknowe**, to acknowledge, 1556, B 4251; O.E. *becnāwan.*

**bile**, beak, B 4051; O.E. *bile.*

**biquēthe**, to bequeath, 2768; O.E. *becweþan.*

**biraft**, p.p. of **birēue**, 1361.

**birēue** (with dat.), to take away from; O.E. *berēafian.*

**bisēke**, to beseech, 918; O.E. *be-, sēcan.*

**bisette**, to set to work, 279; to set in order, 3012; O.E. *besettan.*

**bismotered** (an *apax legomenon* in 76), soiled, spotted.

**bisy**, see **besy**.

**bisīde**, beside, near, 445; O.E. *be sīdan.*

**bisīdes**, beside, **hym besīdes**, about him, 402, § 122.

**bisynesse**, labor, care, anxiety, 520, 1007.

**bit**, see **bidde**, § 177.

**bithinke**, to reflect, consider; **I am bethought**, it occurs to me, 767; O.E. *bipencan.*

**bitwixe**, betwixt, 277; O.E. *betweox, betwyx.*

**biwreye**, to bewray, betray, 2229, B 4241; O.E. *be-, wrēgan.*

**blankmangēr**, a compound of

minced fowl with cream, sugar, and flour, 387; O.Fr. *blancmanger*.

**blēde**, to bleed, 1801; to be bloody, be hurt, 145; O.E. *blēdan*.

**blenche**, flinch, start back, 1078; (?) O.E. *blencan*; cf. § 175(6).

**blisful**, blessed, 17, 770.

**blood**, kin, 1583; O.E. *blōd*.

**blȳue**, quickly, 2697; e.M.E. *bilīfe*, O.E. *bi-, līfe*.

**bokelēr**, buckler, 112, 471; O.Fr. *bocler*.

**boket**, bucket, 1533.

**bole**, bull, 2139; O.N. *bole*.

**bǭne**, prayer, petition, 2269; O.N. *bōn* (fem.).

**bǭras**, borax, 630; O.Fr. *boras*.

**bǭrd**, table, 52; O.E. *bord*.

**borwe** (dat.), pledge, security, 1622; O.E. *borg*.

**bǭte**, remedy, 424; O.E. *bōt* (fem.).

**bǭte**, boot, 203, 273; O.Fr. *bote*.

**boteler**, butler, B 4324.

**bǭthe**, both, 1831; O.N. *bāþir*.

**botme**, bottom, B 4291; O.E. *botme*.

**bōūk**, body, 2746; O.E. *būc*.

**bōūr**, inner room, B 4022; O.E. *būr*.

**bōwes**, boughs, 2917; O.E. *bōh*, pl. *bōgas*.

**bracēr**, guard for the arm, 111; cf. O.Fr. *brasseure*.

**brak**, see **brēke**.

**brast**, see **bresten**.

**brawn**, brawn, muscle, 546, 2135; O.Fr. *braon*.

**brēde**, breadth, 1970; O.E *brǣdo*.

**breem**, a fresh-water fish, bream, 350; O.Fr. *bresme*.

**breeth**, breath, 5; O.E. *brāþ*.

**brēke**, to break, 551; O.E. *brecan*.

**brēme**, fiercely, furiously, 1699; O.E. *brēme*.

**bren**, bran, B 4430; O.Fr. *bren*.

**brend**, burnished, bright, 2162; from **brenne**.

**brende**, see **brenne**.

**brenne**, to burn, 2331; O.E. *bernan*, O.N. *brenna*.

**brennynge**, burning, 996.

**brennyngly**, fiercely, ardently, 1564.

**brent**, burnt, 2017. See **brenne**.

**brēre**, brier, 1532; O.E. *brēr* (masc.).

**bresten**, to burst, 1980; **to-breste**, break in two, 2611; O.E. *berstan*.

**bretful**, full to the brim, 687, 2164.

**brētherhēd**, brotherhood, brothers of a religious order, 511; O.E. *brēþer* + *hēd*.

**brid**, bird, B 4071; O.E. *brid*.

**brooch**, a jewel or pendant. The word *broche* was early confused with *brooch*, a spit, bodkin, and hence the spelling; O.Fr. *broche*.

**brǭde**, plainly, 739.

**brǭke**, see **brēke**.

**brond**, firebrand, burning log, 2339; O.E. *brand*.

**brood**, broad, 155, 471, 3024; O.E. *brād*.

**brōūn**, brown, 109; O.E. *brūn*.

**brōwdynge**, embroidery, 2498.
**broyded**, braided, 1049.
**brymstoon**, brimstone, 629.
**bŭlte**, built, 1548; from **bŭlde**; O.E. **byldan*.
**bulte**, bolt, sift, B 4430; O.Fr. *buleter*.
**burdōūn, bar a stif**, sang a loud bass, 673.
**burgeys**, citizen, burgess, 369; O.Fr. *burgeis*.
**burned**, burnished, 1983; O.Fr. *burnir*.
**busk** (North.), **bussh**, bush, 1517, 2013.
**but, but if**, if, unless, 351, 582; O.E. *būte; see* § 57.
**bȳ**, in, 595; in the case of, 1673; **by myself**, in my own case, 1813.
**bȳ and bȳ**, side by side, 1011; O.E. *bī and bī*.
**by-lāpe**, befool, make sport of, 1585.
**bȳynge**, buying, 569; O.E. *bycgan*.

## C

**caas**, chance, misfortune, 844; pl. cases (at law), 323; O.Fr. *cas*.
**caas**, quiver, 2358; cf. O.Fr. *casse*.
**cacche**, to catch, take, 498; O.Fr. *cachier*.
**can**, see **kan**.
**cantel**, corner, part, 3008; O.Fr. *cantel*.
**cappe**, hood; **sette hir aller cappe**, overreached, swindled them all, 586; O.E. *cæppe*.
**careyne**, carrion, carcass, 2013; O.Fr. *caroigne*.
**carl**, churl, fellow, 545; O.N. *karl*.
**carole**, a round dance, 1931; O.Fr. *carole*.
**carpe**, talk, chatter, perhaps with sub-meaning of criticise, 474; O.N. *karpa*.
**carte**, chariot, cart, 2022; O.N. *kartr*.
**cartēre**, charioteer, 2022.
**cast**, plot, 2468; O.N. *kast*.
**caste**, devise, suppose, 2172, 2854, B 4265; O.N. *kasta*.
**catapŭce**, spurge, B 4155.
**catel**, goods, valuable property of any kind, 373, 540; O.Fr. *catel*.
**caytyf**, wretched, a wretch, 924, 1552, 1717; O.Fr. *caitif*.
**ceint**, girdle, 329; O.Fr. *ceint*.
**celle**, a small religious house dependent on a larger one, 172; cell, 1376.
**centaure**, centaury, 4153.
**cerial, oke**, a kind of oak, holm oak, 2290.
**certes**, certainly, 1145.
**cerūce**, lead ointment, 630; F. *ceruse*.
**champartīe**, a partnership in dominion, 1949.
**champiōūn**, a champion, almost equivalent to 'prize-fighter,' 239; O.Fr. *champion*.
**chāpe**, to furnish with a *chape*, i.e. the metal point of a scabbard, N.E.D.
**chapman**, a merchant, supercargo, 397; O.E. *cēapmann*.

**chār**, car, chariot, 2138; O.Fr. *char.*

**chārge**, harm, 1284, 2287; O.Fr. *charge.*

**chasteyn**, a chestnut tree, 2922; O.Fr. *chastaigne.*

**chaunce**, chance, hap, 1752; O.Fr. *cheance.*

**chaunge**, to change, 348; O.Fr. *changier.*

**chauntrie**, an endowment to pay for masses for the souls of the founder's family, 510; O.Fr. *chanterie.*

**cheere**, face, cheer, 139, 728, 913; O.Fr. *chere.*

**cherl**, fellow, churl, 2459; O.E. *ceorl.*

**chēse**, to choose, 1595, 1614; O.E. *cēosan.*

**cheuentein**, captain, 2555.

**cheuisaunce**, arrangement; O.Fr. *chevissance.*

**chīden**, to chide, scold, 531; O.E. *cīdan.*

**chiken**, a chicken, 380; O.E. *cicen, ciccen.*

**chirkyng**, creaking, 2004; cf. *cearcian* (?) * *ciercan.*

**chiualrie**, knighthood, prowess in battle, 45, 865; a body of men-at-arms, 878.

**chyuachīe**, an expedition, 85; O.Fr. *chevauchie.*

**cronȳcle**, a chronicle, B 4398.

**citole**, a kind of musical instrument with chords, 1959; O.Fr. *citole.*

**clappe**, babble, chatter, B 3971; O.E. *clæppan.*

**clariōunes**, clarion, 2511; O.Fr. *clarion.*

**claree**, a mixed liquor made of wine, honey, and spices, 1471; O.Fr. *claré.*

**claspe**, clasp, 273.

**clenche**, to clamp.

**clēne**, *adj.*, clean, pure; *adv.*, cleanly, 133; O.E. *clǣne.*

**clennesse**, purity (of life), 506; O.E. *clǣnness.*

**clēpe**, to call, cry, 121, 643; O.E. *cleopian.*

**clēr**, *adj.*, clear; **cleere**, *adv.*, clearly, 170, 1062; O.Fr. *cler.*

**clēue**, cleave, 2934; O.E. *cleofian.*

**clōs**, enclosure, yard, B 4550.

**clothered**, clotted, 2745.

**cofre**, chest, 298; O.Fr. *cofre.*

**colēre**, choler, B 4136; O.Fr. *coler.*

**colered**, wearing a collar, 2152.

**colērik**, bilious, 587.

**cōl-fox**, the Brant fox, a variety distinguished for having a greater admixture of black in its fur, N.E.D., B 4405.

**colpons**, shreds, locks, 679; piles, heaps, 2867.

**commūnes**, common people, 2509; cf. O.Fr. adj. *comun.*

**compaas**, circle, 1889; O.Fr. *compas.*

**compassyng**, artifice, 1996.

**compeer**, comrade, 670; O.Fr. *compair.*

**compleyne**, to complain, 908.

**compleynte**, grievance, 2862; O.Fr. *complainte.*

**complexiōūn**, temperament, character, 333.

**composicioun**, arrangement, 848; O.Fr. *composicioun.*

**condicioūn**, social position, 38; manners, 1431; O.Fr. *condicioun.*

**confort**, pleasure, 773; O.Fr. *confort.*

**conforte**, strengthen, aid, 2716.

**confūs**, confused, 2230; O.Fr. *confus.*

**conne**, see **kan**.

**conscience**, tender-heartedness, pity, 150; O.Fr. *conscience.*

**conseil**, counsel, 1141, almost equivalent to 'consent' in 784; (?) confidant, 1147, see note; O.Fr. *conseil.*

**conserue**, to preserve, 2329; O.Fr. *conserver.*

**constellāciōūn**, the grouping of the heavenly bodies in their astrological relations, 1088.

**contek**, strife, 2003.

**contenaunce**, countenance, 1916; O.Fr. *contenance.*

**contrārie**, foe, 1859; O.Fr. adj. *contraire.*

**contree**, part of the country, 216, 1213; O.Fr. *contree.*

**conueye**, to convoy, escort, 2737.

**cop**, top, tip, 554; O.E. *copp.*

**cope**, a priest's cloak, 260; O.Fr. *cope.*

**coppe**, cup, 134; O.E. *cuppa.*

**corāge**, heart; O.Fr. *corage.*

**corōūne**, a crown, 2875; O.Fr. *corone.*

**corrumpāble**, corruptible, 3010.

**cosȳn**, cousin, kinsman, 1131; O.Fr. *cosin.*

**cote**, a small house, cottage, 2457.

**cote-armūre**, a coat worn over armor, and charged with the bearings of the wearer, 1016, 2140; O.Fr. *cote, armure.*

**couched**, trimmed, as with embroidery, 2161, 2933; O.Fr *couchier.*

**cōūntōūr**, 359, see note. O.Fr. *conteor.*

**cōūntrefēte**, imitate, 139.

**cōūrtepȳ**, a short upper coat of coarse material, 290; Du. *kort, pije.*

**couerchief**, kerchief; O.Fr. *couvrechief.*

**couȳne**, trickery, 604; O.Fr. *covine.*

**cowardȳe**, cowardice, 2730.

**coy**, quiet, 119; O.Fr. *coi.*

**cracchynge**, scratching, 2834.

**crafty**, skilful, 1897; O.E. *cræftig.*

**crisp**, crisp, curled, 2165; O.E. *crisp.*

**Cristophre**, an image of St. Christopher worn as a brooch, 115.

**crop**, shoot, top (of a tree), 7, 1532; O.E. *cropp.*

**croys**, cross, 699; O.Fr. *crois.*

**crulle**, curly, curled, 81.

**cryke**, creek, harbor, 409; O.Fr. *crique.*

**cūre**, anxiety, 303, 2853.

**curlōus**, ingenious, clever, 577; O.Fr. *curious*.

**curs**, curse, excommunication, 655; O.E. *curs*.

**curteis**, courteous, 250; O.Fr. *curtois*.

## D

**damoysele**, 'Madam,' the title of a young woman, whether married or unmarried, B 4060.

**dampned**, condemned, doomed, 1175; O.Fr. *damner*. § 88 (a).

**dar**, dare; O.E. *dearr*; see § 185, 5.

**darreyne**, to vindicate one's claim to a person or thing by battle, 1609.

**daun**, **dan**, a title nearly equivalent to Elizabethan 'Master,' 1379, B 3982; O.Fr. *dan* (Lat. *dominus*).

**daunce**, **the olde**, 'the ancient game,' i.e. the game of Love, 476.

**daungēr**, risk, 402, 1849; O.Fr. *danger*.

**daungerōus**, haughty, 517.

**dawe**, to dawn, 1676; O.E. *dagian*.

**dawenynge**, dawn; B 4072.

**dayerȳe**, dairy, 597.

**dayesȳe**, a daisy, 332; O.E. *dæges, ēage*.

**debaat**, strife, 1754.

**debonaire**, gracious, 2282; O.Fr. *debonaire*.

**dēd**, dead, 145, 942, 1005; O.E. *dēad*.

**dēde**, deed, 742; O.E. *dēd* (fem.).

**deduȳt**, pleasure, delight, 2177; O.Fr. *deduit*.

**deedly**, deathlike, mortal, 1082.

**deef**, deaf, 446; O.E. *dēaf*.

**deel**, deal, B 4024; **euery deel**, in all respects, entirely, 2091, 1825; **neuer a deel**, not a whit, not at all, B 4346.

**degree**, a step, 1890; rank, station. 40, 1434; (?) status, 1841; O.Fr. *degre*.

**deliuerly**, quickly, B 4606.

**delue**, to dig, 536; O.E. *delfan*.

**delīt**, delight, pleasure, 335, 1679; O.Fr. *delit*.

**delyuere**, quick, active, 84; O.Fr. *delivre*.

**dēme**, deem, 1881; O.E. *dēman*.

**departe**, to separate, 1134; O.Fr. *departir*.

**departynge**, separation, 2774.

**depeynted** (p.p. of **depeynte**), depicted, 2031; the other form of the p.p. **depeynt** (cf. O.Fr. *depeynt*) may have been used in 2049; O.Fr. *depeindre*.

**dēre**, to injure, 1822; O.E. *derian*.

**derk**, dark, 1995; O.E. *deorc*.

**derr** (comp. of **dēre**, cf. § 125), dearer, 1448; O.E. *deorra*.

**desdeyn, to take in**, despise, frown upon, 789; O.Fr. *desdeigne*.

**despītōus**, haughty, merciless, 516, 1596.

**despīt**, spite, malicious contempt, 941; O.Fr. *despit*.

**destreyne**, to constrain, distress, 1455; O.Fr. *destraindre*.

**dette**, debt, 280; O.Fr. *dette*. (The "b" in the N.E. word is due to Latin spelling.)

**deuoir**, duty, 2598; O.Fr. *devier*, Par.Fr. *devoir*.

**deuȳs**, plan, decision, 816; O.Fr. *devis*.

**deuȳse**, to describe or relate in detail, 34, 994, 1048, 1914; O.Fr. *deviser*.

**deuīsynge**, preparation, 2496.

**deyntee**, *adj.*, valuable, 168; *sb.* delicacy, B 4025; O.Fr. *deinté*.

**deys**, the raised platform at the end of a hall, a table, 370, 2200; O.Fr. *deis*.

**diffȳe**, defy, B 4361.

**digestȳues**, aids to digestion, B 4151.

**dīghte**, dress, 1041; O.E. *dihtan*.

**dīgne**, worthy, 141; haughty, 517; O.Fr. *digne*.

**dischеuelee**, dishevelled, 683; O.Fr. *deschevelé*.

**disconfitynge, disconfitūre**, defeat, 1008, 2719; O.Fr. *disconfiture*.

**disherited**, disinherited, 2926; O.Fr. *desheriter*.

**disioynt**, a difficulty, 2962; O.Fr. *disjointe*.

**dispence**, expense, expenditure, 441, 1882; O.Fr. *despense*.

**dispītously**, angrily, cruelly, 1124.

**disposicīoūn**, position of planetary bodies in the heavens (astrology), 1087; O.Fr. *disposicion*.

**dispūtisoūn**, disputation, B 4428.

**diuynynge**, the forecast of an issue, 2521; O.Fr. v. *deviner*.

**diuinistre**, diviner, prophet, 2811.

**diuīsioun**, distinction; **kan no d.**, recognizes no distinction, 1780; O.Fr. *division*.

**doghtren**, B 4019, cf. § 106.

**doke**, duck, 4580; O.E. *duce*.

**dokke**, to cut short, dock (cf. O.N. *dokr*, a stumpy tail), 590.

**dǭm**, decision, opinion, 323; O.E. *dōm*.

**dominācīoūn**, power, control, 2758; F. *domination*.

**dǭn, doon, doo**, to do, cause, make; **dōn** with inf. **māke, areste**, etc., cause to be, have made, arrested, etc., 1905, B 4210; also with p.p. **dōn wroght**, have made, 1913; O.E. *dōn*. See § 187.

**dong**, dung, 530; O.E. *dung*.

**dǭre**, a door, 550; O.E. n. pl. *doru*.

**dorste**, see **dar**, § 186, 5.

**dōumb**, dumb, 774; O.E. *dumb*.

**dōute**, doubt, fear, 487, 1141; O.Fr. *doute*. (The "b" in N.E. is due to influence of Latin spelling.)

**dōwue**, dove, 1962; O.N. *dūfa*.

**drawe**, to draw, or to carry, 2547; O.E. *dragan*.

**drecche**, to trouble (by dreams), B 4077; O.E. *dreccan*.

**drēde**, fear, 1776.

**drēde**, to fear, dread, 660; O.E. (*on*) *drǣdan*.

**drēdeful**, full of fear, timid, 1479.

**drēm, a dream,** B 4119; O.E. *drēam.*

**drenche,** to drown, p.p. **dreynt,** B 4272; cf. § 175 (6); O.E. *drencan.*

**drenchyng,** drowning, 2456.

**dresse,** to set in order, 106, 2594; O.Fr. *dresser.*

**dreye, drȳe,** dry, 3024; O.E. **drēge;* cf. § 69 (e).

**drogges,** drugs, 426; O.Fr. *drogue.*

**droghte** (o = ou), drought, 2; O.E. *drugaþ* (fem.); Orm., *druhhþe.*

**dronken,** p.p. of **drinke,** 135; cf. O.E. *drincan.*

**dronke,** pret. pl. of **drinke.**

**drǭpe,** a drop, 131; O.E. *dropa.*

**drǭupe,** to droop, 107; O.N. *drūpa;* see note.

**drugge,** to drudge, 1416.

**drȳe,** dry; O.E. *drȳge.*

**dȳapred,** ornamented with small patterns, 2158; O.Fr. *diaprer.*

**dȳched,** moated, 1888; cf. O.E. *dīc,* § 79 (c).

**dȳen,** to die, 1109; l.O.E. *dēgan* (Napier, *Holy Rood,* p. 38); cf. § 69 (c).

**dȳke,** to make ditches, 536; cf. O.E. *dīcian.*

**dȳs,** dice, 1238.

## E

**ecclesiaste,** one who performs public functions in church, 708.

**ēch,** each, 39; O.E. *ǣlc;* cf. § 79 (c).

**ēchǭn, echoon,** each one, 820; O.E. *ǣlc, ān.*

o

**eek, eke,** also, too, 5, 41; O.E. *ēac.*

**eet,** see § 161.

**effect,** fact, substance; **in effect,** practically, 319.

**eft,** again, 1669; O.E. *eft.*

**ēlde,** old age, 2447, 2448; O.E. *eldo.*

**elles,** else, 375; O.E. *elles.*

**embrouded,** covered with embroidery, 89; cf. O.Fr. *enbroder.*

**emforth,** to the extent of, 2235; O.E. *efen, forð.*

**empoysonyng,** poisoning, 2460; O.Fr. *empoisoner.*

**emprīse,** an undertaking, 2540; O.Fr. *emprise.*

**encens,** incense, 2429; O.Fr. *encens.*

**encombred,** embarrassed, hampered, 1718; entangled, involved, 508; O.Fr. *encombre.*

**encrees,** sb., increase, 2184; O. Fr. v. *encreistre.*

**ēndelong,** lengthways, 1991; cf. O.E. *andlang.*

**endīte,** relate, 1380; compose, 95, B 4397; O.Fr. *enditer.*

**engendren,** cause, 4; O.Fr. *engendrer.*

**engȳne,** torture, put on the rack to extort testimony, B 4250.

**enhauncen,** to enhance, to raise, 1434; O.Fr. *enhanser.*

**enhorte,** to encourage, 2851; O. Fr. *enorter.*

**enoynt,** anointed, 2961; O.Fr *enoint.*

**ensample,** example, 496; O.Fr *ensample.*

**entente**, intent, purpose, 1000; O. Fr. *entente*.

**entūne**, intone, 123; see note.

**enuȳned**, having store of wine, 342; cf. O.Fr. *enviner*.

**ercedḗkene**, archdeacon, 658; O. E. *earcediacon*.

**ēre**, to plough, 886; O.E. *erian*.

**eschaunge**, exchange, 278; O. Fr. *eschange*.

**eschūe**, eschew, shun, 3043; O. Fr. *eschiver*.

**ēse, dōn**, to provide entertainment for, 768; O.Fr. *aaisie*.

**ēse**, entertain; cf. N.E. easement = entertainment.

**ēsily**, easily.

**espȳe**, to discover, 1112, 1420; O.Fr. *espier*.

**ēst**, east, 2601; O.E. *ēast*.

**estāt**, condition, 203, 522; O.Fr. *estat*.

**estātly, -lich**, stately, in a dignified way, 140, 281.

**estres**, the inner parts of a building, 1971; O.Fr. *estre*.

**ēsy**, moderate, 441; O.Fr. *aisie*.

**eterne**, eternal, 1109, 1990; O.Fr. *eterne*.

**ēuerych**, every, 241; every one, 371, 2127; O.E. *ǣfre-ylc*.

**ēuerich a**, every single, 733; cf. § 117.

**ēuerychōn**, every one, 31, 747; O.E. *ǣfre-ylc, ān*.

**ēuermoore**, always, 67.

**ew**, yew-tree, 2923; O.E. *ēow*.

**expōwne**, to expound, B 4305.

**ey**, an egg, B 4035; O.E. *ǣg*.

**eye**, eye; see **ȳe**.

**eyle**, to ail, 1081; O.E. *eglan*.

## F

**facultee**, profession, 244; O.Fr. *faculté*.

**fāder**, father, 100; gen. sing. **fāder**, 781; O.E. *fæder*; see § 97 (b).

**fadme**, fathom; plural **fadme**, 2916; O.E. *fæðm* (fem.); see § 100.

**fair**, *adj.*, beautiful, fair, good; O.E. *fæger*.

**faire**, *adv.*, gracefully, well, neatly.

**fairnesse**, beauty, 1098; beauty of character, 519.

**faldyng**, a coarse, rough kind of cloth, 391.

**falle**, befall, 585; O.E. *befeallan*; see § 163.

**falwe**, pale, 1364; O.E. *fealo* (case-stem *fealw-*).

**famulier**, on good terms with (like one of the household), 215; O.Fr. *famulier*.

**fāre**, goings on, ado, 1809; O.E. *faru*.

**fāre**, to go, proceed, 1395; live, 1265; O.E. *faran*; cf. § 162.

**farse**, to line, stuff, 233; O.Fr. *farcir*.

**faste**, near, close, 1476, 1688; O.E. *fæste*.

**faught**, pt. sg. of **fīghte**, see § 158.

**fayn**, gladly; **fain wolde I**, I should like to, 766; O.E. *fægen*.

**fedde**, pret. of **fēde**, 146; §§ 172, 55.

**feeld**, a field, 886; O.E. *feld*.

**felaweshipe**, company, 32; O.N. *felagi*, O.E. *scipe*.

**feld**, p.p. of **felle**, to cut down, 2924; O.E. *fellan*.

**Femenȳe**, the land of the Amazons, 866; O.Fr. *Femenie* (see Godefroy).

**fer**, *adj. and adv.*, far, 388, 1850; O.E. *feorr*; see § 125.

**fer ne neer**, a phrase used with numbers, 'exactly,' 1850; cf. *Rom. of the Rose*, 1098.

**ferde** (really pt. of **fēre**, but given to **fāre**), behaved, acted, 1372, 1647; see § 162, note 6.

**ferforthly**, 960, see note.

**fermacīe**, medicinal prescription (originally purgative), 2713; cf. O.Fr. *farmacie*.

**ferne**, distant, 14; O.E. *feorrane* (see Anglia, I. 476).

**ferre**, see **fer**; O.E. *fierra*.

**ferreste**, see **fer**.

**ferther**, further, 36; O.E. *furðra*, contaminated with *ferre*.

**ferthyng**, fourth part, a small portion (cf. N.E. *farthing*), 134, 255; O.E. *feorðing*.

**fēste**, a feast, festival, 883; O.Fr. *feste*.

**fēste**, to make a feast, 2193; O.Fr. *festier*.

**fet**, p.p. of **fette**, to bring, 819, 2527; O.E. *fetian*.

**fētys**, shapely, 157; O.Fr. *faitis*.

**fētisly**, nicely, 124; cf. N.E. *featly*.

**fey**, faith, 1126, a later form of **feith**; O.Fr. *fai*.

**feyne**, to invent, to counterfeit, 705, 736; O.Fr. *feindre*.

**fil**, pt. of **falle**, 131; O.E. *feallan*; see § 163.

**firre**, fir tree, 2921; O.E. * *fyre*.

**fithele**, fiddle, 296; O.N. *fiðla*.

**flatōur**, flatterer, B 4515; O.Fr. *flateor*.

**flaugh**, B 4421, pret. of **flēn**; see § 155.

**Flaundryssh**, Flemish, 272.

**flēn**, to flee from, 1170; to fly, B 4132; O.E. *flēon*; cf. § 155, note 3.

**fleete**, to flow, swim, 2397; O.E. *flēotan*.

**flēsh**, meat, 147; O.E. *flǣsc*.

**flex**, flax, 676; O.E. *fleax*.

**fley**, **fleigh**, pret. of **flēn**, **flȳe**, B 4362 var.; see § 155.

**flotery**, wavy, flowing, 2883; cf. O.E. *flotorian*.

**flōur de lȳs**, a lily, 238.

**floytynge**, playing on a flute, 91; other forms in M.E. are *flowte*, *fluite*; cf. N.E.D. 'flute.'

**flȳ**, pret. of **flēn**, **flȳe**; see § 155.

**flȳe**, to fly, flee; O.E. *flēogan*; see § 155.

**folwe**, to follow, 2367; O.E. *folgian*.

**foond**, pret. of **finde**, B 4019.

**foo**, **fō**, foe, enemy, 63; O.E. *fā* (pl. of adj. *fāh*).

**foom**, foam, 1659; O.E. *fām*.

**foot mantel**, 472; see note.

**for**, because, 443, against, B 4307, as, 413; **for any thing**, in spite

of everything, at all hazards, 276; O.E. *for.*

**for-**, as a prefix to an adj. intensifies the notion expressed by it; e.g. **for-black**, 2144; **for-old**, 2142.

**fordō̤**, to destroy, 1560; O.E. *fordōn.*

**forfē̤red**, badly frightened, B 4576, (see var. readings).

**forn-cast**, foreordained, B 4407.

**forneys**, furnace, 202; O.E. *fornaise.*

**for-pȳned**, wasted away by torment, 205; O.E. *for-, pīnian.*

**fors, dō̤ nō̤ fors of**, pay no attention to, B 4131; O.Fr. *force.*

**forslewthen**, to lose through delay, B 4286.

**forster**, an officer who has charge of a forest, 117 (probably here = huntsman); O.F. *forestier.*

**forthren**, to further, to aid, 1148; O.E. *fyrþran* (?) contaminated with *forth.*

**forthȳ**, therefore, 1841; *þȳ* is the instrumental case of the O.E. definite article.

**fortūnen**, to forecast favorably, 417, 2377; O.Fr. *fortuner.*

**forward**, covenant, agreement, 829; O.E. *forweard.*

**forwite**, to know beforehand, B 4424.

**forwityng**, foreknowledge, prescience, B 4433.

**forwoot**, pret. of **forwitan.**

**forȳē̤te**, forget, 1882; O.E. *forgetan.*

**forȳē̤ue**, to forgive, 743, 1818, O.E. *forgefan.*

**fother**, a cart-load, 1908; O.E. *fother.*

**fōughte**, pret. pl. of **fighte**; l. O.E. *fihtan.*

**fōundre** (of a horse), to stumble, 2687; O.Fr. *funder.*

**fōwl, fowel**, bird, 9, 190, 2437; O.E. *fugol.*

**foyne**, thrust, 1654, 2550; cf. O.Fr. *foine.*

**frakenes**, freckles, 2169.

**frankeleyn**, a substantial farmer, squire, 216.

**fraternitee**, a guild of craftsmen, 364.

**frē̤dom**, generosity, nobility, 46; O.E. *frēodōm.*

**freend**, a friend, 1468, relative, 992; O.E. *frēond.*

**freendlich, freendly**, friendly, 1652, 2680; O.E. *frēondlīc;* see § 121.

**frē̤re**, friar, 208; O.Fr. *frere.*

**frē̤te**, to eat (p.p. **freten**), 2019; O.E. *fretan.*

**frō̤**, from; O.N. *frā.*

**ful**, *adv.*, very.

**fulfille**, fill full, 940; O.E. *fullfyllan.*

**fūme**, B 4114; see note.

**fustian**, a kind of coarse cloth made of cotton and flax, 75; cf. O.Fr. *fustiane.*

**fȳle**, to file, polish, 2152.

**fȳnde**, to invent, 736, to provide for, B 4019; O.E. *findan.*

**Fynystere**, Cape Finisterre in Spain, 408.

## G

**gabbe**, to mock, jest, B 4256; O.N. *gabba.*

**gadre**, to gather; O.E. *gædrian.*

**gaitrys**, a kind of dogwood; see *gaiter*, N.E.D.

**Galgopheye**, Gargaphia, 2626.

**Galice**, Gallicia, in Spain, 466.

**Galyen**, Galen, 431.

**galyngāle**, a sort of spice, 381; O.Fr. *galingal.*

**gāme**, fun, sport, joke, 1806; O.E. *gamen.*

**gāme**, to please (impersonal); **him gamed**, it pleased him; O.E. *gamian.*

**gan**, pret. of **ginnen**, often used as an auxiliary verb with scarcely translatable force; **gan praye**, would pray, 301; **gan espye**, noticed, 1112.

**gāpe**, to yawn, 2008; O.E. *geapian.*

**gap**, an opening in a thicket or hedge, 1639.

**gargat**, throat, gullet, B 4525; O.Fr. *gargate.*

**garleek**, garlic, 634; O.E. *garlēac.*

**gastly**, horrible, 1984; O.E. *gāstlic*, § 55. (The "h" in the N.E. word is due to l. M.E. spelling.)

**gat**, see **gē̆te**.

**gat tōthed**, having the teeth wide apart, 468; see note.

**Gatesden**, John Gatisden of Oxford (fourteenth century), 434.

**gauded**, fitted with 'gaudies' (beads in the rosary, marking the five joys of the Virgin), 159; O.Fr. *gaude.*

**gaude grē̆ne**, a light green color, 2079.

**Gaufred**, Geoffry de Vinsauf, an Anglo-Norman poet, B 4537.

**Gaunt**, Ghent in Flanders, celebrated for cloth-making, 448.

**gay**, gaudily dressed, 74; O.Fr. *gai.*

**gayler**, jailer, 1064; O.Fr. *gaiolier.*

**gayne**, to profit (used impersonally), 1176, 2755; O.N. *gegna.*

**geere**, gear, utensils, 352; armor and weapons, 1016; goings on, 1372, 1531; cf. O.E. *gearwe.*

**geery**, changeable, 1536; see N.E.D. s.v.

**geldyng**, gelding, used opprobriously, 541; O.N. *geldingr.*

**gentil**, noble, 72; O.Fr. *gentil.*

**gē̆reful**, changeable, 1538.

**gerland**, garland; O.Fr. *gerlande.*

**Gernade**, Granada, 56.

**gernēr**, garner; O.Fr. *gerner.*

**gesse**, suppose, think, guess, 82, 118; cf. M.L.G. *gissen.*

**gē̆te**, to get, obtain, 291; see § 161, note 1.

**gigge**, to fit the arm-straps or *guiges* of a shield; cf. N.E.D., 2504; O.Fr. *guige.*

**Gilbertyn**, Gilbertus Anglicus, 434.

**giltelees**, guiltless, 1312.

**gipsēr**, a purse or wallet, 357; O.Fr. *gibeciere*.

**girde**, to gird, 329; O.E. *gyrdan*.

**girles**, young people of either sex, 664.

**girt**, p.p. of **girde**.

**gīse**, disposition, manner; **at his owene gise**, according to methods of his own, 663.

**gladēre**, gladdener, 2223.

**glārynge**, staring, 684; M.L.G. *glaren*.

**gleede**, live coal, 1997; O.E. *glēd* (fem.).

**gō̧, gō̧n**, to go, walk, 171, 450; O.E. *gān;* see § 187.

**gobet**, fragment, 696; O.Fr. *gobet*.

**Godhȩ̄de**, godhead, divinity, 2381.

**goliardeys**, a buffoon, 560; O.Fr. *goliardois*.

**gonne** (**o** = **u**), pret. pl. of **ginne**.

**good**, property, 581; O.E. *gōd*.

**goodeman**, host of an inn, 850.

**goodly**, *adj.*, courteous, obliging, B 4010; *adv.*, courteously, 803.

**goolde**, marigold, 1929.

**good-wyf**, a respectable woman, 445.

**goost**, spirit, 205; O.E. *gāst*.

**Gootlond**, Gottland, an island in the Baltic Sea, 408.

**gouernaunce**, management, self-control, demeanor, 281; control, 1313, B 4055.

**gōwne**, gown, 93; O.Fr. *goune*.

**grāce**, favor, 1245; O.Fr. *grace*.

**graunt**, grant, permission, 1306.

**graunt-mercy**, gramercy, thanks, B 4160; O.Fr. *grant merci*.

**grȩ̄ce**, grease; O.Fr. *gresse*.

**gree**, superiority, 2733; O.Fr. *gré*.

**grȩ̄ne**, green cloth, i.e. Lincoln green, 103; green stone, emerald, 159.

**Grȩ̄te See**, the Middle English name for the part of the Mediterranean Sea which washes the Holy Land, 59.

**grȩ̄ue**, a grove, 1495; **greues**, green branches, 1507.

**grisly**, horrible, 1363; O.E. *grīslīc*.

**grō̧nen**, to groan, snore, B 4076, B 4080; **gronyng**, groaning; O.E. *grānian*.

**grō̧pe**, test, 644; O.E. *grāpian*.

**grōund**, the part of lace on which the pattern is worked, 453.

**groynynge**, grumbling, discontent, 2460; cf. O.Fr. *grogner*.

**grucche**, to murmur, grumble, 3045; O.Fr. *grouchier*.

**gruf**, flat on the face, 949; cp. O.N. *a grufu*.

**grȳs**, gray fur, 194; O.Fr. *gris*.

**gȳe**, to guide, 1950; O.Fr. *gvier*.

**gȳle**, deceit; O.Fr. *gvile*.

**gynglen**, to jingle, 170.

**gypon, gypōun**, a short coat worn under the hauberk, 75, 2120.

## H

**haberdassher**, a seller or maker of hats, 361.

**habergeoun**, a coat of mail, 76, 2119; O.Fr. *habergeon* (*ge* is merely the indication of 'soft' *g*).

**hāde**, pret. of **hāue**; see § 84 (b).

**haf**, pret. of **hę̄ue**; see § 162.

**halwe**, saint, 14; O.E. *halga*; see § 80 (d).

**Haly**, an Arabian physician of the eleventh century, 431.

**hamer**, hammer; O.E. *hamor*.

**hān**, contracted 3d pl. and infin. of **hāuen**.

**hardy**, bold, 882; O.F. *hardi*.

**hardily**, surely, I am sure, 156.

**harlot**, rascal, 647; O.Fr. *harlot*.

**harlotries**, ribald stories or actions, 561.

**harneys**, harness, armor, 2696; O.Fr. *harneis*.

**harre**, hinge, 550; O.E. *hearre*.

**harrōw̄**, a cry for help, B 4235; O.Fr. *harou*.

**harȳe**, drag, 2726; O.Fr. *harier*.

**hauberk**, a coat of mail, 2431; O.Fr. *hauberc*.

**hāue**, to have; O.E. *habban*; see § 174.

**haunt**, practice, skill, 447; O.Fr. *hant*.

**heed**, head; O.E. *hēafod*; see § 84 (b).

**heeld**, pret. of **hō̤lde**; O.E. *healdan*.

**heelp**, pret. of **helpe**, to help; O.E. *helpan*; see § 158.

**heep**, heap, number, 575; O.E. *hēap*.

**hē̤r**, hair; O.E. *hār*.

**heere**, here; O.E. *hēr*, § 120.

**heere**, to hear, 169; O.E. *hēran*.

**heete**, to promise, 2398; O.E. *hātan*; see § 164, note 1.

**hę̄th**, heath; O.E. *hǣð*.

**heigh, hīgh, hȳ**, deep, 1065; extreme, 1798; O.E. *hēah, hēh*; cf. § 72 (c).

**hę̄le**, health, 1271; O.E. *hālu*.

**hę̄le**, to cover, hide, B 4245; O.E. *hēlan*.

**hę̄ng**, pret. of *honge*; see § 163.

**henne**, hence, 2356; O.E. *heonane*.

**hente**, seize, catch, 299, 904; O.E. *hentan*, pt. *hente*; cf. § 175 (2).

**heraud**, herald, 1017; O.Fr. *heraut*.

**herbergāge**, lodging, B 4179; O.Fr. *herbergage*.

**herberwe**, harbor, 403, inn, 765; O.N. *herbergi*.

**herbe yue**, ? **herbyue**, ground-pine, B 4156; see N.E.D., s.v.

**hē̤rd**, haired, 2518; O.E. *hār* + *ed*.

**hierde**, a shepherd, 603; O.E. *heorde*.

**Hereos**, Eros, god of love, 1374.

**herkne**, hearken, listen, 1526; O.E. *heorcnian*.

**hert**, a hart, 1689; O.E. *heort*.

**herte**, heart, 150; O.E. *heorte*.

**herte-spoon**, the depression at the end of the breast-bone, 2606; O.E. *heorte, spōn*.

**heste**, command; O.E. *hǣs* (fem.), with inorganic *t* and consequent shortening.

**hę̄then**, heathen; O.E. *hǣðen*.

**hę̄thenesse**, heathendom, 49; O.E. *hǣðennes* (fem.).

**hę̄ue**, to heave, lift, 550; O.E. *hebban*, see § 162, note 5.

**hę̄uenly**, heavenly; O.E. *heofonlīc.*

**hę̄uynesse**, sorrow, sadness, B 3959; O.E. *hefignes* (fem.).

**hewe**, complexion, hue, 394; O.E. *hēow.*

**hewe**, to hew, to cut, 1422; O.E. *hēawian.*

**hider**, hither, 672; O.E. *hider.*

**hidōus**, hideous, 1978; O.Fr. *hideus.*

**hīghte**, promise, be called, 1557; **hīghte**, was called, 616, 2472; O.E. *hātan;* see p. lxii, note 1.

**hīghte**, height; **on hīghte**, aloud, 1784; O.E. *hiehþo.*

**hindreste**, hindmost; O.N. *hindre.*

**hipe**, hip, 472; O.E. *hype.*

**hir**, her; O.E. *hire.*

**hir**, their, of them, 1178; O.E. *hiera.*

**hit**, it; O.E. *hit.*

**hǭlde**, to hold, esteem, 1307; O.E. *healdan.*

**holpen**, p.p. of **helpe**.

**holt**, grove, 6; O.E. *holt.*

**holwe**, hollow, 1363; O.E. sb. *holh* with case stem **holg-*.

**hond**, hand; O.E. *hand.*

**honeste**, seemly, becoming, 246; O.Fr. *honeste.*

**honge**, to hang, 2410; O.E. *hangian;* see § 163.

**hoo**, the heralds' call to put an end to battle, 1706; O.N. *hō.*

**hool**, whole, 3006; O.E. *hāl* (for N.E. inorganic *w* see § 36).

**hoold**, custody, B 4064.

**hoomly**, plainly, simply, 328; cf. O.E. *hām.*

**hoppestēre**; O.E. *hoppestre;* see note to 2017.

**hostilēr**, innkeeper, landlord, 241; O.Fr. *hostelier.*

**hǭte**, hotly; cf. O.E. *hāt.*

**hōūnd**, dog, 947; O.E. *hund.*

**hōūwpe**, whoop, B 4590; O.Fr. *houper.*

**hōūsbondrīe**, economy, B 4018; cf. O.E. *hūsbonda.*

**humblesse**, humility, 1781; O.Fr. *humblesse.*

**hunte**, huntsman, 1678; O.E. *hunta.*

**hurtle**, to hurl, 2616; cf. O.Fr. *hurter.*

**hust**, hushed, 2981; p.p. of **huschen**.

**hȳ**, high; **heigh weye**, highway, 897; **hȳer hond**, upper hand, 399; O.E. *hēah, hēh,* see § 72 (c).

**hȳe**, *adv.*, upright, 271, 2075.

**hȳe**, to hasten, hie, 2274; O.E. *hīgian.*

**hȳe**, haste, 2979.

**hȳne**, servant, 603; l.O.E. *hīne* (pl.).

## I (*Vowel; see* § 6)

**ilke**, same, 175; O.E. *ilca.*

**in**, inn, B 4216; oblique case **inne** (or perhaps due to O.N. *inni*), 2436.

**inequāl, hōūres inequāles** (§ 116), an astronomical term to denote the hours of planets, as dis-

**tinguished** from the hours of the clock, 2271; see *Astrolabe*, 194.

**Infect**, invalidated, 320.

**inne**, to lodge, 2192; O.E. *innian*.

**inne**, *adv.*, in, within, 1618; O.E. *inne*.

**inspīre**, quicken, breathe life into, 6; cf. Lat. *inspīrare*.

**Iye**, see **ȳe**.

I (*Consonant; see* § 8)

**Iāde**, a jade, a wretched horse, B 4002.

**Ialōūs**, jealous, 1329; O.Fr. *jalous*.

**Ianglēre**, a prater, babbler, 560; cf. O.Fr. *jangler*.

**Iāpe**, trick, jest, 705; O.Fr. *jape*.

**Iāpe**, to fool, make sport of, 1729.

**Ieet**, jet, B 4051; O.Fr. *jaiet*.

**Iet**, fashion, 682; O.Fr. *get*.

**Iolitee**, gayety, pleasure, 1807; O.Fr. *joliveté*.

**Iolȳf**, pleasant, B 4624.

**Iournee**, day's journey, 2738; O.Fr. *jornee*.

**Iūgement**, judgment; O.Fr. *jugement*.

**Iuste**, to joust, tilt, 96, 2486; O.Fr. *jouster*.

**Iuste**, a tournament, 2720; O.Fr. *jouste*.

**Iustise**, justice; O.Fr. *justice*.

**Iuwise**, judgment, 1739; O.Fr. *juise*.

K

**kan** as auxiliary has in M.E. the senses of N.E. 'can'; as independent verb it means 'know,' 210, 1780; **kan thank**, recognizes the obligation, is grateful, 1808.

**keep**, care, heed; cf. O.E. *cēpan*.

**kembd**, combed, kempt, tidy, 2143; O.E. *cemban*.

**kempe**, (?) shaggy, bristly, 2134.

**kēne**, sharp, 104; O.E. *cēne*.

**kēpēre**, head of a '*celle*,' 172.

**kinrēde**, kindred; O.E. *cynrēden*.

**knarre**, a thick-set fellow, 549.

**knarry**, gnarled, knotty, 1977.

**knāue**, a boy, a servant, 2728; O.E. *cnafa*.

**knobbe**, swelling, wen, 633.

**knȳghthēde**, knighthood, 2789; cf. O.E. *cniht*.

**kōwthe**, well-known, famous, 14.

**kȳn**, pl. of **cōw**; see § 106.

**kȳnd**, nature, 2451, B 4386.

L

**laas**, cord, 392; pl. **laas**, toils, 1817; O.Fr. *las*.

**lacerte**, muscle, 2753; O.Fr. *lacerte*.

**ladde**, pret. of **lēde**; O.E. *lǣdde*; see § 55, note 1.

**lafte**, pret. of **lēue**; O.E. *lǣfte*; see § 55, note 1.

**langāge**, **fair**, pleasant talk, 211.

**lārge**, adv., broadly, coarsely, 734; cf. O.Fr. *large*.

**lasse**, less, 1756; O.E. *lǣssa*; see § 55, note 1.

**lat**, imperative of **lēte**; cf. § 163, note 1.

**lāte**, lately; O.E. *late*.

**latōūn**, an alloy of copper and

zinc, like brass in appearance, 699; O.Fr. *laton.*

**launde**, an open space in a wood, a glade, 1691; O.Fr. *lande.*

**laurēr**, laurel; O.Fr. *laurier.*

**laxatȳf**, a purging medicine, laxative, B 4133.

**laynēres**, the thongs that held together the parts of the armor, 2504; O.Fr. *lainier.*

**lazar**, a leper; but loosely used of any one with running sores, 242, 245.

**lęchecraft**, medical skill, 2745; O.E. *lǣcecræft.*

**lęde**, to lead; O.E. *lǣdan.*

**leed**, a stationary cauldron placed over a **forneys**, 202; O.E. *lēad.*

**leef**, dear, pleasing, used in impersonal constructions, e.g. **hym was lęuere** (comp.), 'he would rather,' 293; **bę hym looth or lief**, 'whether he likes it or not,' 1837; O.E. *lēof.*

**lęp**, pret. of **lępe**, to leap; O.E. *hlēapan.*

**lęme**, gleam, B 4120; O.E. *lēoma.*

**lęne**, to lend, give, 611, 3082; O.E. *lǣnan* (Gmc. **lānjan*).

**lenger**, longer; see § 124.

**lengthe**, length, height; **of euene lengthe**, well-proportioned, 83; O.E. *lengþ* (fem.).

**lēopart, lēpart**, a leopard, 2186; O.Fr. *leopard.*

**lēōūn**, lion, 2186.

**lęre**, to teach, learn; O.E. *lǣran* (Goth. *laisjan*).

**lerne**, to learn; O.E. *leornian.*

**lęse**, to lose; O.E. *lēosan.*

**lęst**, least; O.E. *lǣst.*

**lest** (Kent.), joy, 132; O.E. *lyst.*

**leste**, pret. of **leste**, impers. verb; **vs leste**, we were fain, 750; O.E. *lystan;* see **liste.**

**lęsynge**, lie, 1927; O.E. *lēasung.*

**lęte**, to leave, neglect to do, 1335; O.E. *lǣtan.*

**lette**, to hinder, stand in the way of, 889, 1892; pret. **lette**; O.E. *lettan.*

**Lettow**, Lithuania, 54.

**letuārie**, electuary (a medicine compounded of powder mixed with some syrup), 426; O.Fr. *lettuair.*

**lęue**, to believe; O.E. *lēfan.*

**lęue**, to leave; see **lafte.**

**lęuere**, see **leef.**

**lęwed**, lay, unlearned; **lęwed man**, a layman, 574; O.E. *lǣwed.*

**leye**, to lay; O.E. *lecgan;* see § 173 (a), note 1.

**leysēr**, leisure; O.Fr. *leisir.*

**licenciat**, a monk or priest having special license by the Pope to hear confessions and administer penance independently of the local ordinaries, 220.

**licōūr**, sap, 3; O.Fr. *likeur.*

**lief**, see **leef.**

**līen**, to lie, to stay at an inn, 20; O.E. *licgan;* § 161, note 3.

**līfly**, in a lifelike way, 2087; O.E. *līflīce.*

**ligge**, 2205, B 4415; see **līen** and § 161, note 3.

**līgne**, lineage, 1551; O.Fr. *ligne*.

**līke**, to please, impers. verb; **if yow līketh**, if it please you, 777; O.E. *līcian*.

**lipse**, lisp, 264; O.L.G. *wlispen*.

**list**, 3d sing. of **liste, leste**, 583; see § 177.

**liste**, to please (impers.), **as hir liste**, as it pleased her; O.E. *lystan*.

**litel, lite**, § 83 (b), little, humble, poor, 490; O.E. *lytel*.

**lith**, a limb or part of the body, B 4065; O.E. *liþ*.

**līth**, 3d pres. sg. of *līen*.

**lǭde**, load; O.E. *lād* (fem.).

**lǭdemenāge**, pilotage, 403; O.E. *lād*, 'course'; O.Fr. *menage*.

**lǭkyn**, shut up (as in a chest), B 4065 (apparently a strong part. of a weak verb); O.E. *locian*.

**loodsterre**, the pole star, 2059; O.E. *lād, steorra*.

**looke**, see, look, consider, B 4318; O.E. *lōcian*.

**lond**, land; **of a lond**, in the world, 194; **in londe**, in the country, away, B 4069; **vpon lond**, back in the country, 702.

**longe**, to belong; O.E. *langian*.

**longen**, to desire, long for, 12; O.E. *langian*.

**looth**, unpleasant, 486, 1837; O.E. *lāþ*.

**lǭrd**, lord; **lord and sire**, president, chairman, 355; O.E. *hlāford*.

**lǭrdynges**, a term of address corresponding to N.E. 'gentlemen,' 761.

**lǭre**, learning; O.E. *lār* (fem.).

**los**, loss; O.E. *los*.

**losengeōūr**, a flatterer, B 4516; O.Fr. *losengeur*.

**lōūde**, loudly; O.E. *hlūde*.

**loueday**, a day appointed for the settlement of disputes, 258.

**louyēre**, a lover, 80; cf. O.E. *lufu* (an instance of the continental Fr. suffix *-ier* added to an English word; so *tiliere*, *Boece*, 1638).

**lowe**, humbly, 1405.

**lowely**, modest, 99; O.N. *lāgliga*.

**Loy**, St. Eligius, 120.

**lūce**, carp, 350; O.Fr. *luz*; Lat. *luceus*.

**lüst** (S.W. vowel), pleasure, 192; O.E. *lyst*.

**lustily**, gayly, 1529.

**lüsty**, gay, 80.

**lüstynesse**, pleasure, 1939.

**lychwāke** (?), **lychewāke**, a wake, 2958; O.E. *līc*, 'body,' *wacu*, 'watching.'

**Lyeys**, Ayas, in Asiatic Turkey (taken by Pierre de Lusignan in 1367), 58.

**Lygurge**, Lycurgus, 2129.

**lȳk**, like; O.E. *gelīc*.

**lym**, limb; O.E. *lim*.

**lymytōūr**, a friar licensed to beg within a certain limit, 209; cf. Lat. *limes*.

**lynāge**, lineage, 1110; O.Fr *linage*.

**lȳnde**, linden or lime tree, 2922; O.E. *lind* (fem.).

**lystes**, lists (sing.), 1713; O.Fr. *listes*.

**lytarge**, white lead, 629; O.Fr. *litharge*.

**lȳues**, living, 2395; cf. § 191.

## M

**maad**, p.p. of **māke**; see § 79 (d).

**maat**, sorrowful, 955; O.Fr. *mat*.

**maist**, mayest, § 185, 1; **maistow**, § 129.

**maister**, a master, employer; **maister-streete**, the high street, 2902; O.Fr. *maistre*.

**maistrȳe**, **for the maistrȳe**, prēeminently; 165, = Fr. *pour le maistrie*.

**māke**, companion, 2556; O.E. *gemaca*, O.N. *maki*.

**māke**, make, compose, 95; O.E. *macian*.

**māle**, wallet, 694; O.Fr. *male*.

**malencolȳe**, melancholy; cf. O.Fr. *melancolie*.

**Malkyn**, name of a servant girl, B 4574.

**Malle**, name of a sheep, B 4021.

**manāce**, threat; O.Fr. *manace*.

**manāsynge**, threatening, warning, 2035.

**maner**, **no maner wight**, no sort of person, nobody, 71; **euery maner wight**, everybody, 1875.

**manly**, handsome, 167.

**mantelet**, a short mantle, 2163.

**manȳe**, mania, madness, 1374; O.Fr. *manie*.

**many oon**, many a one; O.E. *manig*, *ān*.

**marchant**, merchant; O.Fr. *marchand*.

**māre**, mare, applied indiscriminately in M.E. to any undersized, ill-conditioned horse; used opprobriously in 691, perhaps with pun on **mare**, *incubus*; O.E. *mearh*, pl. *mearas*.

**martire**, to torment, 1562; cf. O.E. *martyr*.

**mary-bǭnes**, marrow-bones, 380; O.E. *mearh*, *bān*.

**matēre**, matter; O.Fr. *matere*.

**matrimoigne**, matrimony, 3095; O.Fr. *matrimoine*.

**maugree**, in spite of, 1169, 2618; O.Fr. *maugré*.

**maunciple**, a purchasing officer, 544; cf. O.Fr. *mancipe*.

**Maure**, St. Maur, a disciple of St. Benedict, 173.

**māze**, a confused fancy, B 4283.

**meede**, reward, 770; O.E. *mēd* (fem.).

**meede**, a mead, meadow; O.E. *mād* (fem.).

**meeth**, mead, 2279; O.N. *miöðr*.

**medlee**, variegated, parti-colored, 328; O.Fr. *medlee*.

**Meleagre**, Meleager, 2071.

**memōrie**, **in memorie**, conscious, 2698; O.Fr. *memorie*.

**menciōūn**, mention, O.Fr. *mention*.

**mēne**, to mean, intend; O.E. *mǣnan*.

**menge**, to mingle, p. p. **ymeind**, 2170; O.E. *mengan*.

**mercenārie**, hireling, 514.

**Mercenrīke**, kingdom of Mercia, B 4302.

**mē̆re**, a mare, 541; O.E. *mere*.

**mery**, fruit, pulp, B 4156, see note.

**merye, myrie, mürie (murierly**, 714), pleasant; O.E. *myrige*, § 63.

**meschaunce**, misfortune, 2009; O.Fr. *mescheance*.

**meschief**, misfortune, 493, 1326; **at meschief**, unfortunate, 2551; O.Fr. *meschief*.

**messagēr**, a messenger; O.Fr. *messager*.

**mesurāble**, moderate; O. Fr. *mesurable*.

**mē̆te**, food; O.E. *mete*.

**mē̆te**, pret. **mette**, p. p. **met**, to dream (impersonal in M.E.), B 4192, B 4116.

**mewe**, a coop, 349; O.Fr. *mue*.

**meynee**, household, 1258; followers, B 4584; O.Fr. *maisnee*.

**ministēr**, an officer of justice; petty magistrate.

**mō̆**, more; see § 125, note 1; O.E. *mā*.

**moche, mochel (o = u)**; **muchel**, much, 132, 2850; O.E. *mycel*.

**mō̆der**, mother; O.E. *mōdor*.

**moeuēre**, mover; O.Fr. *moveor*.

**mō̆ne**, complaint, 1366; cf. O.E. *mānan*.

**mood**, temper, anger, 1760; O.E. *mōd*.

**moore**, more, 1756; O.E. *māra*.

**moornyng**, mourning, 3706; cf. O. E. *murnan*.

**moot**, may, must, ought, be obliged to, cf. § 185, 8; O.E. *mōt*.

**mordre**, murder; O.E. *morðor*.

**mormal**, a running sore, 386; O.Fr. *mal mort* (Lat. *malum mortuum*).

**morne**, *adj.*, morning, 358; O.E. *morne*.

**mortreux**, a kind of stew, 384; O.Fr. *mortreux*.

**morwe, morweninge**, morning, dawn, morrow, 780, 1062; **by the morwe**, in the morning, 334; O.E. *morgen*.

**mosel**, muzzle, 2151; O.Fr. *musel*.

**mottelee**, parti-colored dress, 271; cf. O.Fr. *mattelé*.

**mōuntance**, value, 1570; O.Fr. *montance*.

**mōūs**, mouse; O.E. *mūs*.

**mowe**, pl. of **may**, 2999.

**müchel (muche, meche, miche**, in variant readings), much; O.E. *mycel*.

**mürye**, see **merye**.

**mȳnde**, remembrance, 1402, 1906; O.E. (*ge*) *mynd*.

**mynōūr**, a miner, 2465; O.Fr. *mineur*.

**mysbō̆den** (p.p. of **mysbē̆de**), to insult, injure, 909; O. E. *misbēodan*.

**myscarie**, to come to harm, 513.

**myshappe** (impers.), **me myshappeth**, I am unfortunate, 1646.

**mystēr**, craft, trade, 613; sort of, 1710; O.Fr. *mester*.

**mystēr**, necessity, misfortune, 1340; O.Fr. *mester*.

## N

**nacīōūn**, nation; O.Fr. *nation*.

**nakēre**, kettle-drum, 2511; O.Fr. *nacaire*.

**nam** = **ne am**; O.E. *ne, eom, eam*

**nāmely**, especially.

**namǭ**, **na mo**, cf. O.E. *nā, mā*.

**narette** = **ne arette**.

**narwe**, close, narrow, 625; O.E. *nearu*.

**nas** = **ne was**, was not; O.E. *ne, wæs*.

**nat**, not; O.E. *nāwiht, naht*.

**nath** = **ne hath**.

**nathelees**, nevertheless, 35; O.E. *nā-þe-lāes*.

**nayl**, claw, 2141; O.E. *nægl*.

**ne**, not, usually before the verb in a negative sentence, 70; **ne**, *conj.*, nor, 526; **ne . . . ne**, neither . . . nor, 603.

**nēdely**, necessarily.

**nēdes**, necessarily, 2324; **nēdes cost**, necessarily, 1477; cf. O.E. *nīed*.

**nēdeth**, must, 3028.

**neede**, needful, 304.

**neer**, *adv.*, near, 1439; **fer ne ner**, see **fer**.

**neer**, comp. of **ny**, **neigh**.

**neet**, cattle; O.E. *nēat*.

**nekke**, neck; O.E. *hnecca*.

**nercotike**, opiate, 1472; O.Fr. *narcotique*.

**nēre** = **ne wēre**.

**newe**, recently, 428; O.E. *nēowe*.

**nexte**, superl. of **nȳ**, nearest, 2365.

**noght** (**o**=**ŏu**), not; O.E. *nāwiht, nōht, nŏht*, § 73 (c).

**noolde** = **ne wolde**.

**nǭn**, **noon**, none, 449, 654; O.E. *ne, ān*.

**nǭnes**, **for the nones**, for that very thing, 545; for that time only, for the occasion, 379; O.E. *for þǣm ānes*, ?also *for-þon ānes*.

**nonne**, nun; O.E. *nunne*.

**noot** = **ne wǭt**; O.E. *ne, wāt*.

**norissing**, nutriment, 437.

**Northfolk**, Norfolk, 619.

**nǭsethirles**, nostrils; O.E. *nos-þyrl*.

**notabilitee**, 'nota bene,' B 4399.

**not-heed**, a crop head; O.E. *hnot, hēafod*.

**nǭthyng**, *adv.*, not at all, 2505; O.E. *ne, ān, þing*.

**nōūthe**, at present; O.E. *nū, þā*.

**nȳ**, **nȳgh**, **neigh**, nigh; O.E. *nēh*; see § 72 (c).

**nȳce**, fastidious, particular, B 4505.

**nȳghtertāle**, night time, 97; (?) O.N. *nahtarr* (old gen. pl. of *nātt*) influenced by O.E. *niht* + (?) O.E. *talu*.

**nys** = **ne is**.

## O

**ǭ**, **ǭn**, one, same, 1012; **euere in oon**, continually, 1771; **after oon**, according to the same standard, 1781, cf. 341; **oon**

**and oon**, separately, one by one, 679; O.E. *ān*.

**obeisaunce**, obedience; cf. O.Fr. *obeissant*.

**obseruaunce**, respect, worship, 1500; O.Fr. *observance*.

**obstācle**, check, 1787; O.Fr. *obstacle*.

**of**, off, 2676; in respect to, 69, 577; from, 285, 299, 1317; arising from, 420; by, 963; O.E. *of*.

**offende**, to hurt, injure, attack, 909; O.Fr. *offendre*.

**offensiōun**, offence, hurt, damage, 2416.

**offertōrie**, an offertory, the verses or anthem sung while the people make their offerings, 710.

**ofte sīthes**, oftentimes, 485; O.E. *oftsīþes*.

**on, a**, at; **a paas**, at a foot pace, 2897, 825; in, **a goddes name**, 854; over, 594; on penalty of, 1725.

**Oo**, see **hoo**.

**oonly**, only.

**ōpie**, opium; O.Fr. *opie*.

**oratōrie**, a place for devotional exercise, 1905; O.Fr. *oratoire*.

**Orewelle**, the river Orwell, 277.

**orisōun**, prayer, 2372; O.Fr. *oreisun*.

**orlogge**, a clock, B 4044.

**ōuer**, *adj.*, upper; O.E. *ofer*.

**ōueral**, everywhere; O.E. *ofereall*.

**ōuerthwart**, athwart, across, 1991; O.N. *þvert*.

**ōunce, by ōunces**, in bunches, 677; O.Fr. *unce*.

**ōūt**, away from home, 45; **ōūt of**, beyond; O.E. *ūt*.

**ōūthees**, hue and cry, 2012; O.E. *ūt, hēs*.

**outher**, either, 1485; O.E. *āhwæþer*.

**ōūt-rīdēre**, the monastic officer who visited the outlying manors belonging to the house.

**ōwhēr**, anywhere; O.E. *āhwār*.

**oynement**, ointment, 631; O.Fr. *oignement*.

**oynons**, onions, 634; O.Fr. *oignon*.

## P

**paas**, pl. **paas** (see § 101), pace, 2901; **a pas**, at a foot pace, 825.

**pāce**, see **passe**.

**Palatȳe**, Palathia in Anatolia, a Christian state vassal to the Turks in Chaucer's time, as appears from Froissart, V. iii. 23, 65.

**palfrey**, palfrey, horse for travelling, 207; O.Fr. *palefreid*.

**pan**, the skull, head: **by my pan**, on my life, 1165; O.E. *panne*.

**paramentz**, splendid robes, 2501; O.Fr. *parement*.

**paramōurs**, as a suitor, with true love, 2112; cf. O.Fr. *par amour*.

**pardēe**, a common oath, 563; O. Fr. *par dieu*.

**parfīt**, perfect; O.Fr. *parfez*.

**parisshen**, a parishioner; O.Fr. *paroissien*.

**parlement**, decree, 1306; O.Fr. *parlement*.

**parte, of his,** on his side, 2582; O.Fr. *part.*

**partrich,** a partridge; O.Fr. *pertrisse.*

**party,** partly, 1053; **partie,** *sb.* a part, 3008; *adj.*, partial, 2657; O.Fr. sb. *partie.*

**parvȳs,** a church porch, especially the porch of St. Paul's in London, which was a rendezvous for lawyers in Chaucer's time; O.Fr. *parvis.*

**pas,** see **paas.**

**passe, pace,** to pass on, 36; to surpass, 448; **passant,** surpassing; O.Fr. *passer.*

**payen,** pagan; O.Fr. *paien.*

**pe͝cok,** peacock, whose feathers were in particular request for feathering arrows; O.E. *pēa cocc.*

**pees,** peace; O.Fr. *pais.*

**peire, paire,** pair, set; O.Fr. *pair.*

**pekke,** to pick; O.N. *pikka.*

**penaunce,** penance; O.Fr. *penance.*

**penōun,** a triangular pennant borne at the end of a lance, 978; O.Fr. *penon.*

**perce,** to pierce; O.Fr. *percer.*

**Perotheus,** Pirithous, 1191.

**perrȳe,** jewels, finery; O.Fr. *pierrie.*

**pers,** a dark shade of crimson or of blue. The variant of $H_4$ in 617 is **blew.**

**persoun,** parson, 478; O.Fr. *persone.*

**perturben,** to disturb, 906; O.Fr. *perturber.*

**peyne,** pain, 1319; torture, 1133; O.Fr. *peine.*

**peyne,** to take trouble, endeavor.

**peynte,** to paint; O.Fr. *peindre.*

**pighte,** pret. of **picchen,** to pitch, 2689.

**piled,** bald, 627; cf. O.Fr. *peler.*

**pilēr,** a pillar; O.Fr. *piler.*

**pilōur,** a spoiler, 1020; O.Fr. *pilleur.*

**pilwe-beer,** a pillowcase; O.E. *pyle,* **pylwe;* see **beer.**

**pinche at,** to find fault with; O.Fr *pincer.*

**Pirrus,** Pyrrhus, B 4547.

**pitaunce,** a mess of victuals, or other charitable gift, 224; O.Fr. *pitance.*

**pitōus,** compassionate, O.Fr. *pitous.*

**plāce,** (?) tourney place, 2399; O.Fr. *place.*

**plat,** plain, definite; O.Fr. *plat.*

**plentevōus,** plentiful; O.Fr. *plentivous.*

**plēsaunce,** pleasure; O.Fr. *plaisance.*

**plēsen,** to please; O.Fr. *plaisir.*

**pley,** play, pleasure, 1125; O.E. *plega.*

**pleye, pleyen,** to play, joke, amuse (one's self), 236, 758, 772; O.E. *plegian.*

**pleyn,** plain, 790; O.Fr. *plain.*

**pleyn,** full, complete, open, 315 988; O.Fr. *pleins.*

**pleyne,** to complain.

**plowman,** a small farmer, 529.

**pomel**, crown of the head, 2689; O.Fr. *pomel.*

**pomely**, dappled, 616; O.Fr. *pommelé.*

**poplexye**, apoplexy, B 4031.

**poraille**, poor people, 247; O.Fr. *pouraille.*

**port**, behavior, 69; O.Fr. *port.*

**portreyynge**, painting, 1938; cf. O.Fr. *portraire.*

**pō̄se**, to assume, 1162; O.Fr. *poser.*

**pōūdre marchant**, a kind of flavoring powder, 381; O.Fr. *poudre marchand.*

**pōūre**, to pore, 185.

**pōūre**, poor; O.Fr. *povre.*

**pōwpe**, to make a noise with a horn, B 4589.

**poynaunt**, highly seasoned, B 4024; Fr. *poignant.*

**poynt**, particle, 1501; **in good poynt**, good looking, 200; O.Fr. *point.*

**praktisōūr**, practitioner, 422.

**preisen**, to praise; O.Fr. *preiser.*

**preeue**, proof, B 4173.

**presse**, (?) curling tongs, 81; O.Fr. *presse.*

**prest**, ready; O.Fr. *prest.*

**preye**, to pray; O.Fr. *preier.*

**prikasōūr**, a hard rider, 189.

**prike**, to ride, 1043; to incite, spur on, to stimulate, 2678; O.E. *prician.*

**prikke**, a point, 2606; O.E. *pricca.*

**prīs**, price, 815; fame, honor, 67, 237, 2241; O.Fr. *pris.*

**priuēly**, secretly, 652; cf. O.Fr. adj. *privé.*

**propre**, own, 581; O.Fr. *propre.*

**prō̄uen**, to prove, prove true, be proved, 547; O.Fr. *prover.*

**prōw̄**, advantage, profit, B 4140; O.Fr. *prou.*

**priuetee**, privacy, private affairs, 1411; O.Fr. *priveté.*

**Prūce**, Prussia, 53.

**prȳme**, the first quarter of the time between sunrise and sunset, 2189; O.Fr. *prime.*

**pulle**, to pluck a gull, "pluck a pigeon"; O.E. *pullian.*

**pultrȳe**, poultry; O.Fr. *poulleterie.*

**purchās**, profit, proceeds, 256; O.Fr. *pourchas.*

**purchasōūr**, (?) conveyancer, 318.

**purchasyng**, (?) conveyancing, 320.

**purfīl**, to fringe, 193; O.Fr. *pourfiler.*

**purtreye**, portray, draw; O.Fr. *portraire.*

**puruelaunce**, foreordination, providence, 1665, 3011; O.Fr. *porveäance.*

**pȳne**, **pȳnen**, to torment, grieve, torture, 1746; O.E. *pīnian.*

**pynche**, to pleat, 151; **to pynche at**, to find fault with, 326; O.Fr. *pincer.*

## Q

**qualm**, sickness, disease, 2014; O.E. *cwealm.*

**quelle**, to kill, B 4580; O.E. *cwellan.*

**queynte**, pret. of **quenchen**, to quench; O.E. (*a-*)*cwencan*; cf. § 175 (6).

**queynte**, quaint, uncouth; O.Fr. *coint.*

**quik**, alive; O.E. *cwic.*

**quike**, to quicken, revive; O.E. *cwician.*

**quitly**, without conditions; **quitly out of prisoun**, out of prison and free, 1792; cf. O.Fr. *quite.*

**quod**, quoth; O.E. *cwe*þ*an*, § 161.

**quook**, pret. of **quake**, to tremble; O.E. *cwacian.*

**quyte**, to free; O.Fr. *quiter.*

## R

**rād**, see **rēde.**

**rāge**, a blast of wind, 1985.

**rāge**, to rage, romp, 257; O.Fr. *ragier.*

**ransake**, to search (for plunder), 1005; O.N. *rannsaka.*

**rāsōur**, a razor; O.Fr. *rasour.*

**raughte**, pret. of **rēche**, to reach; O.E. *rǣcan.*

**raunsōūn**, ransom; O.F. *raençon.*

**Razis**, Rhasis, a Spanish-Arabian physician of the tenth century, 432.

**rebel**, rebellious; O.Fr. *rebelle.*

**recche**, pay heed to, direct; O.E. *reccan.*

**recchelees**, careless, but the original sense of the word is "without direction" or "control," and it seems to have this meaning in 179; O.E. *reccelēas.*

**reconforte**, to comfort, 2852; O.Fr. *reconforter.*

**recorde**, to remember, call to mind, 829; O.Fr. *recorder.*

**rēde**, to advise, 3071; interpret, B 4086; O.E. *rǣdan.*

**rēde**, to read, 709; O.E. *rǣdan.*

**redōūtynge**, fear, reverence, 2050.

**reed**, plan, 1216; source of help, 665; O.E. *rǣd;* cf. Mod. Germ. *rath.*

**reed**, red; O.E. *rēad.*

**registre**, story, narrative; but (?) in sense of index or table of contents in 2812; O.Fr. *registre.*

**regne**, kingdom, 1638; country, 866; sovereign, 1624; O.Fr. *regne.*

**rēme**, realm; O.Fr. *reaume.*

**reng**, rank, 2594; O.Fr. *renc.*

**renne**, to run; O.N. *renna;* see § 159.

**rennyng, at a**, on the run, 551.

**rente**, income, 256; O.Fr. *rente.*

**repentaunce**, penitence, 1776; O.Fr. *repentance.*

**repplicāciōun**, reply, appeal, 1846.

**rescūs**, rescue, 2643; O.Fr. *rescousse.*

**rēse**, to fall, collapse, 1986; O.E. *hrēosan.*

**rēson** (**o** = **ōū**), opinion, 274; O.Fr. *raison.*

**resōūne**, to resound; O.Fr. *resoner.*

**rēthōr**, a rhetorician, B 4397; Lat. *rhētōr.*

**rēue**, steward, bailiff, 542; O.E. *gerēfa*.

**rēue**, to take away, bereave, 2015; O.E. *rēafian*.

**reuerence**, dignity, 305; O.Fr. *reverence*.

**rewe**, to have mercy, 1863, to rue; O.E. *hrēowan*.

**rewe, on a**, in a row, 2866; O.E. *rāw* (fem.).

**reyse**, to make a military expedition, 54; O.N. *reisa*.

**richesse**, riches; O.Fr. *richesse*.

**rīde**, to ride, travel, 48; O.E. *rīdan*.

**rīght a myrie man**, a very jolly man, 757; cf. **right a myrie chere**, 857.

**rīghtes, at alle**, in all respects; O.E. *riht*.

**rit**, 3d pers. sing. of **rīde**.

**roghte** (**o** = **ŏu**), pret. of **recche**.

**Romayns**, Romans, B 4555.

**roos**, pret. of **rīse**, to rise; O.E. *rīsan*.

**roost**, a roast; O.Fr. *rost*.

**rō̤te**, a stringed instrument, probably like a harp; O.Fr. *rote*.

**rōuke**, crouch, 1308; cf. Swed. *rūga*, O.N. *hrūga*.

**rōuncy**, a farm horse, 390; O.Fr. *roncin*.

**rōundel**, a kind of song, rondel, 1529; O.Fr. *rondel*.

**rōute**, a company, 622; O.Fr. *route*.

**Rūce**, Russia, 54.

**rūdeliche**, rudely; O.Fr. *rude*.

**Rufus**, a Greek physician of the first century, 430.

**ruggy**, rough-coated, shaggy, 2883.

**rumble**, tumultuous rushing sound, (?) thunder, 1979. (The "**swymbul**" of modern editions of Chaucer is obtained by reading the $H_4$ variant "*as wymbul*" into "*a swymbul*."

**Russel**, name of a fox, B 2524.

## S

**sad**, serious, dignified, 2985; O.E. *sæd*.

**sadly**, firmly, 2602.

**Salamon**, Solomon, 1942.

**salūe**, to salute, 1492; Fr. *saluer*.

**Sampsoun**, Samson, 2466.

**sangwyn**, one of the four 'complexions' of mediæval medicine (the others were the choleric, phlegmatic, and melancholic) 'generosity,' 'good nature,' 'jollity,' 'strength,' were some of its attendant characteristics, 333; crimson, 439; O.Fr. *sanguine*.

**sarge, serge**, a coarse woollen cloth, 2568; O.Fr. *sarge, serge*.

**Satalȳe**, Adalia in Asiatic Turkey, taken by Pierre de Lusignan about 1352, 58.

**saufly**, safely.

**saugh**, pret. of **sē̤n**.

**sautrȳe**, psaltery; O.Fr. *psalerie*.

**sāue**, sage, 2713; O.Fr. *sauge*, Lat. *salvia*.

**sawe**, doctrine, 1526; O.E. *sagu*.

**say**, pret. of **sē̤n**.

**scāled**, scabby, 627.

**Scariot**, Judas Iscariot, B 4417.

**scarsly**, economically; cf. O.Fr. *escars*.

**scāthe**, misfortune, 446; O.E. *scaða*; O.N. *skaði*.

**science**, knowledge, skill, 316.

**sclendre**, slender, slight.

**scōlēr**, scholar; O.E. *scōlere*.

**scǭleye**, to attend the university, to study, 302.

**sēche**, **sēke**, to seek; O.E. *sēcan*; § 79, 6; **sēke** is originally a Northern form.

**seen**, to see; O.E. *sēon*.

**seet**, sat, pret. of **sitte**; O.E. *sittan*.

**seigh**, **sey**, pret. sing. of **sēn**.

**sēk**, sick; O.E. *sēoc*.

**sēke**, see **sēche**.

**sēlde**, seldom, 1539; O.E. *seld*.

**sellēre**, provider, furnisher, 248.

**selue**, same, 2584; O.E. *self*.

**sēly**, simple; O.E. (*ge-*)*sālig*; cf. Mod. Germ. *sēlig*.

**sēmely**, seemly, fitting; O.N. *sǣmiligr*.

**semycǭpe**, a short cope, a garment worn by priests, 262; Lat. *semi*, O.N. *kāpa*.

**sendal**, a thin silk, 440; O.Fr. *sendal*.

**sēne**, **y-sēne**, visible; O.E. (*ge-*)*sēne*.

**sentence**, sense, meaning, 306; subject-matter, B 4355; opinion, B 3992.

**Serapion**, an Arabian physician of the eleventh century, 432.

**sergeant**, a mediæval law officer; O.Fr. *sergant*.

**seruāge**, bondage; O.Fr. *servage*

**seruisable**, helpful; cf. O.Fr. *service*.

**serȳe**, series, story, 3067.

**sēsoun**, season; O.Fr. *saison*.

**sēthe**, to boil; O.E. *sēoðan*.

**sette**, set, appoint; O.E. *settan*.

**seūrtē**, surety; O.Fr. *seurté*.

**sewe**, follow, B 4527; O. Fr. *sewir*.

**sey**, see **seigh**.

**seye**, to say; O.E. *secgan*.

**seynd**, pret. of **senge**, to singe, (?) smoke (bacon); O.E. *sengan*.

**shal**, shall, am to, must; O.E. *sceal*; see § 185.

**shamfast**, modest; O.E. *scamfæst*.

**shap**, form, shape, 1889; O.E. (*ge-*) *sceap*.

**shāpe**, to plan, ordain, 1108; **shāpe me**, get ready, 809.

**shaply**, fit, 372.

**sheeldes**, crowns (French), worth about 80 cents, 278.

**sheene**, bright, beautiful, fair, 160; O.E. *scēne*.

**shent**, p.p. of **shende**, to injure, destroy; O.E. *scendan*.

**shepne**, stable, 2000; O.E. *scypen*.

**shēre**, shears, 2417; O.E. *scēara*.

**shēre**, to shear; O.E. *sceran*.

**sherte**, a shirt; O.E. *scyrte*.

**shet**, pret. of **shette**, to shut; O.E. *scyttan*.

**shipman**, a sailor; O.E. *scipmann*.

**shirrēue**, the executive of a county; O.E. *scīrgerēfa*.

**shō**, a shoe; O.E. *sceō*.

**shǭde** (of the head), the parting of the hair, (?) temple; O.E. *scāda*.

**shoon**, pret. of **shine**; O.E. *scīnan*.

**shortly**, briefly, in a word, 30, 1485; cf. O.E. *sceort*.

**shrewe**, to curse, beshrew, 4616.

**shrīghte**, pret. of **shrīke, shrīche**, to shriek.

**shrīue**, shrive, prescribe penance, 226; O.E. *scrīfan*.

**shul**, see **shal**, § 185, 2.

**shyne**, shin, leg; O.E. *scin*.

**shyuēre**, shiver, to be shattered, 2605.

**sīk**, sick; see **sēk**.

**sīke**, to sigh, 1540, 2985; O.E. *sīcan*.

**siker**, sure, certain, 3049.

**sikerly**, certainly, truly, 137.

**siknesse**, sickness; O.E. *sēocnes*.

**sit**, 3d pres. sing. of **sitte**; O.E. *sittan*.

**sīth, sīthen, syn**, since, after, afterward; **ofte sīthes**, oftentimes, 485; O.E. *sīð, siððan*.

**slak**, slack, slow; O.E. *slæc*.

**slaughtre**, a slaughter; O.N. *slātr*, earlier *slahtr*.

**slawe**, p.p. of **slēn**.

**sleen**, to slay; O.E. *slēan*.

**sleighte**, craft; O.N. *slægð* (fem.).

**slēp**, pret. of **slēpe**; O.E. *slēpan*.

**slider**, slippery; O.E. *slidor*.

**slogardȳe**, sloth, 1042.

**slough, slow**, pret. of **slēn**.

**slȳly**, prudently; O.N. *slægliga*.

**smerte**, pret. **smerte**, used impersonally, to pain, hurt; O.E. **smeortan*.

**smǭt**, pret. of **smīte**, to smite; O.E. *smītan*.

**snewe**, to snow, abound, 345; O.E. *snīwan*.

**snybbe**, to snub, reprove, 523.

**socōūr**, succor, 918; cf. O.Fr. *socours*.

**sodeyn**, sudden; **sodeynliche, sodeynly**, suddenly, 1118, 1575; O.Fr. *soudain*.

**solaas**, mirth, 798; O.Fr. *solaz*.

**solempnely**, pompously, 274.

**solempnytee**, feast, 870; O.Fr. *solemnité*.

**som**, some; **som . . . som**, one . . . another, 1255–7; **some . . . some**, some . . . others, 2516 ff.; O.E. *sum*.

**som-dēl**, somewhat; O.E. *sum, dāl*.

**somer**, summer; O.E. *sumer*.

**somnōūr**, an officer who summoned delinquents before ecclesiastical courts, 543; O.Fr. *semoneor*.

**somtȳme**, on one occasion, 65; O.E. *sum, tīma*.

**sondry**, various, 14; O.E. *syndrig*.

**sǭne**, soon; O.E. *sōna*.

**sone**, a son; O.E. *sunu*.

**sonne**, the sun, 7, 863, 1062; O.E. *sunne*.

**soong**, pret. of **singe**, to sing.

**soore**, sorely, grievously; cf. O.E. *sār*.

**soote**, sweet, see note.
**sooth**, *adj.*, true; *sb.*, truth, 1521; O.E. *sōð*.
**soothfastnesse**, truth, B 4517.
**sop in wȳn**, wine with pieces of bread or cake broken into it, 334.
**soper**, supper; O.Fr. *soper*.
**sort**, chance; O.Fr. *sort*.
**sorwe**, sorrow; O.E. *sorh*, obl. case stem, *sorg-*.
**sorweful**, sorrowful, 1070; O.E. *sorgfull*.
**sǭry**, sorrowful; O.E. *sārig*.
**sōūtīl**, subtile, finely made, thin, 2030; O.Fr. *soutil*.
**soule**, soul; O.E. *sāwol* (fem.).
**sōūn**, sound; O.Fr. *son*.
**sovereyn**, surpassing, 67; O.Fr. *soverain*.
**Sōūthwerk**, 20, a London suburb, in Chaucer's time the usual starting-point for Canterbury.
**sōwne**, to sound, 565; to tend, 275; O.Fr. *suner*, *soner*.
**spāce**, room, time; O.Fr. *espace*.
**spak**, pret. of **spę̄ke**.
**spāre**, refrain, abstain from; O.E. *sparian*.
**sparre**, a beam, 990, 1076; O.N. *sparri*.
**sparth**, battle-axe, 2520; O.N. *sparða*.
**sparwe**, a sparrow; O.E. *spearwa*.
**special, in**, especially, 445; O.Fr. *special*.
**spę̄ken**, to speak, tell, 962; O.E. *specan*.
**spę̄re**, a spear; O.E. *spere*.
**spǭre**, spur; O.E. *spora*.
**sprad**, p.p. of **sprę̄de**, to spread, O.E. *sprǣdan*.
**sprenge**, to sprinkle, 2169; O.E. *sprengan*.
**squiēr**, a squire; O.Fr. *esqvier*.
**staat, in good**, in good condition, in good shape, 572.
**Stāce**, Statius, 2294.
**stal**, pret. of **stę̄le**, to steal; O.E. *stelan*.
**stāpe**, p.p. of **steppe**, to go, proceed (see § 162, note 5); **s. in age**, advanced in years, B 4011.
**starf**, pret. of **sterue**, 933.
**startlynge**, skittish, 1502.
**statue**, statue, picture, 975.
**stę̄me**, shine, glow; O.E. *stēman*.
**stenten**, stop; O.E. *styntan*.
**stę̄pe**, bold; when used with 'eye' as in 201 it means 'prominent,' 'protruding'; O.E. *stēap*.
**sterre**, star; O.E. *steorra*.
**sterte**, to start; O.N. *sterta*.
**sterue**, to die; O.E. *steorfan*.
**steuen**, appointment; **at unset steuene** (dat.), unexpectedly, 1524; O.E. *stefn* (masc.).
**steuene**, voice B 4481; O.E. *stefn* (fem.).
**stewe**, fish-pond, 350; M.L.G. *stouwe*.
**stille**, secretly, 1003; O.E. *stille*.
**stith**, an anvil, 2026; cf. O.N. *stęði*.
**stīwārd**, steward; O.E. *stīweard*.
**stǭke**, to stab, 2546.
**stonde**, to stand; O.E. *standan*.
**stonge**, p.p. of **stinge**, to pierce; O.E. *stingan*.

**stoon**, stone; O.E. *stān*.

**stoor**, farm stock, 598; **telle no stoor**, set no store by, consider of small value, B 4344; O.Fr. *estōr*.

**stot**, a cob, horse, hack.

**stōūnde**, a moment, 1212; O.E. *stund* (fem.).

**stōūt**, brave, 2154; (?) proud, 545; M.L.G. *stout*.

**straughte**, pret. of **strecche**; O.E. *streccan*.

**straunge**, foreign; O.Fr. *estrange*.

**strecche**, to stretch; O.E. *streccan*.

**stree**, straw, 2918; O.E. *strēaw, strē*.

**strēm**, current, 402; sea, 464; ray of light, 1495; O.E. *strēam*.

**strēpe**, to strip, 1006; cf. O.E. *strȳpan*.

**streit**, narrow, stinted, close, 174; O.Fr. *estreit*.

**streyne**, to constrain.

**strike**, hank, 676.

**strōf**, pret. of **strīve**; O.Fr. *estriver*.

**strond**, strand; O.E. *strand*.

**stübb**, stump (of a tree), 1978; O.E. *stybb*.

**stynte**, 2811; see **stente**.

**subtil**, light, graceful, 1054; O.Fr. *soutil*.

**subtilly**, craftily, 610.

**suffisaunce**, sufficiency, competence.

**suffisaunt**, sufficient; O.Fr. *suffisant*.

**surcōte**, an upper coat, surcoat, 617; O.Fr. *surcote*.

**sustēne**, to sustain; O.Fr. *sustenir*.

**suster**, sister; O.E. *swustor, sweostor*.

**sweete**, pleasant, 2427; O.E. *swēte*.

**swelte**, to faint, 1356; O.E. *sweltan*.

**swerd**, sword; O.E. *sweord*.

**swēre**, to swear; O.E. *swerian*.

**sweuene**, a dream; O.E. *swefn* (fem.).

**swich**, such; O.E. *swylc*.

**swōūgh**, a raging wind, hurricane, storm, 1979.

**swōwne**, to swoon; O.E. *swōgan*.

**swynken**, to labor, toil; O.E. *swincan*.

**swynkēre**, laborer, 531.

**sȳk**, a sigh, 1117; O.E. *sīc*.

**syn**, see **sīth**.

## T

**taas**, heap, 1005; O.Fr. *tas*.

**tabard**, a rough blouse or coat worn by laborers; O.Fr. *tabard*.

**Tabard**, a Southwark inn, so called from its signboard, a tabard or sleeveless coat. It was known as "The Talbot" in Speght's time, and is described in his edition of Chaucer, 1687.

**taffata**, thin silk, 440; O.Fr. *taffetas*.

**taille, by**, on account; O.Fr. *taille*.

**takel**, archer's implements, 106; cf. M.L.G. *takel*.

**Talbot**, a dog's name, B 4573.

**tāle**, speech; O.E. *talu*.

**tāle, to telle litel**, to pay little attention to; B 4308.

**tāle**, to tell stories, 723; O.E. *talian*.

**tappestēre**, a tavern keeper, 241; O.E. *tappestre*.

**tapycēr**, an upholsterer, 362; O.Fr. *tapicier*.

**tārge**, a small shield, 471; O.Fr. *targe*.

**Tars**, Tarsus, 2160.

**tęche**, to teach, conduct, B 4139; O.E. *tæcan*.

**temple**, a college of law, one of the inns of court, 567; O.Fr. *temple*.

**tęne**, annoyance; O.E. *tēona*.

**terciane**, tertian (fever); B 4149.

**terme, in termes**, precisely, exactly, 323.

**testēre**, a helmet, 2499; O.Fr. *testiere*.

**text**, an oft-cited passage, either from the fathers or from the Bible, 177; O.Fr. *texte*.

**thankes, his**, for his part, 1626, 2114; see § 122.

**thee**, to thrive, prosper; O.E. *þēon*.

**thęr, thęre**, there, where, 1392; thither, 34; O.E. *þār*.

**thęrwithal**, with it, 566.

**thider**, thither; O.E. *þider*.

**thikke**, thick-set, stocky, 549.

**thilke**, that same, that, 1193, 2383; O.E. *þe ilca*.

**thirle**, to pierce, 2710; O.E. *þyrlian*.

**this, this is**; see § 273.

**thǫ**, those, 2351; see § 136.

**thombe**, thumb, 563; O.E. *þūma*, with inorganic "b" and shortening, § 88 (b).

**thonder**, thunder, 492; O.E. *þunor*, with inorganic "d."

**thral**, slave, thrall, 1552; O.E. *þræl*.

**thresshe**, to thrash; O.E. *þrescan*.

**thrēste**, to thrust; O.N. *þrȳsta*.

**thridde**, third; O.E. *þridda*.

**thrȳes**, thrice; O.E. *þriga* + *es*.

**thurgh, thuruh**, through; O.E. *þurh*.

**thurgh-fāre**, a thorough-fare; O.E. *þurh-fare*.

**thyng**, rite, business, B 4279; instruments (in legal sense), 325; O.E. *þing*.

**thynketh**, it seems (impersonal); O.E. *þyncan*.

**tǫ** (pl. **tǫn**, **tǫs**, see § 105), toe. O.E. *tā*.

**tobreste**, to burst apart, break in pieces; 2611.

**tobrosten**, see **tobreste**.

**tohęwen**, to cut to pieces, 2609; O.E. *hēawan*.

**tollen**, to take payment in kind, 562; O.N. *tolla*.

**tonge**, tongue; O.E. *tunge*.

**tonne-greet**, as big as a tun, 1994; O.E. *tunne, grēat*.

**tool**, weapon, B 4106; O.E. *tōl*.

**top**, head, 590; O.E. *topp*.

**toshrędę**, to cut in shreds, 2609.

**tōūn**, town; O.E. *tūn*.

**tōūr**, tower; O.Fr. *tur*.

**tōūret**, turret, 1909; a swivel-ring, 2152; O.Fr. *tourette.*

**trāce**, a path, a way; O.Fr. *trace.*

**Trace**, Thrace, 2129.

**Tramyssene**, Tremessen, according to Froissart—see note on Belmarye, 62.

**trapped**, having **trappures** or trappings; O.E. *træppan.*

**trappūres**, trappings of a horse, 2499.

**trays**, the traces of a harness, 2139.

**trē̆de**, to tread; O.E. *tredan.*

**trē̆sōūn**, treason; O.Fr. *traison.*

**trespās**, trespass; O.Fr. *trespas.*

**trē̆tee**, treaty; Fr. *traité.*

**trē̆tys**, well-proportioned, shapely; O.Fr. *traitis.*

**trewe**, true; O.E. *trēowe.*

**trompe**, trumpet, a trumpeter, 2671; O.Fr. *trompe.*

**tronchōūn**, the shaft of a spear; O.Fr. *tronchon.*

**trōūthe**, truth, 763; O.E. *trēowð* (fem.).

**trowe**, to trow, think; cf. O.E. *trēowian.*

**Turkeys**, Turkish.

**turneiynge**, a tournament, 2557.

**tweye**, two, 898; O.E. *twegen.*

**tweyne**, twain, 1134.

**twǭ**, two, 639; O.E. *twā* (neut. of *twegen*).

**twynne**, to depart, separate.

**tȳde**, time; O.E. *tīd* (fem.).

**typet**, a tippet, the hanging part of a monk's sleeve, 233.

**V** (*Vowel, see* § 6).

**vndergrowe**, small of stature, 156; O.E. *under, grōwan.*

**vndertāke**, to warrant; **I vndertake**, I assure you, 288; O.E. *under*, O.N. *taka.*

**vndren, vndern**, the second quarter of the time between sunrise and sunset, *i.e.* from 9 A.M. to noon. But in B 4412 equivalent to noon.

**vnkonnynge**, ignorant, inexperienced, 2393; cf. O.E. *cunnian.*

**vnkōwth**, strange, unusual, 2497; O.E. *uncūð.*

**vnset**, not agreed upon, 1524; O.E. *un, sett.*

**vnwist**, unknown.

**vnyǭlden**, not having surrendered, 2642.

**vphaf**, pret. of **vphē̆ue**, uplifted.

**vpon**, on penalty of, 1344.

**vprīght**, face upward, 2008; O.E. *upriht.*

**vprīst, sonne vprīste**, sunrise 1051; cf. O.E. *ūp, rīsan.*

**vpsǭdōūn**, upside down, 1377; O.E. *ūp, swā, dūn.*

**vp yaf** (pret. of **vp-yē̆ue**, to give up), 2427; O.E. *ūp, giefan.*

**vsāge**, custom, practice; O.Fr. *usage.*

**vttirly**, openly, frankly, 1154.

**V** (*Consonant*)

**vanysshynge, made a**, disappeared, 2360.

**vauasōūr**, 360, see note; O.Fr. *vavasour*.
**venerȳe**, hunting; Fr. *venerie*.
**venim**, venom; O.Fr. *venin*.
**ventusynge**, cupping, 2747; O. Fr. *ventouser*.
**vernicle**, a small copy of the veronica picture of Christ in Rome. Cf. *Century Dictionary*.
**verray**, very, true; O.Fr. *verai*.
**verraily**, truly, 338.
**vertū**, efficacy.
**vertuous**, efficacious.
**vestimentz**, vestments; O.Fr. *vestiment*.
**veyne-blood**, blood-letting, 2747.
**viāge**, a journey; O.Fr. *viage*.
**vigilies**, 377; see note.
**vileinȳe**, coarseness, boorishness; O.Fr. *vilainie*.
**vitaille**, victuals; O.Fr. *vitaille*.
**voirdit**, sentence, opinion, 787; O.Fr. *verdit*.
**voūche-sauf**, to guarantee, 807; consent, 812; O.Fr. *voucher, sauf*.
**voyden**, to expel, 2751; O.Fr. *vuidier*.

## W

**wāke-pleyes**, the M.E. equivalent of the classic 'funeral games,' 2960; O.E. *wacu, plega*.
**wan**, pret. of **winne**.
**wanhōpe**, despair; O.E. *wan, hopa*.
**wantown**, sportive, gay; O.E. *wan* + *togen*, p.p. of *tēan*.
**wānye**, to wane, diminish, 2078; O.E. *wanian*.
**war**, prudent; **I was war**, I noticed, 896; **[be] war [to] him** (himself), 'be on his guard against,' 662; O.E. *wær*.
**Wāre**, in Hertfordshire, 692.
**waterlees**, 'out of the water,' 180; O.E. *wæter, lēas*.
**Watte**, **'Wat**,' short for Walter, 643.
**wawe**, wave; O.E. *wagu*.
**wayke**, weak, 887; worthless; O.N. *veikr*.
**waylaway**, alas! alack!
**waymenting**, lamentation; O.Fr. *gvaimenter*.
**wayte**, to look, expect, 525; to plan, 571; O.Fr. *waiter*.
**webbe**, a weaver; O.E. *webba*.
**wed**, security; **to wedde** (dat.), in pawn, as a pledge, 1218; O.E. *wedd*.
**wēde**, clothing; O.E. *wǣde*.
**weele**, 2231; **wel**, well, very, much, fully, 24; surely, 505; O.E. *wel*.
**wēle**, good fortune, wealth; **been in hir wēle**, are merry, 2673; O.E. *wela*.
**welle**, spring, fountain; O.E. *wella*.
**wende**, to go; O.E. *wendan*.
**wēpne**, weapons, 1591; O.E. *wǣpnu*.
**wēre**, to defend, guard; O.E. *werian*.
**wēred**, pret. of **wēre**, to wear.
**werken, wirchen**, to work, 779, 2759; O.E. *weorcian, wyrcean*.
**werre**, war, 1287; O.Fr. *werre*.
**werreye**, to war against, 1484, 1544; O.Fr. *gverroier*.

**werte**, a wart, 555; O.E. *wearte.*
**wessh**, pret. of **wasshe**, to wash; O.E. *wascan.*
**wex**, wax; O.E. *weax.*
**wexe**, to increase, grow; O.E. *weaxan.*
**wey, weye**, a way; O.E. *weg.*
**weye**, to weigh, 1781; O.E. *wegan.*
**weyle**, to wail, 1221; cf. O.N. *vǽla.*
**whan, whanne**, when, 18, 179; O.E. *hwænne, hwanne.*
**what**, why; O.E. *hwæt.*
**wheither**, introductory particle for direct questions, 1125; which of two, 1857; O.E. *hwæðer.*
**whelkes**, pimples, pustules, 632.
**whelp**, puppy, 257; O.E. *hwelp.*
**whēr**, whether.
**whiche**, which, what kind (of persons), 40; **which a**, what a, 2675; O.E. *hwilc.*
**whīlom**, formerly, once upon a time, 859, 2403; O.E. *hwīlum* (dat. pl.).
**whippeltre**, cornel tree.
**widwe**, a widow; O.E. *widuwe.*
**wīf**, wife, woman, 234, 445; O.E. *wīf.*
**wight**, a person; O.E. *wiht.*
**wighte**, weight; O.E. *(ge-)wiht.*
**wikke**, wicked, evil (of planetary influences), 1087; cf. O.E. *wīcan.*
**wille**, pleasure, 1317; O.E. *willa.*
**wilne**, to desire; O.E. *wilnian.*
**wiltow**, wilt thou, 1156.
**wirche**, see **werken.**
**wisly**, surely, 2234.
**wit**, intelligence, judgment; O.E. *witt.*
**with**, by, 2018; O.E. *wiþ.*
**withhǭlde**, maintain, 511; O.E. *wiþ healdan.*
**withōwten**, besides, not to speak of, 461; O.E. *wiðūtan.*
**withseyn, withseye**, to oppose, 1140; O.E. *wiþ secgan.*
**wityng**, knowledge, 1611.
**wlatsom**, hateful, loathsome, B 4243; cf. O.E. *wlætta.*
**wǭ, woo**, woe, 2624; lament, 900; O.E. *wā.*
**wode**, wood; O.E. *wudu.*
**wodebynde**, woodbine, 1508; O.E. *wudubinde.*
**wol, wole**, another form of **wil**, § 187; O.E. *willan.*
**woltow = wolt thou.**
**wommanhēde**, womanhood; **for verray wommanhēde**, 'because she was a true woman,' 1748; see § 122.
**wonder**, very, wondrous, 2073; O.E. *wundor.*
**wonderly**, wonderfully; O.E. *wundorlīce.*
**wone**, habit, 335; O.E. *(ge-)wuna.*
**wonne**, conquered; O.E. *winne.*
**wonyng**, a house, dwelling; O.E. *wunung.*
**wood**, crazy, mad, 582, 1329; O.E. *wōd.*
**wook**, awoke; pret. of **wake**; O.E. *wacan.*
**woot**, know; see § 185; O.E. *wāt.*
**worse**, worse, 1224; O.E. *wiersa.*
**worship**, honor; O.E. *wyrðscipe.*

**worshipe**, to honor, to pay proper respect to, 2251.
**worstede**, worsted, 262.
**wort**, herb, vegetables, 4411; O.E. *wyrt*.
**worthynesse**, knightly excellence, 50.
**worthy**, brave, 47, 68; excellent, 279; substantial, 217; cf. O.E. *wyrð*.
**wǭst**, 2d per. of **wōt**.
**wrastle**, to wrestle, 2961; O.E. *wrǣstlian*.
**wrecche**, a wretch, wretched, 1106; O.E. *wrecca*.
**wrēke**, to revenge; O.E. *wrecan*.
**wrīe**, to cover, 2904; O.E. *wrīgan*; see § 154, note 1.
**wrighte**, carpenter, 614; O.E. *wyrhta*.
**writ**, 3d sing. of **wrīte**; see § 177.
**wȳd**, wide, 491, 557; O.E. *wīd*.
**wyke**, a week; O.E. *wice*.
**wympul**, wimple, a head covering, 151. See the picture of one in the *Century Dictionary*.
**wympele**, to cover with a wimple, 470.
**wȳs**, wise; O.E. *wīs*.
**wys**, surely, 2786, B 4598; O.E. *wiss*(*-līce*).
**wȳse**, mode, manner; O.E. *wīse*.

## Y

**y-**, past participle forms beginning with **i-** or **y-** must be sought under the present stem form.
**yaf**, pret. of **yǭue**, see § 161, note 3.
**y-brent**, p.p. of **brenne**.
**y-corue**, p.p. of **kerue**.
**ȳe, yhe**, eye, see § 69 (c); O.E. *ēage*.
**yeddyng**, song, metrical romance; O.E. *gieddyng*.
**yeerd**, yard, B 4156; O.E. *geard*.
**yǭldhalle**, a guild-hall; O.E. *gieldheall*.
**yǭlde**, to yield; O.E. *gieldan*.
**yelpe**, to boast; O.E. *gielpan*.
**yelow, yelwe**, yellow; O.E. *geolo*.
**yǭman**, a yeoman.
**yerde**, rod, a yard (measure), 1050; O.E. *gierd* (fem.).
**yǭue**, to give; O.E. *giefan*.
**y-gō̄**, gone, passed, see **gō̄**.
**yhe**, see **ye**.
**yif**, imper. of **yǭue**.
**yifte**, a gift; O.E. *gift* (fem.).
**yiue**, to give, 225; see § 161.
**y-lad**, p.p. of **lǭde** (to lead), one of whose meanings is 'carry,' 'haul,' 530.
**y-laft**, p.p. of **lǭuen**, to leave.
**y-līche**, alike, 2526; O.E. *gelīca*.
**Ylioun**, Ilium, B 4546.
**ylȳk**, alike; O.E. *gelīc*.
**y-meynd**, p. p. of **menge**, see § 175 (7).
**ynogh** (**o**=**ŏū**), enough, 373; O.E. *genōh*.
**yǭlden**, p.p. of **yǭlde**; O.E. *gieldan*.
**yond**, yonder; O.E. *geond*.
**yong**, young, 7, 79, 213; O.E. *giung, geong*.
**yǭre**, a long time ago, 1813; O.E. *gēara*.

**yōūlyng**, yelling, 1278; cf. O.N. *gaula*.

**Ypocras**, Hippocrates, 431.

**Ypolita**, Hippolyte, 868.

**Ypres**, a city in West Flanders, famous for its weaving, 448.

**y-raft**, p. p. of **rēuen**; O.E. *rēafian*.

**y-ronne**, run, clustered, 2165; coagulated, 2693; p.p. of **rennen**.

**ysēne**, visible; O.E. *gesēne*.

**y-shorn**, p.p. of **shēren**.

**y-shriue**, shriven, p.p. of **shrīue**; O.E. *scrīfan*.

**y-slayn**, slain, 2708; p.p. of **slēn**.

**y-spreynd**, p.p. of **sprenge**, see § 175 (7).

**y-storue**, p.p. of **steruen**.

**y-teyd**, p.p. of **teye**, **tȳe**, to tie; O.E. *tīegan*, § 69 (c).

**yuele**, illy, 1127; O.E. *yfele*.

**y-wis**, surely; O.E. *gewiss*.

**y-wroght**, p.p. of **werken**.

Printed in the United States of America.

People
Middle Ages & Renaissance

Satire
Observation
Variety

# DATE DUE

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |
| | | | |

Demco, Inc. 38-293

CINCINNATI BIBLE COLLEGE
BRARY
main
he Ca

821 C496L

Chaucer, Geoffrey.

The Prologue to the
Canterbury tales

GEORGE MARK ELLIOTT LIBRARY
The Cincinnati Bible Seminary

821 C496L

Chaucer, Geoffrey.

The Prologue to the
Canterbury tales

DEMCO